

# New

# Bit by Bit

كتب في اللغة الإنجليزية

# Hello! 2

الفصل الدراسي الأول الصف الثاني الإعدادي



0  
2  
4

دار غزة  
للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع



QR CODES  
Listen to Vocabulary  
& Texts

2<sup>nd</sup>  
Prep.  
First Term

التوزيع : ١٠ شارع كامل صدقي - الفجالة - القاهرة. ت : 25919165

للاستعلام وإبداء الآراء والاقتراحات - الإدارة : تليفون : 25880102



# Contents

## 1

Part

- Writing skills: How to answer.....
- Dialogues
- Reading comprehensions
- Complete the sentences
- Paragraphs
- Emails

## 2

Part

- Exam specifications
- Check your English!
- Module 1: Meeting people**
- Unit (1) : Coming home
- Unit (2) : How are you feeling?
- Unit (3) : Great jobs

### Review (A)

### Module 2: Different places

- Unit (4) : Into the past
- Unit (5) : Helping you, helping me
- Unit (6) : Different environments

### Review (B)

## 3

Part

- General Exercises
- End of Term Practice with answers
- **SB / WB** Answers
- Final Exams
- Al Azhar Exams
- Listening Material
- Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

### Booklet (free with the book)

- Dictation
- Homework exercises on lessons
- Tests on units
- General Revision & Exercises



## How to answer?

- Dialogues
- Reading comprehensions
- Complete the sentences
- Paragraphs
- Emails

## 1 Dialogue

كيفية الإجابة عن سؤال المحادثة

- يعطى الطالب محادثة مكونة من عشرة تبادلات حوارية بها خمسة فراغات (ثلاثة زرد وسؤالين).
- مطلوب من الطالب أن يكمل الفراغات بأسئلة أو جمل كاملة دون إعطائه جزء من الإجابة.
- المحادثة يسبقها موقف توضيحي.

كيفية تكوين السؤال المستخدمة في حل سؤال المحادثة

ينقسم السؤال إلى نوعين:

## 1 السؤال برأى (.....؟) Yes / No question

- إذا اشتملت الإجابة على Yes, / No، يبدأ السؤال بفعل مساعد أو ناقص ويكون معناه هل.....؟
- الأفعال المساعدة والناقصة تبدأ جزئياً أساسياً في تكوين أو سؤال.

## Helping verbs

الأفعال المساعدة  
can - is - are - was - were - have - has - had

## Modals

الأفعال الناقصة  
can - could - shall - should - will - would - may - might - must

إذا كان بالجملة أو من الأفعال المساعدة أو الناقصة السابقة استخدمه في السؤال كالتالي:

A Can he play tennis?

B Yes, he can play tennis.

إذا لم يكن بالجملة فعل مساعد أو ناقص استخدم do / does / did بالجملة فعل مساعد أو ناقص حسب زمن الجملة.

A Does Rana come early?

B Yes, Rana comes early.

A Did you play tennis?

B Yes, I played tennis.

## Wh-question

## السؤال بكلمات استفهام

نستخدم كلمات الاستفهام في السؤال حسب الإجابة الموجودة أمكن - زمن - شخص - شيء - طريقة .....  
؟ ..... فعل → ..... فاعل → فعل مساعد / ناقص → كلمة استفهام

A Where is she editing?

B She is editing in the dining room.

## Question words?

What	ماذا / ماذا (الشيء)	What time	ما الوقت
Where	أين (المكان)	What colour	ما لون
Who	من (الشخص)	What subject	ما المادة الدراسية
Whose	لمن (السؤال عن الملكية)	How many	كم العدد
When	متى (الزمن)	How long	ما المدة / طول
Why	لماذا (السبب)	How heavy	ما وزن
Which	أيهما (التيه)	How much	ما نصيب / كم كمية
How	كم (الطريقة / للحا)	How often	كم عدد المرات
What class	ما الصف الدراسي	How far	كم يبعد (المسافة)
What age	ما عمر		



إذا كان الفعل الأساسي في الجملة (have - has - had) يعامل مثل أي فعل آخر يستخدم do - does - did.

A What do they have?

B They have a nice car.

A When does he have lunch?

B He has lunch at 2 o'clock.

إذا كان الفعل الأساسي في الجملة (do - does - did) يعامل مثل أي فعل آخر.

A When does Huda do her homework?

B Huda does her homework at night.

A When did Soma do exercise?

B Soma did exercise in the morning.

السؤال عن الفاعل: عندما نسال عن الفاعل نحدثه ونضع مكانه كلمة الاستفهام ونكمل الجملة كما هي:

A Who wins the game?

B Ahmed wins the game.

A What crashed into the wall?

B A car crashed into the wall.

عندما نسال بـ Who عن مفعول عاقل نحون السؤال بالطريقة المعتادة باستخدام فعل ناقص أو مساعد بعدها:

A Who did you meet?

B I met Ahmed.

## 4 السؤال بكلمة الاستفهام (Whose)

- يأتي بعدها غالبا الاسم المزداد السؤال عن ملكيته

**A** Whose laptop is this?

**B** This is my laptop.

السؤال بكلمة الاستفهام (How many/ How much)

- يأتي بعدها مباشرة الاسم الذي يعد ثم الفعل المساعد/ النقص ثم الفعل.

**A** How many books did you buy?

**A** How much is it?

**B** It's 300 pounds.

السؤال بكلمات الاستفهام [tall - long - wide - high - old]

**A** How tall is the building?

**B** It's 30 metres tall.

**A** How wide is the room?

**B** It's 5 metres wide.

**A** How high is the mountain?

**B** It's 20 metres high.

**A** How old is Mai?

**B** She's 10 years old.

## Common questions

أسئلة شائعة في المحادثات

## 1- At a restaurant

في مطعم

- Can I have your order, sir?

- What's your favourite dish?

- What about the dessert?

## 3- At a clothes shop

في محل بيع الملابس

- Can I help you?

- What colour / size do you want?

- How much does it cost?

## 5- At a railway station

في محطة سكة حديد

- Can I book a ticket to ..... please?

- Which platform does the train leave from?

- How long does it take to go there?

- When does it arrive?

## 2- At a hospital or a doctor's

في مستشفى أو عيادة

- What's the matter with you?

- What do you complain of?

- How long have you been feeling ill?

## 4- At a hotel

في فندق

- Can I book a room, please?

- How long will you stay here?

- How much is the room a night?

- Have you enjoyed your stay here?

## 6- Meeting a tourist

مقابلة سائح

- Where do you come from/ Where are you from?

- Is it your first visit to Egypt?

- What places have you been to?

- How can I get to the Pyramids, please?

## General questions

1. What do you do? / What is your job?

2. Where were you born?

3. When were you born?

4. What is your nationality?

5. Where do you live?

6. What is the weather like? / How is the weather?

7. What does ..... look like?

8. What is/are ..... (used) for?

9. Single or double?

10. What would you like to have?

11. Where have you been?

12. How often do you .....?

13. What happened?

14. What is your opinion of ...?

15. What is wrong with .....?

للسؤال عن الوظيفة

للسؤال عن مكان الميلاد

للسؤال عن تاريخ الميلاد

للسؤال عن جنسية شخص

للسؤال عن عنوان شخص

للسؤال عن الطقس

للسؤال عن مظهر الشخص / وصف شيء.

للسؤال عن الغرض من استخدام شيء / أشياء

للسؤال عن نوع غرفة في فندق

للسؤال عن ماذا يريد شخص أن يأكل / يشرب

للسؤال عن أين كان شخص

للسؤال عن عدد مرات فعل شيء

للسؤال عما حدث

للسؤال عن رأي شخص في شيء / شخص

للسؤال عن خطأ في جهاز

## Model question

نموذج السؤال كما يأتي في الامتحان مع الإجابة النموذجية

Complete the following dialogue:

Yousra is at a clothes shop.

Assistant: Can I help you?

Yousra : ① .....

Assistant: We have great long dresses. ② .....

Yousra : I want green, blue and red ones and I'll choose.

Assistant: Here you are. ③ .....

Yousra : I think the red one is nice. How much is it?

Assistant: ④ .....

Yousra : OK. Where can I try it on?

Assistant: The changing room is over there.

Yousra : ⑤ .....

## Answers

## الترافع رقم (1)

- قد يكون الترافع لإجابة لسؤال فيها كالاتي:

Assistant: Can I help you?

No... أو Yes...

- السؤال هنا بديار (Can) وهو فعل مساعد ويعطى معنى هل، وإجابة إجابتي تكون:

Yousra: Yes, I want a long dress, please.

## الترافع رقم (2)

قد ينتهي الترافع بعلامة استفهام يليه إجابة وترافعي عند تكوين السؤال أن يكون في نفس زمن الإجابة عاليا مع اختيار كلمة الاستفهام المناسبة:

Yousra: I want green, blue and red ones and I'll choose.

- الإجابة هنا تحتوي على عدة ألوان ستختار منها لذلك سيبدأ السؤال بكلمة الاستفهام: (What colour.....?)

Assistant: What colour do you want?

- وسبق قدما نقرأ مفعلاً لكلمات الاستفهام وكيفية تكوين السؤال.

## الترافع رقم (3)

نموذج آخر للإجابة تحتاج إلى سؤال:

Yousra: I think the red one is nice.

- الإجابة هنا تعبر عن اختيار فلند أن تسأل بكلمة الاستفهام: (Which.....?)

Assistant: Which one do you like?

## الترافع رقم (4)

- مطلوب إجابة عن السؤال تعبر عن التمن.

Yousra: How much is it?

Assistant: It's 300 pounds.

- فالإجابة تكون:

## الترافع رقم (5)

- الإجابة هنا تريد أن تضمين الشكر على وصفه البائع لمكان جيدة تغيير الملابس

Yousra: Thank you very much.

- فتكون الإجابة:

## 2 Reading Comprehension

• كيفية الإجابة عن سؤال قطعة الفهم

- بعض الطالب نص مؤثر من حوالي 10 كلمة.

- مطلوب من الطالب أن يجيب عن ثلاثة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد وثلاثة أسئلة مقالية.

• خطوات تساعدك على إجابة قطعة الفهم:

1. اقرأ الأسئلة أولاً قبل قراءة القطعة نفسها لأن هذا يربطك فكرة عامة عن موضوع القطعة.

2. انبه إلى ما يتطلبه هذه الأسئلة من معلومات.

3. اقرأ القطعة كلها ببطء مرة ثانية قبل أن تقوم بالإجابة عن الأسئلة.

4. عندما تجد جملة فيها إجابة سؤال ضع خطاً تحتهما وأيضاً إذا وجدت أرقام انتهى لها السال واقع الامتحان عادة ما يرسل عنها.

5. إذا صادفت كلمة لا تعرف معناها حاول تخمين المعنى.

## كيف نضمن معنى كلمة لا نعرف معناها؟

1. قد تتمكن من تخمين معنى كلمة بسبب وجود عبارة أو كلمة دالة على التناقض مثل:

Unlike - but - في المقابل - in contrast - على العكس من... / على خلاف Unlike

مثال:

• Some people think that sports are unimportant, but I think they are vital.

- لو أنك لا تعرف معنى كلمة vital يمكنك تخمين معناها حيث أن الجملة تقول يعتقد بعض الناس أن الرياضة شيء غير مهم، لكنني أعتقد أنها .....، من خلال السياق نفهم أن vital عكس unimportant وهذا يكون تخمين معنى الكلمة سهل وهو (ضروري) أو (مهم)

2. قد نضمن معنى الكلمة أيضاً من خلال البدييات أو اللفظيات المتعلقة بأصل الكلمة

• مثال: نفهم من خلال السابقة - im - في كلمة impossible التي تعني "غير" أو "ليس" أنها عكس

possible فهيكون معانها | غير ممكن/ مستحيل

• مثال آخر: نفهم من خلال اللاحقة -less- في كلمة homeless التي تعني (بدون/ بلا) أن معنى الكلمة (بلا مأوى/ مشرد)

3. يمكنك تخمين المعنى من سياق الجملة من خلال الكلمات التي تسبق الكلمة أو التي يليها.

مثال:

• It rained hard through the night so the ground was wet.

- ماذا تعني كلمة wet إذا كانت لا تعرف معناها بمفهومك تخمينه من خلال الجملة التي سبقتها "كانت السماء تمطر بغزارة خلال الليل لذلك الأرض كانت.... لقد كانت تمطر بشدة مما يعني أن الأرض لابد أنها كانت (مبتلة).

4. هناك طريقة بسيطة جداً: ترجم الجملة كلها وارتك فراغ مكان الكلمة التي لا تعرفها ثم فكر أي كلمة بالغة العربية تتماشى مع معنى الجملة فمثلاً أنت قرأت جملة تقول:

• The work is boring. There is nothing I find interesting about it.

- حاول تخمين معنى "boring" هذا.

## ما هي الأنماط الأكثر شيوعاً في أسئلة قطعة المقدم:

أولاً: أسئلة الاختيار من متعدد (multiple-choice)

قد يطلب واضع الامتحان منك الفكرة الرئيسية (main idea) في النص من خلال صيغة مثل:

- The main idea of the passage is.....
- The passage is mainly about.....

وعليك أن تختار الإجابة الصحيحة من أربعة اختيارات تُعطى لك.

كيف تجد الفكرة الرئيسية في النص

- هي النقطة الأساسية التي يكرر الكاتب الحديث عنها.
- تكون جملة وليست سؤالاً.
- الجملة الأخرى في النص تعطى تفاصيل ومعلومات عنها.
- غالباً تكون في أول جملة أو آخر جملة في النص.

## لاحظ المثال الآتي:

ما باللون الأحمر هي الفكرة الرئيسية وما باللون الأزرق هي التفاصيل عنها.

Yesterday, I got a new coat. My new coat has blue lines and red sleeves.  
My coat is very nice and keeps me warm. On the back, there is a picture of a snow man. I will wear my coat to school.

2 قد يقوم واضع الامتحان بإضافة خط تحت أحد الكلمات في جملة معينة في القطعة ثم نجد سؤال اختيار من متعدد يقول: الكلمة الموضوع تحتها خط تشير إلى....

- The underlined word '.....' refers to.....

ثانياً: الأسئلة المقالية (open-ended questions)

- 1 قد يكون هناك في القطعة رأي / نصيحة وسؤال هل أنت موافق على هذا الرأي / هذه النصيحة أم لا مع ذكر السبب:
  - Do you agree with this opinion / advice in the passage? Why / Why not?
  - 2 قد يرتبط موضوع القطعة بك فيسألك مثلاً: هل تحب أو هل تكره.....؟ ولم؟ لا؟
    - Do you like / dislike.....? Why / Why not?
  - 3 قد يطلب منك أن تعطى عنواناً مناسباً للقطعة أو تذكر الفكرة الرئيسية لها:
    - Give a suitable title to the passage.

## Model question

نموذج السؤال كما يأتي في الامتحان مع الإجابة النموذجية:

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Do you have a computer at home? Do you use the internet? I'm sure the answer is "Yes". I can't believe there is a house without a computer in our modern time. Computer users increase every day. But why?

The computer is a world where you can fly anywhere and everywhere. Through the computer, you can play games, store information, write what you want in any language and print it out. You can also use the internet through the computer. The

internet is a great store of knowledge in all fields. You can learn about medicine, engineering, health and so many other sciences. It can also help us communicate with people in any part of the world.

## A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the passage mainly about?
2. How do computers help us?
3. What can we learn from the internet?

## B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "store" means .....
  - a. learn
  - b. keep
  - c. read
  - d. study
5. The internet is .....
  - a. useful
  - b. useless
  - c. boring
  - d. interested
6. We can use computers to ..... paper.
  - a. drive
  - b. ride
  - c. answer
  - d. print

## Answer

1. It's about the computer and the internet.
2. We can play games, store information, write what we want in any language and print it out.
3. We can learn about medicine, engineering, health and so many other sciences.
4. b. keep
5. a. useful
6. d. print

## 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets

..... كيفية الإجابة عن سؤال الجمل

السؤال عبارة عن أربع جمل في القواعد اللغوية وبها خطأ فيما بين الأقواس: مطلوب من الطالب كتابة الصيغة اللغوية الصحيحة في الفراغات.

## Mistake الخطأ

## Correction التصحيح

- I'd like ..... (any) orange juice, please.
- Listen! She ..... (sings) a beautiful song.
- Cairo is ..... (noisiest) than Al Fayoum.
- How ..... (much) cups of coffee do you drink a day?
- Your house is small. .... (Our) is big.
- ..... (Didn't) come late.

some is singing  
noisier many  
Ours Don't

## 4 Paragraph Writing

- مطلوب من الطالب كتابة فقرة إرشادية (paragraph) مكونة من حوالي ٨٥ إلى ٩٥ كلمة عن موضوع من موضوعات الكتاب المدرسي.

- لابد أن يقرأ الطالب العنوان جيدًا.

- يكتب الطالب جمل واضحة ليست بالطويلة.

حتى تكون الجملة بشكل صحيح يجب أن تدرس الأسس أولاً

## أولاً: ترتيب الجملة

نوع الجملة	الفاعل	المفعول
جملة الخبر	He	goes to Alexandria every summer holiday.
جملة الخبر	They	visited the Cairo Tower yesterday.

## ثانياً: صيغ الجمل المختلفة

نوع الجملة	مفعول أساسي	مفعول مساعد / فعل ناقص	فاعل
جملة الخبر	to Luxor with us.	go	She
جملة الخبر	playing in the street.	does	He
جملة الخبر	the museum last year.	didn't	We
جملة الخبر	English now.	is	He
جملة الخبر	a camel already.	have	They

## تعليمات مهمة للطلاب بخصوص الشكل العام للفقرة الإرشادية (paragraph)

- 1 تترك مسافة صغيرة (تبادل كلمة صغيرة) في أول سطر فقط.
- 2 يبدأ أول كل جملة بحرف كبير (Capital letter) ونضع نقطة (full stop) ونضعها في نهاية كل جملة.
- 3 يكتب بخط واضح - الجملة بجوار الجملة - وتترك مسافة بين الكلمة والآخر.
- 4 استخدم زمن المضارع البسيط (V + s, es, ies) عند الحديث عن الحقائق والعلاقات، وزمن الماضي البسيط (V + d / ed / ied) عند الحديث عن موضوع في الماضي، وزمن المستقبل (V + ll + inf) عند الحديث عن موضوع في المستقبل.
- 5 يمكن أن يكون عنوان الموضوع جملة تستخدم كإحدى الجمل في الكتابة.

## Model question

نموذج السؤال كما يأتي في الامتحان مع الإجابة النموذجية

Write a paragraph of about NINETEEN (90) words on:

"Your day"

I always get up at half past six. I usually have a shower before I get dressed. I have breakfast with my family. My house is not far from my school, so I go to school on foot. I always arrive there before the bell rings. At break, I have lunch. I play with my friends in the playground. I come back home at about two o'clock. I usually feel tired then. My parents always come from work at about three o'clock. I like to help my mum make lunch. After lunch, I do my homework. I usually go to bed at nine o'clock.

## 5 Email Writing

... كيفية الإجابة عن سؤال رسالة البريد الإلكتروني

- مطلوب من الطالب كتابة رسالة بريد إلكتروني (Email) مكونة من حوالي ٨٥ إلى ٩٥ كلمة عن موضوع من موضوعات الكتاب المدرسي.

- على الطالب كتابة البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه والراسل وموضوع الرسالة المعطاة له في السؤال.

## تعليمات مهمة للطلاب بخصوص الشكل العام لرسالة البريد الإلكتروني (Email)

- 1 نكتب أعلى الصفحة جهة الراسل:
- 2 عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه
- 3 عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للراسل
- 4 الموضوع
- 5 نكتب أسفل منهم اسم المرسل إليه + Decr + بينهما فاصلة (،).
- 6 أسفل كلمة (Decr) نكتب مقدمة مناسبة.
- 7 نكتب محتوى رسالة البريد الإلكتروني (يمكنك أحياناً الاستعانة بجمل من السؤال نفسه مع مراعاة تحويل الضمائر).
- 8 نكتب خاتمة مناسبة.
- 9 نغني رسالة البريد الإلكتروني بـ (Yours) وأسفل منها اسم الراسل.

## Useful phrases to use in an email

عبارات مفيدة تستخدم في كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني

يمكنك أن تستخدم التالي لبدا رسالة البريد الإلكتروني

Dear .....  
Hi .....  
Hello .....

- يمكنك أن تستخدم التالي لتسأل عن صحة شخص:

How are you?  
How are things? / How's life? / How's it going?  
كيف حالك؟  
كيف تسير الأمور؟

- يمكنك أن تستخدم التالي لتقديم احدي:

I'd like to tell you about .....  
I'm writing to invite you to .....  
أود أن أخبرك عن .....  
أكتب لك لكي ادعوك إلى .....

- يمكنك أن تستخدم التالي للحديث عن المشاعر:

I / We miss you.  
I / We hope that you are .....  
I'm so excited / sad because .....  
إني أفقدك / نحن فائقدك.  
أتمنى / نتمنى أن تكوني .....  
إني مشوق / حزيني لأن .....

- يمكنك أن تستخدم التالي للحديث عن المستقبل:

I'm looking forward to .....  
I can't wait to .....  
أنتظر إلى .....  
لا أستطيع أن أنتظر أن .....

- يمكنك أن تستخدم التالي لنتهي حديثك:

Write soon.  
See you soon.  
With my best wishes.  
Keep in touch.  
أكتب في سرعة.  
أراك قريباً.  
مع أطيب تمنياتي.  
كن على اتصال.

## Model question

نموذج السؤال كما يلي في الامتحان مع الإجابة النموذجية

Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

To your English penfriend, Tim, telling him about your favourite hobby and where you practise it.

- Your name is Ziad and your email address is zidsamir@yahoo.com.

- Your penfriend's email address is tim505@yahoo.com.

New Message

To

tim505@yahoo.com

From

zidsamir@yahoo.com

Subject

My favourite hobby

Cc

Bcc

Dear Tim,

I'm happy to write this email to you. How are you?

I want to tell you that I like playing football. It's my favourite hobby. I practise it every day in the club near my house. I joined that club when I was three. My father knew I was a good player, so he let me join it. I go there with my friends twice a week. I usually score goals for my team. I hope I will join a European club in the future. I hope I will be famous like Mohamed Salah. My coach always encourages me to train hard. Please, tell me about your favourite hobby. Waiting for your email.

Yours,  
Ziad

المقدمة

الموضوع

الخاتمة

## Common writing mistakes

أخطاء شائعة في الكتابة باللغة الإنجليزية

هذه أمثلة من الأخطاء التي قد يقع فيها كثير من الطلاب

## 1) Definite and indefinite articles (a, an and the)

1) نستخدم (a - an) عندما نتحدث عن شيء للمرة الأولى في الجملة.

- Ali has got the dog and the cat.
- Ali has got a dog and a cat.

2) نستخدم (the) عند التحدث عن شيء سبق ذكره.

- I stayed in a hotel near the station. A hotel was very nice.
- I stayed in a hotel near the station. The hotel was very nice.

3) نستخدم (the) عند الإشارة إلى شيء معروف للجميع.

- Do you know an answer to a question?
- Do you know an answer to the teacher's question?

4) لا نستخدم أدوات عندما نتحدث بشكل عام باستخدام صيغة الجمع مع الاسم الذي يحد.

- The oranges give us vitamins.
- Oranges give us vitamins.

5) يجب أن نضع (the) أمام أسماء الدول المركبة.

- I live in United States.
- I live in the United States.

## 2) Punctuation

أمثلة من أخطاء الترقيم التي قد يقع فيها كثير من الطلاب:

1) نستخدم الحرف الكبير (Capital letter) في الكتابة في الحالات الآتية:

- I go to school early.
- I go to school early.

2) الضمير (I) في أي مكان في الجملة.

3) الحرف الأول من الكلمة الأولى في الجملة الخيرية أو السؤال.

- My brother came back from school at 3 p.m, but I came back at 2 p.m.

- My brother came back from school at 3 p.m, but I came back at 2 p.m.

الحروف الأولى من أسماء الأشخاص والأدول والمدن والمعالم والأماكن الشهيرة والجسيات واللغات والأختصارات واللقاب والتعاون وأيام الأسبوع وأشهر والمؤسسات والمهرجانات.

- maged did his Homework and watched tv.
- Maged did his homework and watched TV.
- I can speak english and french well.
- I can speak English and French well.

2) نضع لفظة (Full stop) في نهاية الجملة الخيرية والمرتبة.

3) نضع الفاصلة (Comma) للتعبير عن توقفات موجزة في الجمل وبين كلمات في قائمة وبعد No/Yes ولا تترك مسافة قبل الفواصل عموماً.

- I want apples bananas carrots and potatoes.
- I want apples, bananas, carrots and potatoes.

2) نضع الفاصلة (Apostrophe) قبل (s) الملكية للمفرد بينما نضع (') للملكية للجمع (المتنهي ب-s).

- We met at Ali party.
- We met at Ali's party.
- These are the boys toys.
- These are the boys' toys.

3) نضع الفاصلة العليا في الاختصارات مثل: etc ... - it's - don't - let's

- I dont have a car.
- I don't have a car.

5) نضع علامة الاستفهام (?) في نهاية السؤال.

- Do you have a car?
- Do you have a car?

5) نضع علامة التعجب (!) في نهاية الجملة الخيرية لإظهار الدهشة والتعجب.

- what a pitly
- What a pity!

## 3) Common grammatical mistakes

1) للتعبير عن شيء يحدث باستمرار في حياتنا نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط وليس المضارع المستمر كما نعمل في اللغة العربية.

- I'm often going to the club on Fridays.
- I often go to the club on Fridays.

2) احرص على وضع ظروف التكرار (Adverbs of frequency) في مكانها قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد فعل (be).

always - usually - often - sometimes - never ...

- I go usually to the cinema on holidays.
- I usually go to the cinema on holidays.
- He always is early for school.
- He is always early for school.

3 يأتي دائما بعد حروف الجر فعل مضارع (ing):

الجملة خطأ ☒

الجملة صحيحة ☒

- I thanked Ali for help me.
- I thanked Ali for helping me.

4 بعض الأفعال لا يأتي بعدها حرف جر مثل (enjoy) حيث لا معنى يستقيم به:

الجملة خطأ ☒

الجملة صحيحة ☒

- I enjoyed by the film.
- I enjoyed the film.

5 نذكر أن بعض الكلمات مثل (information / news / equipment) يأتي بعدها فعل الفاعل مضارع:

الجملة خطأ ☒

الجملة صحيحة ☒

- The information you gave me were important.
- The information you gave me was important.

6 الأفعال الناقصة لا يأتي بعدها (to):

الجملة خطأ ☒

الجملة صحيحة ☒

- We must to eat healthy food.
- We must eat healthy food.

7 لا تستخدم (should / must) بعد (that) بعد (should / must):

الجملة خطأ ☒

الجملة صحيحة ☒

- You should that study your lessons.
- You should study your lessons.

8 عليك أن تفرق بين الاستخدام (It's / Its):

• It's = (It is + n / adj / V-ing)

• It's (It is) my book.

• It's (It is) good to be fit.

• It's (It is) raining now.

• Its صيغة ملحقية تغير تعقل Its

• I have a nice cat. Its tail is long.

• I have a nice cat. Its tail is long.

• Some and me revised for the exam.

• Some and I revised for the exam.

9 عليك أن تميز بين الاستخدام بين ضمائر الفاعل وضمائر المفعول:

الجملة خطأ ☒

الجملة صحيحة ☒

## Part 2

National Centre For Examinations & Educational Evaluation (NCEE) Test Development Dep.  
Specifications for Second Year Preparatory (1st term)  
English Examination (2023-2024)

مواصفات امتحان اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الثاني الإعدادي للعام الدراسي ٢٠٢٣ / ٢٠٢٤

Ministry of Education ELT Counsellor's Office

(Time: 2 Hours) (24 Marks)

### A Listening 4 Marks

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 Marks)

Students listen to a text from (30-35) words. Topics should be related to the Set Books. Students listen and answer FOUR (4) multiple choice questions with FOUR (4) options each. (One mark each)

### B Language Functions 2.5 Marks

2 Complete the following dialogue:

A dialogue of TEN (10) exchanges with FIVE (5) deletions (3 responses & 2 stimuli) is provided. The students are asked to complete the deletions completely without providing them with any part of the answers. The situation should be provided and clear. The first sentence is given in full. (Half a mark each)

### C Reading Comprehension 4.5 Marks

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

An unseen text of about ONE HUNDRED and TWENTY-FIVE (125) words is provided. This can be a short story, a factual text, a timetable or a letter. Most lexical items and all structures in the text should be from the Set Books. The students are required to answer THREE (3) multiple-choice questions with FOUR (4) options each. (Half a mark each) and THREE (3) open-ended questions (One mark each)

These questions should test the following reading comprehension skills:

- Giving the main idea (1 question)
- Extracting information (2 questions)
- Understanding reference (1 question)
- Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context (1 question)
- Critical thinking skill (1 question)

## D Vocabulary &amp; Structure

7 Marks

- 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (5 Marks)

TEN (10) multiple-choice items (7 Vocabulary & 3 Structures) based on the Set Books are provided. Students are asked to choose the correct answer from the FOUR (4) options given. (Half a mark each)

- 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: (2 Marks)

FOUR (4) structure sentences are provided. Students are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets. The given words(s) in brackets could be verbs, adjectives, adverbs... etc. related to what students have studied. (Half a mark each)

## E Writing

6 Marks

- 6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on.....: (6 Marks)

Students are asked to write a paragraph from EIGHTY-FIVE (85) to NINETY-FIVE (95) words on a specific topic related to the Set Books.

(One mark for organization - One mark for relevance of ideas - One mark for choice of vocabulary - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation - One mark for grammar)

OR

- Write an email of about NINETY (90) words on: (6 Marks)

Students are asked to write an email from EIGHTY-FIVE (85) to NINETY-FIVE (95) words on a specific topic related to the Set Books. Students must write who the email is to and from, as well as the subject of the email. Names and addresses are provided.

(One mark for organization - One mark for relevance of ideas - One mark for choice of vocabulary - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation - One mark for grammar)

## Check Your English!

- 1 Complete the questions with these words:

محتاج عنه في آخر الكلام WB pages 70 & 71

did - does - highest - if - looking - made - shouldn't - Were

1. What **does** an engineer do?
2. What is a teaspoon ..... of?
3. If you can see yourself, what are you ..... at?
4. Which is the ..... mountain in the world?
5. Why ..... you eat a lot of chocolate?
6. What happens ..... you touch a jellyfish?
7. Where ..... Robinson Crusoe live for many years?
8. .... there any bedrooms in the houses of Deir el-Medina?

- 2 Now match the questions from Exercise 1 with the answers

- a. ☐ It stings you.
- b. ☐ There is too much sugar in it.
- c. ☒ He or she designs engines or parts of buildings.
- d. ☐ Mount Everest
- e. ☐ No, there weren't.
- f. ☐ on an island
- g. ☐ metal (but sometimes plastic)
- h. ☐ a mirror



- 3 Listen and check your answers to Exercises 1 and 2.

## AudioScript

WB Page (70)

استمع الى النص



Narrator: 1

Speaker 1 : What does an engineer do?

Speaker 2 : He or she designs engines or parts of buildings.

Narrator: 2

Speaker 1 : What is a teaspoon made of?

Speaker 2 : Metal (but sometimes plastic).

Narrator: 3

Speaker 1 : If you can see yourself, what are you looking at?

Speaker 2 : A mirror.

**Narrator: 4** Which is the highest mountain in the world?

**Speaker 1** : Mount Everest.  
**Narrator: 5** Why shouldn't you eat a lot of chocolate?

**Speaker 1** : There is too much sugar in it.  
**Narrator: 6** What happens if you touch a jellyfish?

**Speaker 1** : It stings you.  
**Narrator: 7** Where did Robinson Crusoe live for many years?

**Speaker 1** : On an island.  
**Narrator: 8** Were there any bedrooms in the houses of Deir el-Medina?

**Speaker 1** : No, there weren't.

**Speaker 2** : No, there weren't.

**4 Read and underline the mistakes in these sentences. Correct the mistakes.**

1. I got short, curly hair. (have got)
2. That is not your bag, it is my. (is)
3. Mariam didn't climb the mountain because she was frightening. (was)
4. There are any peppers in the fridge. (are)
5. Did you went to the park this morning? (did)

**5 Read the book summaries and write the missing sentences a-d in the right places**

- a. Some of the people are funny and some of them are scary!
- b. The story moves slowly, but I like the story's message.
- c. Should he talk to the man, or should he hide?
- d. If he gets home on time, he will win a prize.

I really enjoyed this book. It is about a sailor who lived for many years on an island. In the morning, he always went for a walk on the beach alone, then, one day, he saw another person on the island! ☐ Read it to find out!

*Robinson Crusoe*



- 2** This book is very exciting. It is about a man who must travel quickly through many places by ship and train. It is easier to travel through some countries than others! ☐ It is a very difficult challenge, but will he do it?

*Around the World in 80 Days.*



- 3** In this story, an old fisherman spends many days trying to catch a big fish. He is very good at fishing and catches the fish, but when he returns home, the fish is just a skeleton. However, the other fishermen respect the old man because he tried very hard. ☐

*The Old Man and the Sea.*



- 4** This story is very interesting! It is about a girl who goes to a very strange place. There are a lot of very interesting people and animals in this place and she has lots of adventures. ☐ Will she find her way home?

*Alice's Adventures in Wonderland*



**6 Ask and answer the questions about the stories in pairs.**

1. Which is the only story that is not about the sea?
2. Which two stories are not only about people?
3. Which stories have forms of transport in them?
4. Which of the stories did you enjoy? Why?

**7 Write a summary of another book or film that you enjoyed.**

- Say what the story / film is about.
- Write about the people in the story / film and about what happens to them.
- Finish with a question or your opinion.

## Meeting People

### Module 1

## UNIT 1

# Coming home

## Objectives

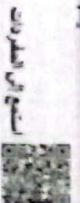
- Reading:** A text about daily routines; a blog about routines; a website article about children in India;  
*The Railway Children*
- Writing:** A text message; an email to a penfriend
- Listening:** A description of a bedroom
- Speaking:** Discussing daily routines; describing bedrooms and furniture
- Language:** Present simple questions
- Life Skills:** Self-management
- Values:** Coexistence values
- Issues:** Citizenship

## Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 2-5 WB pages 72-73

نظام النطق يتبع النطق في حلق الحلق

## Key Vocabulary



interview	مقابلة شخصية	way	طريقة
routine	روتين (أنظام متكررا)	block of flats	كتلة شقق
sofa	أريكة (كسرة)	text (ed) (n)	نص (نسخة نصية / رسالة نصية)
daily	يومي / كل يوم		
listen to music	يسمع إلى الموسيقى	do sports	يمارس الرياضة
help to make dinner	يساعد في إعداد العشاء	read on the sofa	يقرأ على الأريكة
have lunch at school	يتناول وجبة في المدرسة	text friends	يرسل رسائل نصية للأصدقاء

## Activities

## Vocabulary

school day	يوم دراسي	hobby	هواية
school subjects	مواد دراسية	fun	متعة - ممتع
favourite	مفضل	interests	اهتمامات
that's why = so	لذلك	blog	مدونة
chess	لعبة الشطرنج	baker's = bakery	مخبز
important	هام	cook (ed) (n)	طبخ / طبخة - طباخ
free time	وقت الفراغ	prefer (red)	يفضل

## Expressions & Prepositions

do homework	يقوم بعمل الواجب المدرسي	in the (evening/morning)	في المساء/الصباح
do exercises	يؤدي تمارين	in the holidays	في الإجازات
go to bed	يذهب للنوم	by bus	بالترانس
have fun	يستمتع	on the right	على اليمين
have breakfast with	يتناول الإفطار مع	on her way to...	في طريقها إلى...
take the bus	يستقل الأتوبيس	at the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
get up	يستيقظ، يحدو	good for	مفيد لـ...
in bed	في الفراش		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs		Past Participle	
Present		Past simple	
have	يملك. يملك	had	had
leave	يترك	left	left
take	يستقل (مركبة) - يترك	took	taken
spend	يقضي وقتاً / ينفق ماله	spent	spent
get up	يستيقظ	got up	got up

Word	Meaning	Opposite
fun	متعة	boring
late	متأخراً	early
the same	نفس الشيء	different
		equal / like
		different

### Definitions

routine	روتين	your usual way of doing things, especially when you do them in a fixed order at the same time
interview	مقابلة شخصية	a formal meeting in which someone asks you questions about yourself and your life
block of flats	عمارة سكنية	a tall building with more than one floor with flats for people to live in

### Language Notes

#### 1) Words with "the"

بعض الكلمات مثل **the bed / school / hospital** لا يستخدم قبلها **the** إذا استخدمت للعرض الذي وجدت من أجله:  
**Ex.** Students go to school to study.  
 أما إذا استخدمت لغير الغرض الذي وجدت من أجله يمكن أن تستخدم قبلها:  
**Ex.** I went to the school to ask about my son.

#### 2) too

نستخدم كلمة **too** بمعنى "أيضاً" لوصف المعتقد في الرأي كما في المثال الآتي:  
**Ex. A:** I'm feeling tired.  
**B:** Me, too.  
 كما نستخدم بمعنى "جداً لدرجة أنه..." كما في المثال الآتي:  
**Ex.** He is too weak to walk.

#### 3) arrive at - arrive in - get to

يصل إلى مكان صغير مدرسة مستشفى... **arrive at**  
**Ex.** Mariam arrives at school early in the morning.  
 يصل إلى مكان كبير دولة مدينة... **arrive in**  
**Ex.** When does the plane arrive in London?  
 يصل إلى مكان كبير أو صغير... **get to**  
**Ex.** He got to Cairo / the hospital early.

#### 4) home

نأتي كلمة **home** بعد الأفعال **come / get / arrive / leave** بدون حرف جر قبلها:  
 يترك المنزل **leave home** يصل للمنزل **arrive home** يأتي للمنزل **come home**  
**Ex.** My father usually comes home late.

#### 5) help

يساعد... في... **help + to + inf...** يساعد... في... **help + with...**  
**Ex.** Emon always helps her mum to cook food.  
**Ex.** Emon always helps with the housework.

#### Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Mariam's parents visited her at ..... hospital.  
 a. on b. the c. these d. no article
- This box is ..... heavy for me to carry.  
 a. too b. to c. two d. too
- My father has breakfast when he arrives ..... work.  
 a. in b. at c. for d. to
- I won't leave ..... today, I feel tired.  
 a. home b. from home c. for home d. in home
- Could you help me ..... my homework, please?  
 a. to do b. doing c. do d. a & c

## Reading

SB Page (2)

Tim Moriam. My daily routine<sup>(1)</sup> is the same<sup>(2)</sup> every school day! I always get up<sup>(3)</sup> at 6.30 in the morning. My mum always makes my breakfast. I go to school by bus with my friend, Dina. Sometimes we listen to music. My parents work at the hospital. They get home<sup>(4)</sup> late, so I often help to make dinner. In the evening, I do my homework, read on the sofa<sup>(5)</sup>, watch TV and text<sup>(6)</sup> my friends. Then I go to bed!



استمع إلى الصوت



- ١- الروتين اليومي  
٢- نفس الشيء  
٣- يستيقظ  
٤- يصل للمنزل  
٥- أريكة  
٦- يرسل رسالة نصية

SB Page (4)

## My best friend's family

Hi everyone. Today's interview<sup>(1)</sup> is with my best friend Sherifa and her family. Here's a photo of us. Sherifa's on the right<sup>(2)</sup>!



How many people are in your family, Sherifa?

There are five people: me, Mum, Dad and my two brothers.

When do you get up?

I usually get up at 6.30 and help Mum make breakfast. My brothers help, too<sup>(3)</sup>. My dad starts work very early, so he leaves<sup>(4)</sup> home before we get up. That's why<sup>(5)</sup> he doesn't have breakfast with us. He eats when he gets to work. I walk to school with my brothers.

Do you like to study?

Yes, I do. My favourite subject<sup>(6)</sup> is English.

What do you do in the evening?

I listen to music every day. My dad and I sometimes play chess<sup>(7)</sup>. My brothers always watch TV and my mum usually reads.

- ١- مقابلة شخصية  
٢- على اليمين  
٣- أيضًا  
٤- يغادر  
٥- لذلك  
٦- مادة دراسية  
٧- لعبة الشطرنج  
٨- يشاهد التلفاز

## Exercises on Vocabulary

Lessons 1 &amp; 2

يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلي في ملحق الكتاب

الصفحة ٢٠٣ / ملحق ٢٠٢٣

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mona is asking Dina some questions.

Mona : Can I ask you some questions?

Dina : 1

Mona : 2

Dina : I usually get up at 6.30 am.

Mona : 3

Dina : I live with my family.

Mona : Do you listen to music?

Dina : 4

Mona : How often do you listen to music?

Dina : 5

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB &amp; Exams

1. I go to the baker's with my mother ..... to buy bread in the morning. WB

a. daily b. dearly c. dairy d. deeply

2. I saw Ahmed's father on his ..... to work this morning. WB

a. stay b. weight c. holiday d. way

3. Come and sit on this ....., four people can sit on it. WB

a. routine b. sofa c. choir d. seat

4. Many people in the city live in ..... of flats. WB

a. blocks b. blacks c. chests d. houses

5. I have an important ..... today. I hope to get the job. WB

a. view b. group c. interview d. race

6. How often do you ..... dinner? WB

a. spend b. do c. prefer d. make

7. Which sport do you like to ..... ? WB

a. make b. do c. keep d. be

8. I always help my father ..... the jobs that he likes to do in the house.

- a. did      b. does      c. to do      d. doing

Bit by Bit Exercises

9. I use my phone to ..... my friends.

- a. text      b. fix      c. try      d. mix

10. Dina likes to ..... to music in her free time.

- a. play      b. help      c. text      d. listen

11. My daily ..... starts when I get up at seven.

- a. subject      b. way      c. routine      d. time

12. It was rainy, but we could get ..... easily.

- a. at home      b. home      c. to home      d. in home

13. Do you ..... lunch at home or at school, Ali?

- a. have      b. break      c. build      d. hurt

14. "Fun" is the same meaning as .....

- a. boring      b. ugly      c. enjoyable      d. famous

15. My dad likes to ..... on the sofa in the evenings.

- a. swim      b. read      c. help      d. hurt

16. The children had a lot of ..... at the park last week.

- a. fans      b. fine      c. facts      d. fun

17. My teacher always helps me ..... paragraphs.

- a. write      b. writing      c. to writing      d. wrote

18. A: Mohamed watches much TV.  
B: Me. ....

- a. two      b. too      c. too      d. to

19. Osama has a lot of .....; he likes reading, swimming and watching TV.

- a. ways      b. interests      c. times      d. subjects

20. Good food and exercise are good ..... you.

- a. for      b. with      c. at      d. about

Language

1- The present simple tense

Form

I / You / We / They / اسم الجمع → + inf. مصدر الفعل

He / She / It / اسم مفرد → + inf. مصدر الفعل + s / es

Ex. I play football on Fridays. Ex. Hassan comes late.

إضافة للفعل (es) (s) / ch / sh / o / x

cross → crosses      go → goes  
watch → watches      do → does

إزالة للفعل (ies) حذف (y) ونضيف (es):

carry → carries      study → studies

إزالة للفعل (y) حذف حرف متحرك + y

play → plays      buy → buys

Usage

Ex. I am twelve. / He lives in Cairo. / Water boils at 100°C (facts)

Ex. She watches TV at night. (habits)

Ex. They usually sleep early. (daily routines)

Keywords

every (day - week - month - year) / always / usually / often / sometimes / occasionally / never

Ex. Halo always gets up at six o'clock.

Negative

I / You / We / They / اسم الجمع → don't + inf.

He / She / It / اسم مفرد → doesn't + inf.

Ex. I don't like bad people.

Ex. She doesn't watch football matches.



1- يمكن أن نلص الفعل في زمن المضارع البسيط نضع كلمة never قبل الفعل دون تغيير فيه.  
Ex. He never goes to school late.  
2- تذكر أن فعل (Be) يأتي دائما قبل never.  
Ex. Dad is never late for work.

### Question

السؤال

Do Does المضارع البسيط سنستخدم

كما يلي:

Do + I / you / we / they / اسم جمعة + Inf...?

Does + he / she / it / اسم مفرد + Inf...?

Ex. Do you usually watch TV?

- Yes, I do.

Ex. Does he sometimes listen to music?

- Yes, he does.

للسؤال بكلمة استخدم البنية السابقة مع وضع كلمة الاستفهام في أول السؤال.

Ex. When do they get home?

- They get home at eight.

ارجع إلى شرح تكوين السؤال في مقدمة الكتاب.

### 2- Adverbs of frequency

ظروف التكرار

سنستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن عدد مرات حدوث الفعل:

100%

always

I always get up at 6.30 in the morning.  
استيقظ دائما في الساعة ٦.٣٠ صباحا.  
(دوام الوقت)

80%

usually

Ahmed usually plays football.  
يلعب أحمد عادة كرة القدم.  
(في أوقات كثيرة)

70%

often

Sara often watches TV in the evenings.  
تشاهد سارة التلفاز غالبا في المساء.  
(في أغلب الأوقات)

50%

sometimes

My mother sometimes listens to music.  
أمي أحيانا تستمع للموسيقى.  
(أحيانا)

10%

occasionally

It occasionally rains in the summer.  
إنها تمطر من حين لآخر في الصيف.  
(نادرا ما يحدث ذلك)

0%

never

We never go to school on Fridays.  
نحن لا نذهب للمدرسة أيام الجمعة أبدا.  
(ألا يحدث هذا)



Ex. We usually get home late.

Ex. Mariam is never late for school.

1- نلص ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الاساسي

How often...? كم مرة؟

Ex. How often do you read on the sofa?

للإجابة سنستخدم ظرف التكرار المناسب حسب درجة تكرار الفعل.

Ex. I always read on the sofa. (100%)

Ex. I never read on the sofa. (0%)

### Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. Hamdi doesn't ..... coffee for breakfast.

a. drinking b. drink c. is drinking d. drinks

2. What time ..... your first lesson start?

a. do b. doing c. does d. is

3. I ..... my homework before I have my dinner.

a. usually do b. do usually c. does usually d. usually does

4. My father always ..... basketball on Friday.

a. play b. is played c. playing d. plays

5. Samar usually ..... her uncle.

a. visit b. visits c. to visit d. visiting

6. We ..... go to school on holidays.

a. often b. sometimes c. never d. always

7. He never ..... his homework in the evening.

a. do b. done c. doing d. does

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. Doctors ..... helpful.  
a. is always      b. always is      c. are always      d. always are
9. I don't have a mobile, so I ..... text my friends.  
a. usually      b. always      c. no      d. never
10. I ..... drink orange juice. It is so delicious.  
a. always      b. no      c. never      d. don't
11. We ..... Mr Hassan for help.  
a. ask always      b. always ask      c. always asks      d. asks always
12. A: How ..... do you study at night? B: Always.  
a. many      b. much      c. deep      d. often
13. Sara ..... gets high marks in the maths exams. She likes maths.  
a. doesn't      b. never      c. always      d. no
14. Students in Egypt ..... go to school in August.  
a. never      b. isn't      c. usually      d. doesn't
15. Ali is a very clever student. He ..... studies hard.  
a. never      b. always      c. not      d. sometimes
16. People ..... swim in the sea when it is too cold.  
a. often      b. usually      c. never      d. always
17. I ..... ready for any tests at school.  
a. am always      b. usually am      c. always do      d. often am
18. He never comes on time because he ..... usually wake up early.  
a. never      b. don't      c. doesn't      d. not
19. Habiba is my best friend. I ..... sit next to her in my lessons.  
a. never      b. not      c. don't      d. usually
20. Ahmed ..... sees his sister because she lives so far away.  
a. doesn't      b. never      c. don't      d. not
21. I ..... watch TV in the evenings.  
a. Do      b. Never      c. Not      d. Sometimes



2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

الرجاء ان تضع خطية الزدنية عن هذا السؤال من مقدمة الكتاب

SB, WB & Exams

1. A: Does Mariam listen to music on the bus?  
B: Yes, she ..... (do). SB
2. Tamer sometimes ..... (have) lunch at school. الاستاذة: صفاء 2023
3. How often ..... (do) Salma go swimming a week? من سعادته 2023

Bit by Bit Exercises

4. They ..... (watch usually) TV in the evenings.
5. My brother ..... (don't have) a mobile.
6. Omar ..... (never is) rude to people.
7. I like milk. I ..... (never) drink it.
8. Does Ahmed ..... (texts) his friends in the evenings?
9. Ali likes reading. He ..... (never) reads books.

Speaking

Discussing daily routine

مناقشة الروتين اليومي:

نسل ونجيب عن الروتين اليومي كالآتي (انخذ استخدام ظروف التكرار frequency of verbs):

Question

Answer

- |   |                                     |  |   |
|---|-------------------------------------|--|---|
| - Do you have the same routine every day of the week? | هل تتبع نفس الروتين كل يوم اسبوعيا؟ | - Yes, I do.                                   | نعم اتبع نفس الروتين.                   |
| - When do you get up?                                 | متى تستيقظ؟                         | - I always get up at 7:00 o'clock.             | استيقظ دائما في الساعة 7.               |
| - Do you drink coffee for breakfast?                  | هل تتناول القهوة على الإفطار؟       | - No, I never drink coffee for breakfast.      | لا، لا اتناول القهوة ابدا على الإفطار.  |
| - How do you go to school?                            | كيف تذهب للمدرسة؟                   | - I always go to school by bus.                | أذهب دائما بالترابيس.                   |
| - What do you usually do on your way to school?       | ماذا تفعل عادة في طريقك للمدرسة؟    | - I often listen to music on my way to school. | غالبًا أستمع للموسيقى في طريقي للمدرسة. |
| - What do you do in the evening?                      | ماذا تفعل في المساء؟                | - I sometimes watch TV.                        | أحيانًا أشارك التلفاز.                  |

# General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2

الرجوع إلى البيت؟ حصة الدرس عن الأسئلة المختلفة في منطقة الحجاز  
يوجد نصيباً لاختبار الفهم اللغوي في منطقة الحجاز

## 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Basma is asking Hala about her daily routine.

Basma : Hi Hala! When do you usually get up?

Hala : 1 .....

Basma : 2 .....

Hala : I go to school by bus. ?

Basma : 3 .....

Hala : I get home at 3:00 pm.

Basma : What do you do when you get home?

Hala : 4 .....

Basma : What do you do in the evening?

Hala : 5 .....

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Vocabulary

1. I like to ..... my friends in the evenings.

- a. read      b. cover      c. buy      d. text

2. The policeman sent the thief to ..... prison.

- a. the      b. these      c. on      d. no article

3. A : When do you get ..... ? B : At half past six.

- a. of      b. to      c. up      d. at

4. Everyone should ..... sports to keep fit.

- a. make      b. do      c. text      d. build

5. A ..... of flats is a tall building with more than one floor.

- a. blog      b. hobby      c. block      d. way

### Language

6. Dood ..... her mother make dinner.

- a. helps usually      b. usually helps      c. help usually      d. usually help

7. Mothers ..... love their children.

- a. always      b. never      c. don't      d. sometimes

8. A: How ..... do you text your friends? B: Always.

- a. much      b. many      c. often      d. deep

9. .... your father sometimes travel abroad?

- a. Do      b. Does      c. Are      d. Is

10. I ..... get up early on holidays.

- a. doesn't      b. aren't      c. not      d. don't

11. I ..... to school late.

- a. go never      b. never goes      c. never go      d. goes never

12. We ..... English and maths on Tuesdays.

- a. study      b. studying      c. studies      d. are studying

## 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. .... (Do) Sally play music?

2. We ..... (go often) to the zoo on Friday.

3. Omar ..... (always is) early for school.

4. Does your cousin sometimes ..... (visits) you?

5. My friend ..... (comes usually) by bus.

6. Sherehan usually ..... (watch) TV at night.

7. A: Do you usually get up early? B: Yes, I ..... (don't).

## 4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Your daily routine"

ممكن عمل في آخر الوحدة

2023

SB

يمكنك من خلال البداية عن الأسئلة التالية كتابة الفقرة الإرشادية:

- What time do you get up?

- How often do you listen to music?

- How do you go to school?

- When do you do your homework?

يمكن استخدام الجملات التالية:

- I always get up at....

- I usually have... for breakfast.

- I often listen to.....

- I do my homework when .....

## Key Vocabulary

attractive	جذاب / جميل	مؤدق / مستند
poor	فقير	فريقة
prison	سجن	نظام
tap	صنوبر / صنفة	ينفاصم / ينشرك
railway line	خط سكة حديد	

**Vocabulary**

الرفف	the country	حياة (حيوات)	life (lives)
مطعم	restaurant	سكين (سكاكين)	knife (knives)
نادل "جرسون"	waiter	فنجان - كأس	cup
شرايح البطاطس	potato chips	قهوية	end / ending
مثير	exciting	الفرح الشيء لمخالف الاسم لصفة	Odd one out
ينتقل	move (d)	لعب الأدوار (الاسم لصفة)	Role-play
يتغير / يتغير	change (d)	بطيخ	watermelon
يتذكر	remember (ed)	أفيرا	firmly
يستغير	borrow (ed)	منا	together
		ينسحق - يُدعى	(be) called

## Expressions & Prepositions

have adventures	يُمرّ بـ/تـ/أحداث	careful with	حريص من
do a job	يُؤدّي مهنة	at the beginning	في البداية
take ... away from	يأخذ... بعيداً عن	at the end of ...	عند نهاية ...
suggest + V-ing	يقترح	at last	أخيراً
in prison for	في السجن من أجل	in many ways	بطرق كثيرة
water plants	يروي النبات	move from ... to	ينتقل من ... إلى
share ... with	يُشارك... مع	full of	ممتلئ بـ

1

Irregular Verbs		يريد تصحيح أفعال الأفعال غير المنتظمة في اللغة العربية	
Present	Past simple	Past Participle	
know	knew	known	
become	became	become	
feel	felt	felt	
bring	brought	brought	
forget	forgot	forgotten	

## Meaning

**©posite**

attractive	جذاب/جميل	beautiful	رائع
large	كبير الحجم	big	صغير
near	قريب (من)	close	بعيد عن
terrible	فظيع/رئس	very bad	جيد
outside	خارجي/بالخارج	outdoor(s)	داخلي/بالداخل

## Definitions

attractive	جذاب / جميل	nice to look at
prison	سجن	a place where people go when they do something wrong
tap	صنبور (مائي)	something you turn on or off to get water
railway line	خط سكة حديد	the metal 'road' that a train travels on
feed	يُطعم	give food to a person, group or animal
poor	فقير	not having enough money to live well
large	كبير الحجم	big

## Language Notes

1) The relative pronouns "who" and "where"

• يستخدم ضمير الوصل **who** ليحل محل فاعل عاقل بمعنى «الذي. الذين. اللاتي» (وفي هذه الحالة يأتي بعده فعل):

**Ex.** A kind man, who travels on the train every day, became my friend.

• يستخدم ضمير الوصل **who** أيضا ليدل محل مفعول حافل (وفي هذه الحالة يأتي بعده اسم أو ضمير).

**Ex. Alaa, who I like, is my friend.**

• يستخدم ضمير الوصل **where** ليشير إلى المكان بمعنى «حيث»:

**Ex.** There is a tap at the end of the street where we live.

## 2) six-year-old / six years old

\* six-year-old

نستخدم هذه الصيغة كصفة نسبق الاسم الموصوف

لاحظ أن كلمة **year** مفرد بدون (s) ولابد من وضع شرط **hyphens** لنصل الكلمات.

Ex My six-year-old cousin is here and he wants to play a game with me.

\* six years old

نستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن العمر ولا يليها الاسم الموصوف

Ex A: How old is Oia?

B: Oia is six years old.

## 3) chicken

\* chicken

لحم الدجاج (السم لا يعد)

Ex I'd like chicken for lunch.

\* chickens

الدجاج (السم يعد)

Ex I feed the chickens every day.

## 4) country / the country / the countryside

\* country

دولة

Ex Egypt is our country.

\* the country = the countryside

الريف

Ex. Life in the country (the countryside) is calm.

### Check on Language Notes

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The waiter brought us the meal was kind.

a where

b whose

c who

d which

2. My grandma will be seventy next week.

a year old

b years old

c years-old

d year-old

3. Farmers usually keep , sheep and cows on their farms.

a chicken

b chickens

c chicken's

d chickens'

4. We left the city and went to live in .

a a country

b country

c countries

d the country

# Reading

SB Page (6)

## Lives around the world

Tell us about your life!

- What are your hobbies<sup>(1)</sup> and interests?
- What is a typical<sup>(2)</sup> day in your life?
- What job do you want to do one day?

My name's Shadana. I'm from India<sup>(3)</sup>. I live in a village<sup>(4)</sup> with my parents, my brother and my sister.

I share<sup>(5)</sup> a room with my sister. We all get up early. There is an outside<sup>(6)</sup> tap<sup>(7)</sup> at the end<sup>(8)</sup> of the street where we live. My mum gets water from the tap every morning. Then we all have breakfast. We have bread with a cup<sup>(9)</sup> of tea. My dad works in a shop.

I have two jobs to do when I get home from school. I feed<sup>(10)</sup> the chickens<sup>(11)</sup>, then I help my mum make dinner. After dinner, I do my homework. Sometimes I help my brother and sister to do their homework, too. Then I go to bed.



1- دويلات  
2- نموذجي (متعارف)  
3- دولة الهند  
4- قرية  
5- يشترك  
6- يشترك  
7- حارثي  
8- صنبور  
9- نعلية  
10- يذبح  
11- دجاج

SB Page (7)

Yunis : Grandma, have you got a watermelon<sup>(1)</sup>?

Grandma : Yes, I have. It's on the table.

Yunis : Can I have some, please? I like watermelon.

Grandma : Yes, of course<sup>(2)</sup>. We need a knife<sup>(3)</sup> to cut<sup>(4)</sup> it!

Yunis : Shall I help you to cut it?

Grandma : Thank you, Yunis, but be careful<sup>(5)</sup> with the knife!



1- بطيخة  
2- بالطبع  
3- سكين  
4- يقطع  
5- كن حريصاً

Say it correctly

\* knife

لا ينطق حرف k في هذه الكلمة

استمع إلى الصوت



Hi Amal. Have you got that game called Odd one out?

No! I don't play that game now. It's for young children.

Have you got any other children's games? My six-year-old cousin is here and he wants to play a game with me.

Yes, I have Role-play! Do you remember that game?

Yes, I do! Can I borrow it this evening? My cousin would love it!

Of course. Shall I play it, too? It's better with three people, and I still enjoy that game.

Of course! You can come to my house later.

أليبة  
١- لعبة غريبة مختلفة  
٢- لعبة غريبة مختلفة  
٣- لعبة غريبة مختلفة  
٤- لعبة غريبة مختلفة  
٥- لعبة غريبة مختلفة  
٦- لعبة غريبة مختلفة  
٧- لعبة غريبة مختلفة  
٨- لعبة غريبة مختلفة

١- لعبة غريبة مختلفة  
٢- لعبة غريبة مختلفة  
٣- لعبة غريبة مختلفة  
٤- لعبة غريبة مختلفة  
٥- لعبة غريبة مختلفة  
٦- لعبة غريبة مختلفة  
٧- لعبة غريبة مختلفة  
٨- لعبة غريبة مختلفة

### The Railway Children by E. Nesbit

SB Page (8)

It is the 1900s. Roberto, her younger brother Peter and their little sister, Phyllis, live with their parents in London. They have a big, attractive home with a large garden. One terrible day, two men take their father away from home. The children do not know where he is going or why.

The children move from the city with their mother to a small house near a railway line. The family are poor and life is very different for them. The children have lots of adventures near the railway line. A kind old man, who travels on the train every day, becomes their friend.

The old man helps the family in many ways. He helps their father too, because their father is in prison for something he did not do. Finally, their father comes home. The family is so happy to be together again at last.



١- جذاب  
٢- كبير  
٣- طيب، مشرق  
٤- خط سكة حديد  
٥- فقير  
٦- مختلف  
٧- عائلته  
٨- عذوب  
٩- يصنع  
١٠- سجن  
١١- أخيراً

### The Railway Children by E. Nesbit

Ali : This is a nice restaurant. Shall we eat here, Hassan?

Hassan : Yes, that's a good idea.

Waiter : Good evening. Where would you like to sit?

Ali : Can we sit next to the window?

Waiter : Of course. What would you like to eat?

Hassan : Have you got any fish today?

Waiter : Yes, we've got fish with rice or fish with potato chips.

Ali : We'd like fish with rice, please.

Waiter : Shall I bring you some water?

Hassan : Thank you.



١- مطعم  
٢- فكرة جيدة  
٣- نادل (رجل سول)  
٤- رقائق البطاطس  
٥- ينحصر

### Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. My uncle uses a ..... in his garden to water his plants.

a. cap b. map c. tape d. top

2. Roberto's family home has a ..... garden.

a. careful b. helpful c. large d. cheap

3. The opposite of "attractive" is .....

a. small b. ugly c. beautiful d. good

4. On a ..... day, Reem gets up, goes to school and then helps her mother in her shop.

a. typical b. famous c. helpful d. careful

5. I live in a city, but my grandparents live in a ..... among fields.

a. town b. capital c. village d. country

6. I like to ..... the chickens.  
a. feed b. feel c. meet d. drink
7. I like your dress. It's .....  
a. terrible b. attractive c. ugly d. bad
8. This is the man ..... ran after me yesterday.  
a. who b. which c. when d. where
9. Trains travel on ..... lines.  
a. post b. airway c. railway d. servant
10. Two dangerous men escaped from ..... last week.  
a. prison b. school c. work d. university
11. Her family was very ..... They couldn't buy her a new dress.  
a. attractive b. poor c. happy d. rich
12. One ..... day, Hassan had an accident on his way home.  
a. terrible b. nice c. good d. wonderful
13. The opposite of "near" is .....  
a. close b. full of c. far d. high
14. The two men had an interesting ..... in the forest last week.  
a. adventure b. flight c. address d. text
15. Our science teacher suggested ..... on a trip to a factory.  
a. to going b. go c. to go d. going
16. I'd like to have a ..... of tea without sugar.  
a. cup b. tap c. cup d. tape
17. I share a bedroom ..... my brother Ali.  
a. to b. with c. by d. for
18. The ..... in this restaurant is very friendly.  
a. doctor b. food c. knife d. waiter
19. We were scared when the room was full ..... smoke.  
a. at b. of c. on d. off
20. Don't forget ..... your hands before meals.  
a. to washing b. washing c. wash d. to wash

Bit by Bit Exercises

Language

Questions with (Can) / (Shall) & (Have .... got)

Ex. Do you live in Giza?

Ex. Will Habbiba come home tomorrow?

Can + subject + inf...?

Ex. Can I borrow your book today?

Ex. What can you see in the picture?

Shall I / we + subject + inf...?

Ex. Shall I carry your bag?

Ex. Shall I call again on Tuesday?

Ex. What shall we do with that problem?

تذكر أن (Shall) تستخدم غالباً مع الضمائر (I / we) فقط.

Have / Has + subject + got...?

تستخدم (Have / Has .... got) للسؤال بمعنى (هل ... يمتلك ...؟).

Ex. Have you got any new games?

- Yes, I have.

- No, I haven't.

Ex. Has she got any friends?

- Yes, she has.

- No, she hasn't.

# Exercises on Language

يُوجد تدريبات اللغة الإنجليزية في كل وحدة

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

- Grandma, ..... you got a watermelon?  
a. shall b. can c. has d. have **SB**
- Hi! ..... we play a game next weekend?  
a. Have b. Do c. Shall d. Has **WB**
- ..... your father got a computer?  
a. Has b. Shall c. Can d. Do **WB**
- ..... I help you carry your books?  
a. Am b. Does c. Shall d. Have **WB**
- ..... your father got a blue car?  
a. Have b. Has c. Can d. Shall **WB**
- We ..... buy bread at the baker's.  
a. have b. has c. can d. shall **WB**

## Bit by Bit Exercises

- ..... we go to the cinema today?  
a. Shall b. Has c. Have d. Are
- ..... you got any stories to read?  
a. Has b. Have c. Are d. Do
- ..... you help me lift this heavy box?  
a. Do b. Have c. Can d. Shall
- ..... we go out today?  
a. Did b. Shall c. Have d. Do
- ..... I bring you a glass of juice?  
a. Do b. Am c. Shall d. Have
- A: ..... your dad play chess?  
B: Yes, he is clever at it.  
a. Has b. Is c. Do d. Can

- ..... you got science or maths today?  
a. Has b. Have c. Can d. Shall
  - ..... Mr Hossam drive a bus?  
a. Do b. Has c. Is d. Can
  - ..... you take me to the airport, dad?  
a. Has b. Is c. Can d. Do
  - ..... I put this wet umbrella on the sofa?  
a. Shall b. Has c. Does d. Am
  - ..... Salah help me with my computer problem?  
a. Am b. Is c. Have d. Can
- 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
- This is a nice restaurant. .... (Do) we eat here, Hossam?
  - Have you ..... (get) any cousins?
  - ..... (Are) we help Ahmed with his problem?
  - ..... (Am) I see your passport, please?
  - ..... (Do) you get me some juice, please?
  - What shall we ..... (doing) with this new camera?
  - ..... (Have) your little sister got a new doll?
  - I have some guests, what ..... (have) I cook?

## Speaking

Asking and answering about moving to a new house.

السؤال والالجابة عن الانتقال لمنزل جديد:

### Question

- How did you feel when you moved to a new house?  
كيف شعرت عندما انتقلت لمنزل جديد؟
- How was it at first?  
كيف كان الامر في البداية؟
- Why was it difficult?  
لماذا كان الامر صعبا؟

### Answer

- I felt very sad because the new house was smaller.  
شعرت بحتى شديد لان المنزل الجديد كان اصغر حجفا.
- It was very difficult.  
كان الامر صعبا جدا.
- I didn't have any friends.  
لم يكن لدى اى اصدقاء.

## General Exercises

هذه التمارين العامة عن الوحدة الأولى من المنهج الدراسية في صفحة 48  
يهدف من خلالها الطالب لتثبيت المفردات في ذاكرته

## 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali and Rami are talking about Ali's new house.

Ali : Hi, Rami. My family moved to a new house.

Rami : 1

Ali : It's in Orobi street.

Rami : 2

Ali : Yes, it's very large.

Rami : How did you feel when you moved to it?

Ali : 3

Rami : Why? 4

Ali : I know it's better, but I have no friends there.

Rami : 5

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Vocabulary

1. A ..... is a place where people go when they do something wrong.

a. hospital b. prison c. theatre d. beach

2. Trains move along railway .....

a. rows b. farms c. tops d. lines

3. People without enough money are .....

a. poor b. healthy c. strong d. careless

4. We can play football in the garden. It's really .....

a. small b. large c. ugly d. little

5. This food tastes very bad; it's .....

a. beautiful b. nice c. delicious d. terrible

## Language

6. .... I open the door for you?

a. Shall b. Have c. Am d. Was

7. .... she got any new dresses?

a. Have b. Does c. Has d. Is

8. .... you got a camera? I need to take a photo.

a. Has b. Have c. Shall d. Can

9. .... I have some water, please?

a. Can b. Do c. Must d. Have

10. .... Sammy got a new mobile?

a. Will b. Have c. Has d. Is

## 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. Shall we ..... (goes) to the beach tomorrow?

2. .... (Have) he got a new bike?

3. I have a birthday party, ..... (do) I make a cake?

4. Can I ..... (to take) this book when you finish it?

5. .... (Have) I help you to cut the watermelon?

6. .... (Has) you got something to eat mum?

## 4 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

to your penfriend John about your new house.

- Your name is Omar and your email address is omar22@yahoo.com

- Your penfriend's email address is John55@gmail.com

يكتب الطالب بريد إلكتروني

يبدأ من خلال الجملتين عن الأسئلة التي في رسالة البريد الإلكتروني

- Who bought the house?

- Is your new house big or small?

- Does it have a garden?

- How many rooms does it have?

يكتب المستخدم العبارات التالية

- ..... bought us a new house.

- My new house is ....

- It has/ doesn't have .....

- It has ..... rooms.

- The house is near .....



## Key Vocabulary

armchair	كرسي مريح	bookshelf	رف الكتب
basin	حوض	chest of drawers	خزانة ذات درج
carpet	سجادة	lamp	اللمبة / مصباح
curtains	ستائر	mirror	مرآة
cushion	وسادة (معددة)	wardrobe	دولاب الملابس
downstairs	أسفل	cushion	وسادة (معددة)

## Prepositions of place

next to	بجوار	behind	خلف	in front of	أمام	under	تحت

on	على	opposite	أمام - في مقابل	in	في - داخل

## Vocabulary

bedroom	غرفة نوم	cupboard	دولاب
bathroom	حمام	notionality	جنسية
break	فترة راحة (قصيدة)	chsent	غالب
sunlight	ضوء الشمس	floor	أرضية الحجر / طابق
Best wishes	أطيب الأمنيات	hope (d)	أمل
perfriend	صديق مرسل	describe (d)	يصف
corner	ركن	practise (d)	يمارس
downstairs	بالطابق السفلي	match (ed)	يلتقي مع / يلتزم

## Expressions & Prepositions

practise English	يتمرن اللغة الإنجليزية	like ... best	أحب ... أحسن
play music	يعزف موسيقى	belong to	يخص / ينتمي لـ
take photos	يلتقط صور	hear from	يبلغ الخبر أو خطابات من
get dressed	يرتدي ملابس	look out of ...	ينظر خارج ...
a breakfast break	فترة راحة لتناول وجبة الإفطار	on the front	في المقدمة
(be) a short walk from	على مسافة قصيرة من	thank ... for	يشكر ... لـ

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
read	قرأ	read
send	يرسل	sent
write	يكتب	wrote

## Word

## Meaning

## Opposite

start	يبدأ	begin	يبدأ
far	بعيد	away	بعيد
downstairs	بالطابق السفلي	below	أعلى
		upstairs	بالطابق العلوي

## Definitions

armchair	كرسي مريح	a large comfortable chair with parts	كرسي مريح
basin	حوض	a bowl for washing, usually with taps, in a bathroom, bedroom, etc	أحواض
carpets	سجاد	these are on the floor	هذه السجادة على الأرض
wardrobe	دولاب الملابس	a large cupboard in which you can put your clothes	خزانة ملابس
curtains	ستائر	they are next to your windows and you close them at night	ستائر
mirror	مرآة	a piece of special glass in which you can see yourself and what is behind you	مرآة
lamp	اللمبة / مصباح	something that gives light	شيء يعطي الضوء
chest of drawers	خزانة ذات درج	a piece of furniture with drawers (boxes with handles) on them to put things in	خزانة ملابس

## Language Notes

### 1) love / would love

- love  
يُحب  
to + Inf or V-ing  
Ex. I love taking / to take photos of birds.
- would ('d) love  
يُحبّ بعدها دائماً  
to + Inf.  
Ex. I'd love to visit the nature reserves near Al Fajoun.

### 2) wardrobe / cupboard

- wardrobe  
دولاب الملابس  
Ex. She put her dress in the wardrobe.
- cupboard  
دولاب الخبز / ملابس وأشياء أخرى  
Ex. Put the plates in the kitchen cupboard, please.

### 3) information / advice / news / furniture

- هذه الكلمات تعامل معاملة المفرد ولا نضع لهم اسم أدوات نكرة a / an  
ويستخدم فعل لفاعل مفرد  
v + s - is - was - does - has  
Ex. The information he gave me was important.

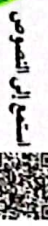
#### Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'd love ..... a meal outside tonight.  
a. have      b. to have      c. having      d. to having
2. She keeps the towels in a small ..... in the bathroom.  
a. cupboard      b. wardrobe      c. board      d. blackboard
3. The news in today's newspaper ..... good.  
a. are      b. were      c. be      d. is

## Audio script

SB Page (9)



استمع إلى الصوت

Boy: My room is small, but it's really attractive. I have the lamp<sup>(1)</sup> on a bookshelf<sup>(2)</sup> next to my bed so I can read at night. I have a wardrobe<sup>(3)</sup> with a mirror<sup>(4)</sup> on the front, and my desk is under the window. Do you like my curtains<sup>(5)</sup>? The colour matches<sup>(6)</sup> the carpet<sup>(7)</sup>.



The best thing about my room is the sofa. I can sit there and read or watch videos on my computer.

Girl: My bed is under the window. There are cushions<sup>(8)</sup> on it! Sometimes I sleep with the curtains open because I like to look out of the window! I've got lots of books, and I like to sit and read in the big armchair<sup>(9)</sup>.

I keep some clothes in the chest of drawers<sup>(10)</sup>. Our bathroom<sup>(11)</sup> is downstairs<sup>(12)</sup>, but I have a basin<sup>(13)</sup> in my room, where I can wash my face before I go to bed.



- lamp (CCT) يَنتِظُ حرف C في هذه الكلمة مثلما يَنتِظُ في كلمة (CCT)
- wardrobe يَنتِظُ حرف C في هذه الكلمة مثلما يَنتِظُ في كلمة (scm)
- curtains يَنتِظُ حرف C في هذه الكلمة مثلما يَنتِظُ في كلمة (curia)
- cushion يَنتِظُ حرف C في هذه الكلمة مثلما يَنتِظُ في كلمة (good)

- 1- لآلؤة
- 2- رف للكتب
- 3- دولاب الملابس
- 4- مرآة
- 5- ستائر
- 6- يتماشى مع
- 7- سجادة
- 8- وسائد
- 9- كرسي إصبع
- 10- خزانة ملابس
- 11- حمام
- 12- في الطابق الأسفل
- 13- حوض

WB Page (76)

I like my parents' bedroom. When they open the curtains, there is always lots of sunlight<sup>(1)</sup> in the room. Their bed is under the window. In front of the bed, they have a big wardrobe. My mum puts her dresses in there. There is also an armchair next to the window. My dad sometimes reads his book here. He puts his clothes in a big chest of drawers. This is behind the door. They don't have a basin in their room because the bathroom is next to their room, but they have a big mirror. My sister always likes to look at<sup>(2)</sup> herself in it!

- 1- ضوء الشمس
- 2- تنظر إلى

# Reading

SB Page (10)

## New Message

Dear Rebecca,

It is very nice to meet you. My name is Judy. I'm from El Faiyum, in Egypt. It's a large city, with beautiful nature nearby. I live with my parents and my brother in a flat. My grandparents live in a flat downstairs. On Saturdays, I usually get up early and help my grandmother with her shopping<sup>1</sup>, then I read or do my homework. In the afternoons, I visit my friends or play computer games with my brother. My favourite subjects<sup>2</sup> are maths and English. Thank you for being my penfriend<sup>3</sup>. I am happy to be able to practise<sup>4</sup> my English! I hope to hear from you soon.

Judy

١- محبة طيبة

٢- لاسورة

٣- مودة دائمة

٤- صديق مرسل

٥- يدرس

Say it correctly

• reserve

١/2 يطق حرف 5 في هذه الكلمة مثل لطق صوت /z/

## New Message

SB Page (11)

Hi Alex!

Thanks for being my penfriend. I'm from England<sup>1</sup>. I get up at about half past seven, and then my mum makes breakfast for the family. I walk to school with my brother. Our school finishes at three o'clock. After school, we sometimes do sport or play music. I don't watch TV when I get home, I always do my homework first. Can you tell me about your typical daily routine in Germany<sup>2</sup>?

١- إنجلترا  
٢- ألمانيا  
٣- فترة زمنية محددة

Hi Dani!

Thanks for your email. In Germany, school starts very early in the morning. So I don't have breakfast before school. There is a 'breakfast break'<sup>1</sup> after the first lesson. How many lessons does your school have every day?

١- ٤ | ٥ | ٦ | ٧ | ٨ | ٩ | ١٠ | ١١ | ١٢

SB Page (11)

I love my bedroom<sup>1</sup>! I have a big white wardrobe in the corner<sup>2</sup>. Next to it, there is a mirror. I look at myself in it in the mornings. I also have a small bookshelf where I put my books.

Next to this, there is a big window. I have blue curtains on it. I close them at night. I also have a red lamp next to my bed. I use it to read before I go to sleep.

Also in my bedroom, there is a grey armchair. I sit and read my book there sometimes. There is also a chest of drawers. I put my T-shirts, socks<sup>3</sup> and other clothes in it. Finally<sup>4</sup>, there is a big carpet on the floor<sup>5</sup>.



١- غرفة نوم  
٢- زاوية  
٣- جوارب  
٤- أخيراً  
٥- أرضية الخشبية

## New Message

WB Page (17)

Hi Tamer

Thank you for your email. I would love to visit the nature reserves near El Faiyum. There are no nature reserves where I live in Cambridge<sup>1</sup>, but there are some nice parks nearby. I would love to help you with your English. Please write to me again soon.

Yours,  
Oliver

١- مدينة كامبريدج

## New Message

WB Page (17)

Hi Leila

Thank you for your email. Here is some information<sup>1</sup> about me. I live with my parents and my two sisters in Oxford<sup>2</sup>. We live in a house but we don't have a garden<sup>3</sup>. Does your home have a garden? Without a garden, I often go to the park at the weekends. I love taking photos<sup>4</sup> of the birds there. Do you have many birds where you live?

I enjoy my school and I have many friends there. The school is a short walk<sup>5</sup> from my house. Is your school nearby, or is it far from your home? I hope you can write to me again soon and please answer my questions! Best wishes

Mariano

Send

١- ٤ | ٥ | ٦ | ٧ | ٨ | ٩ | ١٠ | ١١ | ١٢

## Videoscript

SB Page (9)

Narrator :

This is a chair from Ancient Egypt<sup>(1)</sup>, and it is more than four thousand years old. Like many chairs today, it is made from wood.

In Ancient Egypt, only the richest<sup>(2)</sup> people had wooden furniture<sup>(3)</sup> because it was very expensive.

Today, most people have wooden furniture and it is not usually very expensive.

We all sit on chairs at home. But in Ancient Egypt, only very rich people used chairs. Other people sat on the floor.

Here is another chair from Ancient Egypt. It is made from wood, but it is covered in gold<sup>(4)</sup>. Can you see the lions' heads? It belonged to<sup>(5)</sup> the pharaoh<sup>(6)</sup>, Tutankhamun<sup>(7)</sup>. You can see it in the Museum of Egyptian Antiquities<sup>(8)</sup> in Cairo.

We believe that the Ancient Egyptians made the very first<sup>(9)</sup> tables. This table is more than 3,000 years old.



Today, tables are usually made from wood. But in Ancient Egypt, they were sometimes made from stone<sup>(10)</sup>. They used tables for many things, such as writing, eating and playing games.

The Ancient Egyptians also used mirrors<sup>(11)</sup>. Today, mirrors are usually made from glass. This mirror is more than 3,000 years old and it is made from metal<sup>(12)</sup>.

Do you look at yourself in a mirror when you leave home? What other furniture do you have at home?



- 1- مصر القديمة  
2- الأغنياء  
3- الأثاث الخشبي  
4- مغطى بالذهب  
5- يخص  
6- فرعون  
7- توت عنخ آمون  
8- متحف الآثار  
9- المصريون القدماء  
10- الأول من نوعها  
11- المرآة  
12- المعدن

## Exercises on Vocabulary

Lessons 5 &amp; 6

يوجد تمارين إضافية للوحب المتالي في ملحق الكتاب.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB &amp; Exams

1. A ..... gives you light.

a. leaf

b. lamb

c. lake

d. lamp

WB

2. A ..... is a big cupboard where you can put your clothes.

a. wardrobe

b. chair

c. blackboard

d. sofa

WB

3. You can see yourself in a/an .....

a. armchair

b. wardrobe

c. mirror

d. basin

WB

4. My bed is under the window. There are a lot of ..... on it!

a. information

b. cushions

c. news

d. tables

WB

5. I can't see my friend because he is ..... me.

a. next to

b. in front of

c. beside

d. behind

WB

6. We have a beautiful ..... on the floor in front of the living room.

a. fridge

b. curtain

c. carpet

d. TV

WB

7. You can wash your face in this .....

a. wardrobe

b. basin

c. curtain

d. lamp

WB

## Bit by Bit Exercises

8. Five people can sit on that ..... at the same time.

a. sofa

b. chair

c. armchair

d. lamp

9. Hala keeps her books on a big ..... over there.

a. booklet

b. bookshelf

c. bookshop

d. bookstore

WB

10. We live in a building ..... the Giza Zoo.

a. in

b. in front

c. next

d. opposite

WB

11. I usually close the ..... of my room at night.

a. beds

b. sofas

c. curtains

d. carpets

WB

12. The post office is ..... to the cinema.

a. next

b. in front

c. opposite

d. on

WB

13. To protect animals, we keep them in a .....

a. mountain

b. country

c. river

d. nature reserve

WB

14. A: Who does this red car belong to? B: It's Ahmed's.  
a. to b. for c. out d. off
15. I always leave my keys ..... the table over there.  
a. in b. on c. out d. onto
16. To make your English better, ..... it inside and outside school.  
a. take b. dress c. stay d. practise
17. Soha ..... dressed and went to the cinema.  
a. got b. took c. kept d. made
18. The furniture in this villa ..... very expensive.  
a. are b. is c. were d. have

### Speaking

#### 1) Types of questions

##### Yes / No questions

(be / do / have / will / can)?

(Yes) أو (No)

Ex. Did you go to the park? Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

##### Wh-questions

هي الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام مثل:

What	ماذا / لاشيأ	How	كيف (الطريقة / الحال)
Where	أين (المكان)	How many	كم العدد
Who	من (الشخص)	How long	ما المدة / كم طول
When	متى (الزمن)	How much	مازن / كم كمية
Why	لماذا (السبب)	How often	كم عدد المرات

Ex. How do you go to school?

#### Notes

- يتم تكوين السؤال كما يلي:
- 1
  - 2
  - 3
  - 4
  - 5
- Ex. What do you do in the mornings?  
- ارجع إلى شرح كيفية تكوين السؤال بالتفصيل في مقدمة الكتاب.

#### 2) Describing your bedroom and furniture

- وصف حجرة نومك والأثاث الخاص بك

- There is/ are ..... in my bedroom.  
Ex. There are two beds in my bedroom.

هناك ..... في حجرة نومي

- I have a big/ small ..... in the corner.  
Ex. I have a big wardrobe in the corner.

لدي ..... كبير/ صغير في الزاكن.

- The ..... is/ are on/ under/ next to/ opposite .....  
Ex. My bed is under the window.  
Ex. There is a lamp next to my bed.

يوجد على / تحت / بجوار / مقابل .....

### General Exercises

on Lessons 5 & 6

#### 1) Complete the following dialogue:

Ayman is asking Salah about his bedroom.

Ayman : Do you have a bedroom, Salah?

Salah : 1 .....

Ayman : Can you describe it?

Salah : 2 .....

Ayman : Where do you put your clothes?

Salah : 3 .....

Ayman : 4 .....

Salah : I put my books on a bookshelf.

Ayman : 5 .....

Salah : Yes, I love it very much.

#### 2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

##### Vocabulary

1. We keep things such as clothes in a .....  
a. mirror b. sofa c. bottle d. chest of drawers
2. Ali closed the door and sat in a/an ..... next to the window.  
a. armchair b. basin c. curtain d. mirror

3. We cover the floor of my bedroom with a big .....  
 a. basin b. carpet c. mirror d. curtain  
 4. Sally has a lot of clothes, so she has a big .....  
 a. mirror b. sofa c. wardrobe d. lamp

### Language

5. He learns English quickly because he ..... it a lot.  
 a. practises b. drives c. keeps d. closes  
 6. There is a lamp ..... to my bed.  
 a. behind b. under c. next d. in front  
 7. The cat is sleeping on a soft ..... on the sofa.  
 a. basin b. cushion c. drawer d. bookshelf  
 8. I love ..... photos of animals in the zoo.  
 a. taking b. to take c. take d. a & b

### 3 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

to your new penfriend Jessica about yourself.

- Your name is Nourhan and your email address is nour85@yohoo.com.

- Your penfriend's email address is Jessica14@gmail.com

(محاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

يمكنك من خلال الدخالة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني:

- What is your name?  
 - Where do you live?  
 - What do you like to do?  
 - What do you do with your parents / friends?  
 - My name is ....  
 - I live in ....  
 - It's a nice city .....  
 - Every Friday, I .....  
 - In the evenings, I ...  
 - Thank you for .....  
 يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

## Unit 1

# Review

### Vocabulary

daily	يومي	interview	مقابلة شخصية	large	كبير
routine	روتين (نظام متكرر)	way	طريق	terrible	فظي / رديء
sofa	أريكة (خفيفة)	poor	فقير	railway line	خط سكة حديد
typical	نموذجي (متألف)	prison	سجن	near	قريب (من)
village	قرية	armchair	كرسي بمسندين	nature reserve	محمية طبيعية
top	صليب / حافة	bookshelf	رف للكتب	curtains	ستائر
lamp	لمبة / مصباح	chest of drawers	خزانة ذات درج	cushion	وسادة (محمدة)
block of flats	عمارة سكنية	basin	حوض	share (d)	يتقاسم / يشارك
mirror	مرآة	carpet	سجادة	feed (fed / feed)	يُغذى
wardrobe	دولاب (الملابس)	attractive	جذاب / جميل	text (red / in)	يرسل رسالة نصية

### 1) The present simple tense

يكون زمن المضارع البسيط من الفعل في المصدر ويضاف له (s / es / ies) مع المفرد الغائب:

Ex. We go to school early.

Ex. He comes home at 7 o'clock.

يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات / حقائق / روتين:

Ex. Hamdi always smokes at home.

Ex. Nada is a dentist.

من الكلمات الدالة على زمن المضارع البسيط:

always - often - usually - sometimes - occasionally / never / every (day - week - month - year)

نفس الفعل في زمن المضارع البسيط يستخدم (don't / doesn't / never).

Ex. I don't / never play tennis.

للسؤال عن فعل في زمن المضارع البسيط تستخدم:

do / does + فعل + inf...?

Ex. Do you live in Tanta?

Ex. When does he get up?

## 2 Adverbs of frequency

نستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن عدد مرات حدوث الفعل.

always → usually → often → sometimes → never  
(100%) (80%) (70%) (50%) (0%)

ثاني ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي / بعد فعل (be).

Ex. Hoda always sleeps in the afternoons.

نستخدم (How often ...?) لسؤال عن عدد مرات حدوث فعل.

Ex. How often do you study in the evenings?

## 3 Questions with (Can) / (Shall) & (Have ... got)

• نستخدم (Can) للسؤال بمعنى هل ... أم لا / هل تستطيع ...؟  
Ex. Can you climb that tree?

• نستخدم (Shall) للسؤال لتقديم العروض / الاقتراح / الطلب / النصيحة.  
Ex. Shall I carry your bag? (Offer)

Ex. Shall we go to the zoo? (Suggestion)

Ex. What shall I do when dad arrives? (Asking for advice)

نذكر أن (Shall) نستخدم غالباً مع الضمائر (I / we) فقط.

• نستخدم (Have / Has ... got) للسؤال بمعنى هل ... لديك / يملك ...؟  
Ex. Have you got a good camera?

## Speaking

### 1 Discussing daily routine

السؤال والجابة عن الأنشطة

#### Question

- Do you have the same routine every day of the week?

- When do you get up?

- How do you go to school?

- What do you do in the evening?

#### Answer

- Yes, I do.

- I always get up at 7:00 o'clock.

- I always go to school by bus.

- I sometimes watch TV.

### 2 Asking and answering about moving to a new house.

السؤال والجابة عن الانتقال لبيت جديد

#### Question

- How did you feel when you moved to a new house?

#### Answer

- I felt very sad because the new house was smaller.

## 3 Describing your bedroom and furniture

General Exercises  
تمارين عامة

- There is / are ..... in my bedroom.  
- I have a big / small ..... in the corner.  
- The ..... is / are on / under / next to / opposite .....

## General Exercises on Unit 1

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mariam is telling Samah about her daily routine.

Samah : Hello, Mariam. Could you tell me about your daily routine?

Mariam : 1 .....

Samah : 2 .....

Mariam : 3 .....

Samah : 4 .....

Mariam : I always go to school on foot.

Samah : When do you usually get home?

Mariam : 5 .....

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

#### Vocabulary

1. The opposite of "terrible" is ..... WB  
a. good b. far c. small d. ugly

2. .... time does Doni's school finish? WB  
a. When b. How c. Where d. What

3. The sofa is next ..... the chest of drawers.  
a. to b. for c. of d. on

4. Robert's new house is in the country near a railway ..... WB  
a. club b. line c. tree d. classroom

5. Hassan forgot to bring any food for the picnic, but we can ..... our food. WB  
a. check b. damage c. share d. change

6. Robert's family home in the city is big and ..... I like going there. WB  
a. little b. ugly c. terrible d. attractive

7. This family do not have much money and now they are ..... WB  
a. happy b. poor c. rich d. excited

8. Roberta feels ..... when some men take their father from their home. WB  
a. terrible b. favourite c. cheap d. exciting

## Language

9. .... you got any English friends?      c. Have  
a. Do      b. Can      d. Shall
10. Hassan is a clever boy. He ..... gets full marks.  
a. never      b. not      c. does      d. always
11. A: How ..... do you brush your teeth?  
B: Twice every day.      b. many      c. for      d. much
12. .... you swim across that river?  
a. Shall      b. Have      c. Can      d. Are
13. Mum never sleeps before she ..... my little sister.  
a. fed      b. feeds      c. feed      d. feeding
14. Omar and Hani ..... go to school late.  
a. doesn't      b. aren't      c. isn't      d. never
15. What ..... I do to speak English well?  
a. shall      b. does      c. is      d. have

## 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. .... (Have) Hamada got a laptop?  
(get) an English penfriend?
2. Has Noha ..... (go usually) to the club at the weekend.
3. I ..... (always) gets up early.
4. Ali is a lazy student. He ..... (never) polite.
5. All teachers like Gehad because she is ..... (never) polite.
6. A: How ..... (much) do you go to school? B: Five times a week.

## 4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"What you and your family usually do in the holidays"

(محتاج عنه في آخر الوحدة)

WB

يمكنك من خلال الجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة المقطع الرئيسي:

- Where do you usually go in the holidays?  
يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- Do you have a routine in the holidays?  
- How do you like to spend your time in the holidays?
- In the holidays, I get up ....  
- We usually go to.....
- I always help .....  
- In the evening, I.....

## Paragraphs &amp; Emails

## 1- My daily routine/ What do I do every day?

(Lessons 1 & 2)

My daily routine is the same every day. I like getting up early. I always get up at 6 in the morning. My mum always makes our breakfast. I have a shower. I put on my school uniform. I always go to school by bus. My parents work at the nearby hospital. They get home late. I often help to make dinner. In the evening, I do my homework. I always go to bed at 9.

## 2- My new house (Lessons 3 &amp; 4)

To : john55@gmail.com

From : omar22@yohoo.com

Subject : My new house

Dear John,

How are you and your family? We moved in a new house last week. It's a big house with a garden. It's near my school. It has five rooms. I have a big bedroom with a bathroom. It has a big window looking at the garden. The house has a big gate and a garage. I hope you can write to me soon.

Best wishes

Yours,

Omar

## 3- About myself (Lessons 5 &amp; 6)

To : jessica14@gmail.com

From : nour85@yohoo.com.

Dear Jessica,

It is nice to write to you. My name is Nourhan. I'm from Ismailia, in Egypt. It's a nice city on the Red Sea. Every Friday, I play tennis with my friends.

## 4- What I and my family usually do in the holidays (General Exercises)

There are five people in my family: me, mum, dad and my two brothers. We don't usually have a routine in the holidays. I get up at 11. My mum is a housewife. I always help her make breakfast. My brothers help, too. My dad is a dentist. He usually takes us to a nearby park. We have fun when we go there. We have lunch and take a lot of selfies there. We go home at about four o'clock.

Yours,

Nourhan

## 5- What I do every day (Al Azhar)

I always get up at 6 in the morning. My mum always makes our breakfast. I have a shower and put on my school uniform. I always go to school by bus. In the evening, I do my homework.

## 6- A description of my bedroom (Test)

I like my bedroom. When I get up, I open the curtains. My bed is under the window. I have a big wardrobe in front of the bed. There is also a sofa next to the window. I always read books on it. I put my things in a big chest of drawers. I don't have a basin in my bedroom. The bathroom is next to my room. It has a big mirror.



### A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

- The speaker has a ..... routine.  
a. simple      b. hard      c. fast      d. slow
- The speaker wants to be a/an .....  
a. doctor      b. teacher      c. scientist      d. farmer

### B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1- **Mustafa** : What do you usually do in the holidays?

**Emad** : .....

2- **Yasmin** : .....

**Mariam** : There are five people: me, Mum, Dad and my two brothers.

### C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The internet is really important in our ..... life.  
a. doing      b. daily      c. dear      d. diary
- A**: Where is the post office, please?  
**B**: It's ..... the bank.  
a. next      b. in front      c. opposite      d. under
- What ..... we do to help poor people?  
a. shall      b. has      c. are      d. have
- My mother always ..... her clothes herself.  
a. making      b. make      c. to make      d. makes
- We usually keep books on .....  
a. wardrobes      b. bookshelves  
c. chest of drawers      d. fridges
- Have you ..... a pet at home?  
a. got      b. getting      c. get      d. gets

### D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I always get up at 7 o'clock in the morning. I wash my face and brush my teeth. After that, I do some exercises then I put my clothes on and prepare my school bag. At 8 o'clock, I go to school and start my first class. I return home at 2 pm. I go to the bathroom to have a shower. I do my homework. I help my mother in the kitchen. Then, I have a snack. I usually have dinner at about 8 pm. I watch TV with my family and check my mail with my sister. Finally, I go to bed at 10 pm.

A. Answer the following questions:

- What does the writer do when he/ she gets up?
- When does the writer start his/her first class?
- What does the writer do in the kitchen?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The writer gets up at ..... o'clock in the morning.  
a. five      b. seven      c. six      d. eight
- The writer helps his mother in the .....  
a. farm      b. garden      c. kitchen      d. class

### E Writing

5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"What do you do every day?"

(أجب على هذا السؤال)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الكتابة عن الأنشطة التي تقوم بها في يومك:

- Do you have a daily routine?
- Who makes your breakfast?
- I get up at .....
- I go to school by .....
- I always go to bed at .....
- Do you like getting up early?
- What do you do in the morning?
- I have a shower and I .....
- In the evening, I watch .....

يمكن استخدام الجملات التالية:



## A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

- The speaker's grandmother and ..... live in Alex.  
a. grandfather      b. father      c. mother      d. sister
- They live next to the .....  
a. river      b. lake      c. beach      d. mountain
- They have a beautiful .....  
a. car      b. bus      c. taxi      d. house
- It takes the speaker ..... hours to go to Alex.  
a. eleven      b. three      c. nine      d. ten

## B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Salma is asking Dina about her city.

Salma : Where are you from?

Dina : .....

Salma : Is El Fayoum a beautiful city?

Dina : .....

Salma : .....

Dina : I live with my parents and my brothers.

Salma : .....

Dina : My favourite subjects are maths and English.

Salma : Nice to meet you.

Dina : .....

## C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

رجع إلى شرح كلمة الوحدة عن صفحة المعجم في مقدمة الكتاب

I am Aya. My bedroom is wide and bright. I keep it clean and tidy because it is my favourite room in the house. Its walls are white and the floor is brown. On the floor, there is a big blue carpet. I have two sofas, a table and an armchair. I also have a small chest of drawers where I put my clothes. I enjoy reading so there is a bookshelf with many books on it. On the bookshelf, there is a vase with a small plant and an old clock.

There are two windows and both of them have got lovely curtains. I made them myself. I like to read and have a rest in my bedroom. It's warm and comfortable.

A. Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the passage?
- What does Aya like to do in her bedroom?
- Where does Aya put her clothes?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the .....  
a. vase      b. carpet      c. bookshelf      d. armchair
- Aya's favourite room in the house is the .....  
a. kitchen      b. bedroom      c. living room      d. dining room
- There is a big ..... carpet on the floor.  
a. yellow      b. white      c. black      d. blue

## D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Roberto's father left ....., and the family were happy to be together again. **WB**  
a. museum      b. prison      c. bed      d. mosque
- There are many ..... of flats in the new city.  
a. breaks      b. backs      c. books      d. blocks
- Hassan always gets ..... early.  
a. up      b. at      c. out      d. in

4. Can you ..... my mother for me, because my phone is not working?  
a. break b. listen c. text d. read
5. .... you got a mobile? I need to send a message.  
a. Has b. Does c. Do d. Have
6. .... often do you help to make dinner?  
a. Why b. How c. When d. Who
7. Mr. Hossam is a good teacher. He ..... works hard.  
a. never b. doesn't c. don't d. always
8. Hossam is really kind. He ..... his toys with his friends.  
a. checks b. happens c. shares d. cleans
9. Your village is warm and clean. It is really .....  
a. ugly b. attractive c. terrible d. dirty
10. We do the same things every day when we're on holiday, because my family like to have a .....  
a. routine b. line c. subject d. season

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What ..... (have) we do next weekend?  
2. My parents have ..... (get) two cars.  
3. Soad ..... (usually is) quiet.  
4. Fatma ..... (always study) in the evenings.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"A description of your bedroom"

(مجال عن قبل الجواب)

- يمكنك من خلال الجواب عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة المقبرة الشخصية:
- Do you like your bedroom?
  - Does it have windows?
  - Where is the wardrobe?
  - Where do you put your clothes?
  - My bedroom is .....
  - It has .....
  - My bed is .....
  - I put my clothes in .....
- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

2 UNIT

New Hello!

2 UNIT

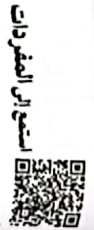
How are you feeling?

Objectives

- Reading:**  
A text about night workers; descriptions of weekend activities; an article about happiness for teenagers; an informal email
- Writing:**  
an email to a friend
- Listening:**  
People talking about learning new skills; descriptions of photos
- Speaking:**  
Describing weekend activities; describing photos; responding to news
- Language:**  
Adverbs of manner
- Life Skills:**  
Empathy
- Values:**  
Patience
- Issues:**  
Social participation

# Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 12-15 WB pages 79-80



## Key Vocabulary

food stall	كشك لبيع الطعام	painting the kitchen	دهان المطبخ
word	كلمة (في مستقش)	sewing	الحياطة
deaf	أصم (الطرش)	communicate (d)	يتواصل
make (made) sure	يتأكد	park (ed) (n)	يركن (مركبة) - منيرة
calligraphy	فن خط اليد	look (ed) forward to	يتطلع إلى
sign language	لغة الإشارة	repair (ed)	يصلح
<b>Jobs</b>			
cell-centre worker	عامل مركز الاتصالات	nurse	ممرضة
computer engineer	مهندس كمبيوتر	police officer	ضابط شرطة
shop worker	عامل في محل	cook	طاهي - طاهية
street-food seller	بائع طعام منحول	artist	فنان

## Vocabulary

patient	شخص مريض	neighbour	جار
a bit	قليلاً - إلى حد ما	lovely	محبب / جميل
skill	مهاراة	fountain	نافورة مياه
computer system	نظام كمبيوتر	keyboard	لوحة المفاتيح
quite	إلى حد ما / إلى حد كبير	tin	علبة
fantastic	رائع	soil (ed)	يُجَر
lazy	كسول	climb (ed)	يتسلق
surprise	مفاجأة	text (ed)	يرسل رسالة نصية
art club	نادي الفنون		

## Expressions & Prepositions

have a rest	يستريح	look after	يُعتنى بـ
drive around the city	يقود سيارة حول المدينة	communicate with	يتواصل مع
come this way	يأتون من هذا الطريق	wave to	يلوّح بيدهم

get everything ready	يُجهز كل شئ	sit by	يجلس بجوار
give ... a surprise	يُفاجئ ...	excited about	مُشوق بخصوص
feel tired / cold / ill	يشعر بالتعب / بالبرد / بالمرض	as a present	كهدية
make dinner	يُعد العشاء	spend time with	يقضي وقت مع
clean the house	يُظف المزل	do homework	يقوم بعمل الواجب المدرسي
stay in bed	يبقى في الفراش	sew new curtains	يُخيط ستائر جديدة
go on a school trip	يذهب في رحلة مدرسية		

Conjugations of		Irregular Verbs	
Present	Past simple	Past Participle	
drive	يقود سيارة	drove	driven
hurt	يؤذي - يجرع	hurt	hurt
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
sew	يُخيط	sewed	sewn
stand	يقف	stood	stood

Word		Meaning		Opposite	
busy	مَشغول (المكان)	crowded	empty	مُتفرِّغ	
lazy	كسول	inactive	active	نَشيط	
safe	آمن	secured	dangerous	خطير	

## Definitions

food stall	كشك لبيع الطعام	a large table or open shop on the street where people cook and sell food
street-food seller	بائع طعام منحول	this person prepares <sup>(1)</sup> food for people to eat in the streets, sometimes from a van or stall
police officer	ضابط شرطة	- a male <sup>(2)</sup> or female <sup>(3)</sup> member of the police - this person helps to keep people safe in the streets
call-centre worker	عامل مركز اتصالات	- a person who works in a big office in which people speak to customers <sup>(4)</sup> on the phone - this person speaks to people on the phone. He or she helps them with their problems.

١- يجهز / يبد

٢- ذكر

٣- أنثى

٤- زبائن

shop worker	عامل في محل	this person helps in a place which sells things	هـ- عمال و- يدا من ف- قيرة
computer engineer	مهندس كمبيوتر	- a person who mends or works with computers - you call this person if there is a problem with your computer system	
calligraphy	فن خط اليد	beautiful writing using special pens or brushes <sup>(١)</sup>	
sign language	لغة الإشارة	a way of talking to people who cannot hear, using hands instead of words	
communicate	يتواصل	share information with others by speaking, writing or in other ways	
ward	غرفة (في مستشفى)	a large room in a hospital for people who need to stay in the hospital for one night or more	
park (ed)	يركن (امرئياً)	put a car, lorry, van, etc. in a place where it can stay for a period <sup>(٢)</sup> of time	
deaf	أصم	not able to hear anything or not able to hear well	

Language Notes

1) look forward to

look forward to + V-ing / Noun

Ex. I'm looking forward to going home.

Ex. Hassan is feeling hungry. He is looking forward to breakfast!

2) everyone - everything

تعتبر everyone ضمير غير محدد ويأتي بعدها فعلاً مفعلاً ومفعولاً ويعوض عنها بصيغة جمع (they, them ..)

Ex. Everyone at the party was happy. They enjoyed so much.

Ex. Everything is ready. I'm sure it will work well.

3) Adjectives ending in (-ed) or (-ing)

- نستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ -ed والصفات المنتهية بـ -ing لوصف الحافل وغير الحافل.

- نشير الصفات المنتهية بـ (-ing) إلى من يسبب الصفة.

Ex. The work here is really tiring. (فتعب - يسبب التعب)

- نشير الصفات المنتهية بـ (-ed) إلى أن الموصوف يشع أو لديه هذه الصفة.

Ex. Hassan is feeling tired tonight. (متعب - يشع بالتعب)

من أمثلة هذه الصفات:

frightened	خائف	frightening	مخيف
bored	متعب / متعب بالمل	boring	ممل
interested	متشوق / مهتم	interesting	شيق / ممتع
amazed	مدهش	amazing	مدهش
excited	محمس	exciting	مثير

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I'm feeling hungry. I'm looking forward ..... lunch.  
a. have                      b. to having                      c. having                      d. to have
- Everyone in my class ..... kind.  
a. is                              b. are                              c. were                              d. be
- My grandmother's stories are very ..... We like them very much.  
a. interest                      b. interested                      c. interests                      d. interesting

Reading

SB Page (13)

3 am in Cairo



A I'm looking after patients<sup>(١)</sup> at a hospital. It's very busy. I'm looking after children in the children's ward<sup>(٢)</sup>. I like my job, but I'm feeling tired<sup>(٣)</sup> tonight. I'm looking forward to<sup>(٤)</sup> going home and having a rest<sup>(٥)</sup>.

Amal

- ١- مرضى
- ٢- جناح
- ٣- متعب
- ٤- ينطلق إلى
- ٥- راحة

استمع إلى الصوت



**B** We're driving around the city and making sure<sup>(6)</sup> that people are safe in the streets. We aren't very busy tonight. It's cold so everyone is staying at home. Adel's feeling a bit<sup>(7)</sup> bored<sup>(8)</sup> and I'm feeling hungry. I'm looking forward to breakfast!

**Eman and Adel**

**C** I'm parking<sup>(9)</sup> my food stall<sup>(10)</sup> here because it's the best place in the city. Lots of people and tourists come this way. People start to buy their breakfast at 6 am. I'm getting everything ready. I'm feeling cold and I'm looking forward to drinking some hot coffee!

**Kamal**

**Say it correctly**

\* word  
\* stall

يُطبق حرف ن في هذه الكلمات مقلداً ليطبق في كلمة سول

- 1- يتأكد
- 2- إلى حد ما
- 3- متفجر
- 4- يركن (سيارة)
- 5- كشك لبيع الطعام

SB Page (14)

Hi. I'm Ziad. I live with my mum and dad in a small flat<sup>(1)</sup> in Milinga. At the weekend, I'm usually quite lazy<sup>(2)</sup>.

On Friday evening, my parents and I usually have a big dinner<sup>(3)</sup> with my grandparents and we sometimes stay at their house. It's bigger than our flat.

On Saturday morning, I often stay in bed and then I have a late breakfast<sup>(4)</sup> with grandmother - she's a fantastic cook<sup>(5)</sup>! In the afternoon, I do my homework.

\*\*\*

Hello, I'm Inji and this is my sister Aya. We live near the sea. My father and my uncle have an old boat<sup>(6)</sup> which they are repairing<sup>(7)</sup>. I am learning to sail<sup>(8)</sup> but Aya doesn't like the water very much!

At the weekend, we do our homework and on Saturday we sometimes spend time with our father and uncle on their boat.



- 1- شقة
- 2- كسول
- 3- عشاء
- 4- إفطار متأخر
- 5- طاهية
- 6- قارب
- 7- يصلح
- 8- يسبح

## Audio script

SB Page (15)

**Tamer** : I'm Tamer. At the moment, I'm learning a new skill<sup>(1)</sup>. I'm learning sign<sup>(2)</sup> language<sup>(3)</sup> so I can communicate<sup>(4)</sup> better with my cousin Sami. Sami is deaf<sup>(5)</sup> - he can't hear. He's learning sign language at school too. I'm having sign language lessons on Saturday morning so I can give Sami a surprise<sup>(6)</sup>!



**Eman** : I'm Eman. At the weekend, I'm learning to do lots of new things. Our neighbour, Mr Osman, is in hospital at the moment. With some other neighbours in our building, we're repairing his flat. He lives in a lovely<sup>(7)</sup> flat, but he can't look after it at the moment. My sisters and I are painting the kitchen and I am also sewing<sup>(8)</sup> some new curtains.



**Mand** : I'm Mand. Mona and I are starting a calligraphy<sup>(9)</sup> and art club<sup>(10)</sup> at school. We're very excited about it. My uncle is an artist<sup>(11)</sup> and he's coming to the school to teach us. We're studying traditional Arabic calligraphy and we're enjoying it very much. I'm making a calligraphy book for my uncle as a present<sup>(12)</sup>.



**Say it correctly**

\* sign

ن يطبق حرف و في هذه الكلمة

- 1- مغارة
- 2- لغة الإشارة
- 3- يتواصل
- 4- لغة الصم
- 5- مقلقة
- 6- جميل
- 7- يخط
- 8- في خياطة
- 9- لغة الفنون
- 10- فنان
- 11- هدية

WB Page (79)

**Man 1** : I'm sorry, sir, but you can't leave your car here.

(police officer)

**Woman 1** : There seems to be a problem with the keyboard<sup>(1)</sup>, but it won't take me long.

(computer engineer)

**Woman 2** : Good morning, this is Dina speaking, how can I help you?

(call-centre worker)

**Man 2** : Are you looking for<sup>(2)</sup> tins of beans<sup>(3)</sup>? You can find them on the top shelf<sup>(4)</sup> over there.

(shop worker)

- 1- لوحة المفاتيح
- 2- يبحث عن
- 3- جالب فول
- 4- رف

## Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

- You call a ..... if there is a problem with your computer system.  
a. police officer      b. shop worker      c. nurse      d. computer engineer **SB**
- I'm ..... my food still here because it is the best place in the city.  
a. flying      b. parking      c. barking      d. doing **SB**
- A ..... helps to keep people safe in the streets.  
a. street-food seller      b. nurse      c. police officer      d. computer engineer **SB**
- A/an ..... speaks to people on the phone. He/She helps them with their problems.  
a. doctor      b. call-centre worker      c. computer engineer      d. nurse **SB**
- I'm feeling cold and I'm looking ..... drinking some hot coffee.  
a. forward to      b. after      c. up      d. for **SB**
- A ..... helps in a place which sells things.  
a. teacher      b. farmer      c. shop worker      d. police officer **SB**
- A/an ..... prepares food for people to eat in the streets.  
a. street-food seller      b. shop worker      c. doctor      d. engineer **SB**
- How often do you ..... dinner?  
a. do      b. make      c. ham      d. repair **WB**
- Shoddy is deaf, but he understands us because we use ..... language.  
a. sight      b. signal      c. seen      d. sign **WB**
- A ..... person is a person who can't hear.  
a. blind      b. deaf      c. weak      d. strong **WB**
- Nurses look ..... patients in their rooms.  
a. up      b. like      c. after      d. forward to **WB**

- My mother likes to make her own clothes by herself. She likes .....  
a. sewing      b. sowing      c. swimming      d. reading **WB**

- Our TV is broken. Can you ..... it?  
a. play      b. repair      c. make      d. do **WB**

### Bit by Bit Exercises

- ..... sure all doors and windows are closed before you go out.  
a. Do      b. Make      c. Have      d. Take
- A: Where is the new nurse?  
B: In the ..... in the 2<sup>nd</sup> floor of the hospital.  
a. zoo      b. bank      c. ward      d. word
- I'm feeling really tired today. Why don't you ..... a rest?  
a. make      b. have      c. fill      d. drive
- You should join a ..... club if you want to write beautifully.  
a. sports      b. medicine      c. computer      d. calligraphy
- The guide communicates ..... tourists in English.  
a. with      b. in      c. to      d. about

## Language

### Remember:

#### 1- The present continuous tense

Form



Ex. I am working today.

Ex. They are watching TV now.



كيف يُضاف للفعل : **ing**  
 1- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك نضع الحرف الساكن الأخير :  
 عند إضافة (ing) اضع بعض الأفعال ذو المقطع الواحد:

- sit → sitting tap → tapping
- use → using make → making
- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) غير منطوق بحذف الـ (e) ثم نضيف (ing) إلى الفعل:
- see → seeing be → being
- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (ie) تحول إلى (y) عند إضافة (ing):
- lie → lying die → dying

**Usage الاستخدام**

- 1- للتعبير عن فعل يحدث الآن (في وقت الكلام)  
 Ex. I am sitting in my English class.
- 2- للتعبير عن أحداث لم تنتهِ بعد (ولا يشترط أن تحدث وقت الكلام):  
 Ex. My sister is learning to dance.
- 3- للتعبير عن أحداث مؤقتة:  
 Ex. They are painting the school this week.
- 4- للتعبير عن أحداث مرتب لها في المستقبل:  
 Ex. Tomorrow, my dad is taking the train to Tanta.

**Keywords الكلمات**

Look!	انظروا	Look out!	احذروا	still	مازال
Listen!	استمعوا	at the moment	في هذه اللحظة	now	الآن
Watch out!	احذروا	at present	في الوقت الحاضر		

**Negative النفي**

• لنس فعل في زمن المضارع المستمر نستخدم (not) بعد (am / is / are) كما يلي:  
 Subject + am / is / are + not + V-ing.  
 Ex. You are not working hard. Ali.

**Question السؤال**

• نسل عن فعل في زمن المضارع المستمر بالصيغة الآتية:

1- للسؤال بـ هل، Yes / No question

Am → I  
 Is → he - she - it /  
 Are → we - you - they /  
 فعل مفرد غالب } + (V-ing)...?  
 فعل جماع

- Ex. Is your mother working?  
 - Yes, she is.
- No, she isn't.
- Ex. What is your father doing?  
 - He is reading the newspaper.



• بعض الأفعال لا تستخدم عادة في زمن المضارع المستمر ولكن نستخدم في زمن المضارع البسيط مثل:  
 love - like - يحب - hate - يكره - want - يريد - need - يحتاج - cost - يكلف  
 Ex. I want to see Ali now.



Question	Negative	Keywords	Usage	Form
	don't / doesn't + inf.	every - always - usually - often - sometimes - occasionally - never	للتعبير عن حقائق وعادات وأفعال روتينية	Present simple I / We / They / You + inf. He / She / It + verb + s
		Look! - Listen! - Look out! - Watch out! - at the moment - now - today - at present - these day	للتعبير عن فعل يحدث الآن (في وقت الكلام) للتعبير عن أحداث مؤقتة. للتعبير عن أحداث لم تنتهِ بعد.	Present continuous I → am + V-ing. He / She / It → is + V-ing. We / They / You → are + V-ing.
		am is are not + V-ing.		
		Am/Is/Are + V-ing? (كلمة استفهام)		



الخط الثاني شائع الاستخدام وجميع بين ارضي المفضل البسيط والمفضل المستعمل.  
 • في الجزء الأول من الجملة نلاحظ عن عادة دامة فلسطيني نلاحظ المفضل البسيط لما في الجزء الثاني فنلاحظ عن حدث مؤقت فلسطيني نلاحظ المفضل المستعمل.

## Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### SB, WB & Exams

- I usually ..... to school by bus, but today I am walking.  
 a. go b. goes c. went d. going **SB**
- Why is Amal ..... tired?  
 a. feel b. feels c. felt d. feeling **WB**
- Fady ..... a jacket today because it is very hot.  
 a. is wearing b. isn't wearing c. wears d. wear **WB**
- Basel usually repairs computers, but today he ..... his grandparents.  
 a. visiting b. visits c. visit d. is visiting **WB**
- Why ..... Hoda waving to those girls?  
 a. am b. are c. is d. can **WB**
- The police officer ..... to another officer. They move quickly to catch the thief.  
 a. talks b. is talking c. are talking d. talk **WB**
- The street-food seller usually makes falafel, but he ..... cheese sandwiches this morning.  
 a. is selling b. sells c. sell d. are selling **WB**
- Sama ..... a new skill at the moment.  
 a. learnt b. learn c. is learning d. learns **WB**

### Bit by Bit Exercises

- Farida always ..... a white blouse.  
 a. wear b. is wearing c. wearing d. wears
- Hassan is busy. He ..... the kitchen now.  
 a. paints b. is painting c. paint d. are painting

- The train is never late. It always ..... on time.  
 a. leave b. is leaving c. left d. leaves
- That computer ..... much money. I can't buy it.  
 a. costing b. costs c. is costing d. are costing
- Camels always ..... much water.  
 a. drinks b. are drinking c. drink d. is drinking
- A: How often does Sara ..... the house?  
 B: Every day.  
 a. is cleaning b. cleaning c. clean d. cleans
- The children ..... now.  
 a. sleep b. were sleeping c. is sleeping d. are sleeping
- Hala is a clever girl. She always ..... her mother with the housework.  
 a. helping b. is helping c. helps d. help
- Hanan usually studies at home, but today she ..... at her aunt's office.  
 a. is studying b. studies c. studying d. study
- Mawda ..... lunch at the moment.  
 a. cook b. is cooking c. are cooking d. cooks
- Listen! The children ..... outside.  
 a. play b. plays c. are playing d. played
- I ..... to go out now. I am really busy.  
 a. am not liking b. am not liked c. doesn't like d. don't like

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

### SB, WB & Exams

- Mamd and Mona ..... (studies) calligraphy every day. **SB**
- How often do you ..... (made) dinner? **WB**
- What game is Osama ..... (play) on the computer? **WB**
- My brother ..... (play) football at the moment. **WB**

### Bit by Bit Exercises

- The boys ..... (study). Keep quiet.
- Look out! A car ..... (comes) fast.

7. Mona ..... (is watching) TV now; she is sleeping.
8. .... (Is) your parents sitting on the sofa at the moment?
9. The water ..... (boils). Can you turn the gas off?
10. Listen to Amr. What language ..... (be) he speaking?
11. Look! That man ..... (tries) to open the door of your car.
12. The children ..... (are drinking) milk every morning.
13. Why ..... (be) everyone staying at home?
14. You must go up the stairs. They ..... (repair) the lift.



## Speaking

### Describing weekend activities

وصف أنشطة في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

- What do you usually do at the weekend?  
ملائق عادة في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع؟

تجيب عن هذا السؤال بذكر الأنشطة التي تقوم بها في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع كالتالي:

- At the weekend, I usually get up early.  
في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع، عادة استيقظ مبكراً.
- At the weekend, I do my homework.  
في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع، أقوم بعمل واجبي المنزلي.
- On Friday evenings, my parents and I usually have a big dinner.  
في مساء أيام الجمعة، نتناول أنا ووالدي عادة وجبة عشاء كبيرة.
- On Saturday morning, I often stay in bed. / I have a late breakfast.  
في صباح أيام السبت، غالباً أنام في الفراش / أتناول فطور متأخر.

## General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ziad and Aya are talking about their weekends.

Ziad : Hi Aya. What do you usually do at the weekend?

Aya : 1 ..... What about you?

Ziad : I do many things.

Aya : 2

Ziad : Yes, I usually do my homework at the weekend.

Aya : 3

Ziad : On Saturday evening, I have a late breakfast with my grandparents.

Aya : How do you usually enjoy your time at the weekend?

Ziad : 4

Aya : 5 ..... Do you do that, too?

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Vocabulary

1. Hamada never likes to work. He is really .....

- a. careful      b. helpful      c. active      d. lazy

2. We need a computer engineer to ..... our computer because it doesn't work.

- a. damage      b. hurt      c. repair      d. break

3. The ..... helped me to buy a T-shirt.

- a. police officer      b. shop worker  
c. nurse      d. computer engineer

4. The doctor is examining many ..... today.

- a. diseases      b. illnesses      c. patients      d. medicines

5. Fatma is deaf, she can use ..... language.

- a. signal      b. sign      c. happy      d. sad

6. Soha always helps her mother to ..... dinner.

- a. text      b. do      c. park      d. make

### Language

7. She usually ..... the newspaper in the morning.

- a. read      b. is reading      c. reads      d. are reading

8. Mum and Dad ..... tea now.  
 a. are drinking d. drinks  
 c. drink b. drinking
9. Farmers usually ..... animals in the field.  
 a. are using b. are using  
 c. use c. uses
10. Mrs Hossam ..... a course at the moment.  
 a. is taking b. is taking  
 c. are taking d. takes
11. Look! The horse ..... over the fence.  
 a. is jumping b. jumps  
 c. was jumping d. jump
- 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
1. He ..... (writes) a letter to his penfriend at the moment.  
 2. Hassan ..... (not like) spaghetti.  
 3. Gamila ..... (going) to work on foot every day.  
 4. A: You ..... (work) hard today.  
 B: Yes, I have a lot to do.  
 5. We can't go outside because it ..... (rains) now.  
 6. Douda ..... (want) to study abroad.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:  
 "Different people in your family"

محاب عنه في أتر الوحدة

WB

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 16 - 18 WB pages 81-82

Key Vocabulary

wedding	حفلة زفاف	guest	ضيف
suitcase	حقيبة سفر	striped	مخطط
airport	مطار	grateful	ممتن / شاكر
alone	بمفرده	teenager	مراهق
sharp	حاد	normal	طبيعي / معتاد
carefully	بحرص	Adverbs	
excitedly	بحماس	quietly	بهدوء
happily	بسعادة	lazily	بكسل
hungrily	بشهية / بشراهة	quickly	بسرعة
loudly	بصوت عال	easily	بسهولة
		slowly	بطء

Vocabulary

port	ميناء	weeding	إزالة النباتات الضارة
hill	تل	playground	ملعب - فناء
crowd	حشد من الناس	sweet	جميل / حلو
shopping bag	حقيبة تسوق	skin	جلد - بشرة
husband	زوج	invite (d)	يدعو
nature	الطبيعة	treat (ed)	يعامل
suit	بدلة	continue (d)	يستمر
happiness	سعادة	relax (ed)	يستريح
hanging	معلق	try (ied)	يحاول - يجرب

Expressions & Prepositions

take a selfie	يلقط صورة سيلفي	have a rest	يأخذ راحة
as usual	كالمعتاد	smile at	يتسمل لـ
get married	يتزوج	do well	يؤدي أداءاً حسناً
get worried about	يتوتر/ يقلق بخصوص	get on a plane	يعد إلى طائرة
catch a plane	يلحق بطائرة	for the first time	لأول مرة
in the foreground	في المقدمة	down a hill	أسفل تل
in the background	في الخلفية	feel pleased about	يشعر بسعادة بخصوص
in the middle of....	في وسط....	(be) grateful for	كن ممتن لـ
on the right / left	على اليمين / اليسار	towards the right / left	نحية اليمين / اليسار

Present	Irregular Verbs	Past simple	Past Participle
buy	اشتريت	bought	bought
sell	باع	sold	sold
hang	علق	hung	hung
fly	طير	flew	flown
win	فاز	won	won

Word	Meaning	Opposite
sharp	حاد	blunt
light	خفيف	dark
carefully	بحرص	carelessly
normal	طبيعي	abnormal

### Definitions

wedding	حفلة زفاف	a ceremony in which people get married
striped	مخطط	with long narrow lines of colour that are a different colour from the crests next to them
background	خلفية	the part that seems furthest to you in a picture or photograph
foreground	مقدمة	the part that seems nearest to you in a picture or photograph
teenager	مراهق	a boy or girl aged 13-19
normal	طبيعي - عادي	usual, not different
alone	بحد ذاته	not with other people
grateful	ممتن - شاكِر	feeling happy about the good things in your life
nature	طبيعة	everything in the world that is not made by humans

### Language Notes

#### 1) elder - eldest

كلا الكلمتين تستخدمان لوصف شخصين أو أكثر في عائلة واحدة.  
 elder بمعنى الأكبر سناً للمفردة بين أعمام أو شقيقات. لاحظ أن elder لا يستخدم  
 بصيغة الجمع.  
 eldest للمفرد بين أعمام أكثر من شخصين أو شقيقات.  
 Ex: My eldest sister is sitting next to the tree.

#### 2) It + be + adj. + to + inf.

Ex: It's important to drive carefully.  
 يمكن استخدام الشخص في الجملتين.  
 Ex: It's important for Mahmoud to drive carefully.  
 عند الناس يمكن أن نضيف not قبل to.

#### 3) in + a piece of clothes

• In the striped shirt = who is wearing the striped shirt  
 Ex: The man in the striped shirt is my uncle.

#### 4) else

• make + مقول (اسم) ضميراً + Inf. يجعل  
 Ex: Running makes me feel better.  
 Ex: The news made Hossein happy.

#### 5) make

• make + مقول (اسم) ضميراً + adj. يجعل  
 Ex: The news made Hossein happy.

#### Check on Language Notes

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I have two brothers. My ..... brother is a computer engineer.  
 a. elder b. older than c. as old d. old
- It's necessary ..... a jacket when it's very cold.  
 a. wear b. wearing c. to wearing d. to wear
- The woman ..... the green dress is my aunt.  
 a. for b. in c. on d. into
- Here's what you want. Do you want anything .....?  
 a. else b. also c. as d. much
- Sleeping for a long time makes me .....  
 a. to feel b. feeling c. to feeling d. feel

# Audio script

SB Page (16)

استمع إلى الصوت



**Girl 1:** This is a photo of my sister's wedding. It's at the end of the day and the guests are slowly leaving. Most of the family are still there, though, and still enjoying the party. That's my sister smiling happily at the camera and the man next to her is Youssef, her husband.



**Boy 1:** That's my class on our school trip to the mountains. We're sitting carefully on the rocks because they are very sharp! We got up at 5 o'clock in the morning and walked for hours and hours. You can't see me in this picture. I'm sitting under a tree and hungrily eating my lunch.



**Boy 2:** This is me at the airport. I'm waiting excitedly to get on a plane for the first time! My family were with me but you can't see them because my sister is taking the photo while my parents are quickly buying some sandwiches for us to eat on the plane.



**Girl 2:** This is my aunt's new baby. Isn't she sweet? She is laughing loudly in this picture because she can see my aunt's cat. She always laughs when she sees this cat - she thinks it's very funny!



- 1- حفل زفاف
- 2- ضيوف
- 3- بالمرحوم من ذلك
- 4- زوج
- 5- جلد
- 6- بالهجوم / بشراقة
- 7- مطر
- 8- بحماس
- 9- جميل
- 10- بصوت عال
- 11- مضحك

SB Page (17)

**Girl:** This is a photo of my family in Al Azhar Park in Cairo. My mother and my sisters are sitting under a tree in the foreground of the photo. In the background, you can see the Umm al-Sultan Shaban Mosque. The tree is towards the right of the photo and my eldest sister Reem is sitting in front of it. Our mother is behind her - we can't see her face. My middle sister Tolia is in the middle of the picture. She is taking a selfie. Our aunt is behind them, down the hill and on the left. I think she is getting ready to take a photo, too.



- 1- حديقة الأزهر
- 2- في مقدمة
- 3- في الخلفية
- 4- مسجد أم السلطان
- 5- شغل
- 6- ناحية اليمن
- 7- في وسط
- 8- في المنتصف
- 9- على اليسار

# Reading

SB Page (18)

استمع إلى الصوت

## Happiness for teenagers

It's normal to get worried or to feel sad sometimes - but what helps teenagers to feel happy? We found five things that can help.

1. Get lots of rest
2. Be friendly
3. Go outside
4. Help someone
5. Be grateful

Teenagers often don't sleep enough, but this is a time in your life when you need a lot of sleep. Young people who sleep eight to ten hours a night are much happier!

It's good to be clone sometimes, but people need people. Spend time with your family and also try to make new friends because this makes teenagers happy.

People need nature to be happy. Go to the desert or the river or, if you live in the city, go to a park.

When you do something kind for someone else, this makes you feel happy, too. Try it! You feel really good.

## New Message

Dear Help! Magazine

I am a normal teenager but I often feel worried about things. Every day, I stay at home and do my homework. Then I get texts from my friends and they say they are all doing exciting things! What am I doing wrong?

I do well at school and I enjoy my weekends with my family. We often go to the park or the beach, but I sometimes think that my friends are having a better time than me. Please can you help me?

Yours, Osama!

- 1- قلق
- 2- رسائل نصية
- 3- مغرب
- 4- ألي، أنا، حسنا

Dear Osama

Thank you for writing to us and yes, we will try to help you. It is normal to think that other people are doing more exciting things than you, but remember<sup>(6)</sup>: you are wrong<sup>(6)</sup>! Your friends probably feel worried, just like you.

When you go to the park or the beach, do you send photos to your friends? They probably<sup>(7)</sup> think YOU are having a better<sup>(8)</sup> time than they are! Remember that we all work and relax<sup>(9)</sup> at different times<sup>(10)</sup>.

Be grateful for the good things in your life and continue<sup>(11)</sup> to work hard!

Yours truly, Help! Magazine.

- ١- أذكر  
٢- مشغول  
٣- مختلف  
٤- أفضل  
٥- يسترخي  
٦- أوقات مختلفة  
٧- يستمر

## 2. Videoscript

SB Page (18)

Cities are very busy places. Lots of people live and work in them and there is always lots of traffic<sup>(1)</sup> and noise. This makes some people feel worried and unhappy. When people feel like this, it is a good idea to go outside and experience<sup>(2)</sup> nature.

In Cairo, many people like going to the Al Azhar Park.

Here, they walk slowly around the gardens and look at the many fountains<sup>(3)</sup>, palm trees<sup>(4)</sup>, plants and flowers. This makes them calm in the middle of a very big city. These people are meeting friends and family, and having picnics outside.

In other parts of Egypt, people can experience nature in many different ways. This is Ahmed and he lives in Sharm EL-Sheikh. He is a tourist guide<sup>(5)</sup> and always works hard. Here he is speaking on the phone.

Ahmed always feels happy when he visits the Ras Mohammed nature reserve. This is a national park<sup>(6)</sup> in the Sinai peninsula<sup>(7)</sup>.

Today, he is visiting the park to go scuba diving<sup>(8)</sup> in the Red Sea. He feels relaxed<sup>(9)</sup> when he sees all the things that live under the water, such as the fish and the coral<sup>(10)</sup>.

When you want to be outside, there are many beautiful places on the Nile.

- ١- حركة المرور  
٢- حزين  
٣- نظوريات  
٤- النخيل  
٥- مرشد سياحي  
٦- حديقة قومية  
٧- شبه جزيرة سيناء  
٨- الغوص  
٩- يشعر بالاسترخاء  
١٠- الشعب المرجانية

This is Lamia and she lives in Aswan. Today, she is sailing happily on the river with her father on a felucca<sup>(1)</sup>.

She likes doing this because ...she likes the different birds that she can see, like herons<sup>(2)</sup>, geese<sup>(3)</sup> and vultures<sup>(4)</sup>. Some people, however, like visiting the deserts of Egypt when they want to be outside.

People like walking in the deserts to see the sand dunes<sup>(5)</sup> because it is very quiet.

And these people are flying slowly above the desert in a hot air balloon<sup>(6)</sup>. We all feel good when we go outside. Where do you like to go?

- ١- مركب شراطي  
٢- طائر مئكة النهر  
٣- أوز  
٤- النور  
٥- الكثبان الرملية  
٦- بالون  
٧- مكان

## Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

- When you invite a person to your house, he/ she is your .....  
a. guess b. guest c. customer d. partner **WB**
- When you go on holiday, you can put your clothes in a .....  
a. suit b. pan c. pencil case d. suitcase **WB**
- The skin of a zebra is .....  
a. striped b. lines c. silver d. golden **WB**
- The cat was moving ..... away from the dog.  
a. happily b. loudly c. quietly d. hungrily **WB**
- When two people get married, they have a .....  
a. wedding b. prize c. medal d. wedding **WB**
- A ..... is a boy or girl aged 13-19.  
a. teenager b. child c. baby d. manager **WB**
- You can catch a plane from a/an .....  
a. port b. station c. airport d. stop **WB**

2022 Copyright © All Rights Reserved

8. If you are tired, why don't you ..... a rest?  
a. have b. be c. make d. do
9. She is ..... a selfie under the tree.  
a. making b. spending c. having d. taking

Bit by Bit Exercises

10. Sara is sitting in the ..... of the picture.  
a. moon b. medal c. middle d. metal
11. The car moved ..... the right not to hit the boy.  
a. towards b. about c. at d. of
12. There were three trees in the ..... of the picture.  
a. roof b. background c. underground d. form
13. A ..... isn't as high as a mountain.  
a. river b. lake c. sea d. hill
14. I'm very ..... to everyone that helped me with my problems.  
a. angry b. grateful c. ugly d. nervous
15. It's ..... to feel nervous before an exam.  
a. careless b. noisy c. normal d. amazing
16. We never leave my little sister ..... in the house.  
a. fast b. badly c. well d. alone
17. I always ..... worried when I have exams.  
a. make b. help c. take d. get
18. Dina felt ..... about getting high marks in the final exams.  
a. sad b. angry c. pleased d. cheap
19. We all waited for the exam results .....  
a. easily b. excitedly c. hungrily d. quickly
20. The opposite of "sharp" is .....  
a. blunt b. tidy c. wet d. pale
21. This student ..... the blue uniform is my cousin.  
a. on b. by c. with d. in

Language

Adverbs of manner

Ex. I saw a beautiful girl yesterday.  
الصفة هي كلمة نصف الاسم.  
ظروف الطريقة

Ex. A: How does Aya sing?  
B: She sings beautifully.  
Ex. B: How does Ali speak?  
B: He speaks slowly.

Ex. He drives carefully.  
Ex. Hossam threw the ball quickly.  
الصفة هي كلمة نصف الاسم.  
ظروف الطريقة

Form

يكون ظرف الطريقة غالباً بإضافة **يا / ي / ي** إلى الصفة.

quick → quickly سريعة **يا** excited → excited متحمس **يا** إلى الصفة.

careful → carefully حريص **يا** beautiful → beautifully جميل **يا** إلى الصفة.

probable → probably محتمل **يا** possible → possibly ممكن **يا** إلى الصفة.

happy → happily سعيد **يا** hungry → hungry جائع **يا** إلى الصفة.

good	جيد	→	well	يشكل جيد	→	fast	سريع	→	fast	بسرعة
hard	جهد - صعب	→	hard	بجد / بصعوبة	→	late	متأخر	→	late	متأخر
early	مبكر	→	early	مبكراً	→	high	مرتفع	→	high	عالياً



hard	بجد / بصعوبة	hardly	بأقل / تقريباً
late	متأخراً	late	متأخراً

Ex. Ali studies hard.  
Ex. Hatem hardly visits us.

# Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## SB, WB & Exams

1. That's my sister. She is smiling ..... at the camera.

- a. careless      b. careful      c. happy      d. happily

SB

2. It's at the end of the day and the guests are ..... leaving.

- a. slow      b. slowly      c. happy      d. careful

SB

3. The teacher treats all her students .....

- a. kind      b. bad      c. kindly      d. good

SB

4. I'm waiting ..... to get on a plane for the first time.

- a. excitedly      b. excited      c. careful      d. hungrily

SB

5. I'm sitting under a tree and ..... eating my lunch.

- a. hungry      b. beautiful      c. hungrily      d. beautifully

WB  
الطهي - مهارة الحرف 2022

6. The children are singing ..... in the playground.

- a. loudly      b. loud      c. happy      d. careful

الطهي - مهارة الحرف 2022

7. The cat is sitting in the sun .....

- a. lazy      b. lazily      c. lazier      d. laziest

الطهي - مهارة الحرف 2023

8. Hudd's uncle always sings ..... when he's working.

- a. slow      b. happy      c. happily      d. quiet

الطهي - مهارة الحرف 2023

9. Salma speaks English .....

- a. well      b. clear      c. good      d. bad

## Bit by Bit Exercises

10. Tamer is a careful driver. He drives .....

- a. hungrily      b. careful      c. angrily      d. carefully

11. The mother looked ..... at her naughty child.

- a. hungrily      b. angry      c. angrily      d. careful

12. He was sad because he answered the questions .....

- a. bad      b. badly      c. well      d. good

13. A: ..... does Ola play the piano?

- B: She plays the piano beautifully.  
a. What      b. When      c. Who

14. The little boy woke up ..... this morning.

- a. loudly      b. careful      c. lazily      d. careless

15. She is strong. She is lifting the weight .....

- a. easy      b. easily      c. careful      d. excited

16. The man was afraid and left the room .....

- a. quiet      b. careless      c. careful      d. quietly

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

## SB, WB & Exams

1. My friend sews ..... (bad).

2. Rania is good at drawing. She draws ..... (good).

3. The students are talking ..... (loud).

## Bit by Bit Exercises

4. My sister is crying ..... (sad) in her room.

5. You should study ..... (hardly).

6. He answered the test ..... (easy).

7. This exercise is ..... (easily).

8. You should drive ..... (slow) along this road.

9. The boy was sad because he sang ..... (bad).

10. The doctor examined the patient ..... (careful).

## Speaking

## Describing a photo

وصف صورة  
نستخدم التعبيرات الآتية أثناء وصف صورة:

- This is a photo of.....  
هذه صورة ل.....
- It shows.....  
أما تبين.....
- In the foreground, we can see.....  
في مقدمة الصورة، نستطيع رؤية.....
- In the background, we can see.....  
في خلفية الصورة، نستطيع رؤية.....
- On the right / left of..., there is/ are.....  
على اليمين/ اليسار من..... هناك.....
- In the middle, we can see.....  
في وسط الصورة، نستطيع رؤية.....

## General Exercises

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mustafa is showing Magdy a photo of his family.

**Mustafa** : This is a photo of me and my family in Al Orman Park in Giza.

**Magdy** : 1 \_\_\_\_\_ ?

**Mustafa** : In the foreground, there are my mother and my sisters sitting under a tree.

**Magdy** : 2 \_\_\_\_\_ ?

**Mustafa** : In the background, you can see the Cairo University.

**Magdy** : Is this your sister who is taking a selfie?

**Mustafa** : 3 \_\_\_\_\_

**Magdy** : How are they feeling?

**Mustafa** : 4 \_\_\_\_\_

**Magdy** : Great! 5 \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

#### Vocabulary

1. A: What can you see in the picture?

B: \_\_\_\_\_ the left, there is a big man.

a. On b. In c. Of d. From

2. I bought a modern mobile phone because I like \_\_\_\_\_ selfies.

a. doing b. taking c. discussing d. sitting

3. In a school, students play games in the \_\_\_\_\_.

a. playground b. theatre c. museum d. library

4. There were a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ at the party yesterday.

a. teams b. suitcases c. guests d. classes

5. A young \_\_\_\_\_ of about fifteen hit the glass door with a ball.

a. baby b. guide c. teenager d. teacher

6. I visited England \_\_\_\_\_ the first time in 2018.

a. from b. at c. out d. for

7. A: Do you need anything \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B: No, just a cup of coffee.

a. also b. too c. else d. as

## Language

8. The boys ran \_\_\_\_\_ in the race.

a. fast b. careful c. happy d. easy

9. Mai answered the questions \_\_\_\_\_.

a. correct b. correctly c. correcting d. incorrect

10. Smoking is \_\_\_\_\_ for your health.

a. well b. badly c. good d. bad

11. The boys are waiting \_\_\_\_\_ for the football match to start.

a. excitedly b. excited c. exciting d. excite

12. My friends study \_\_\_\_\_ to get full marks in the exam.

a. hardly b. as hard c. hard d. hardest

### 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I can swim \_\_\_\_\_ (good).

2. He is always late. He always arrives \_\_\_\_\_ (late).

3. She did her homework \_\_\_\_\_ (clever).

4. The girls are playing \_\_\_\_\_ (happy) in the street.

### 4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"A description of your friends' photo"

امضك على في آخر الوحدة

WB

يمكنك من خلال الترجمة عن اللغة العربية كتابة المقرة الوصفية.

- Who are in the photo?

- What does the photo show?

- Who are in the background / foreground of the photo?

- What are the people doing in this photo?

يمكن استخدام الجملات التالية:

- This is a photo of .....

- It shows .....

- In the background/ foreground, we can see .....

- On the left .....

# Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 19-20 WB pages 83-84

## Key Vocabulary

pity	شفقة - شفقة	empathy	استمع إلى المفردات
news	أخبار	miss (ed)	يفقد (استخدم) - دونك (شيء)
congratulations	تهانئ (المفردات)	worry (ied)	يقلق
sorry	أسف		

## Vocabulary

term	فصل دراسي	soon	قريباً
system	نظام	introduce (d)	يقدم (لشخص)
pilot	طيار	shore (d)	يشترك / يتقاسم
journalist	صحفي	act (ed)	يمثل
market	سوق	pass (ed)	ينجح - يجتاز
amazing	مذهل	move (d)	ينتقل (يعزل)
coach	مدرب	wait (ed)	ينتظر

## Expressions & Prepositions

get better	يتحسن	have a drink	يتناول مشروب
move friends	يكون صديقاً	have an interview	لديه مقابلة شخصية
It's a pity..	إنه من المؤسف أن...	do an interview	يجري مقابلة شخصية
Well done!	أحسن!	Congratulations on ...	تهانئاً على
fly a plane	يقود طائرة	speak on the phone	يتحدث في الهاتف
go sailing	يذهب للبحار	on a bicycle	على دراجة
Guess what?	خمن ما هي؟		

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
sleep	نام	slept
tell	خبر	told

## Word

## Meaning

## Opposite

cloudy	ملي بالغيوم	foggy	ضبابي
happiness	سعادة	joy	سرور
		sadness	حزن

## Language Notes

### 1) much + comparative

- نستخدم بعض الكلمات مثل much تليها صفة مقارئة لتحديد مقدار الفارق بين طرفي المقارنة.
- Ex. Ali is much taller than Omar.
- Ex. Hala is much more beautiful than Sara.

### 2) such

- نستخدم such بمعنى (جداً) في الأسلوب التالي:
- such + a / an + صفة + اسم مفرد + صفة + صفة + اسم مفرد
- Ex. Mrs Tahany is such a good teacher.

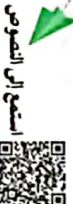
### Check on Language Notes ✓

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Fruits are ----- more delicious than vegetables.  
a. many      b. such      c. best      d. much
2. Mr Hafez is ----- a skilful engineer.  
a. so      b. that      c. such      d. as

## Audio script

SB Page (19)



استمع إلى الصوت

-1-

Ali : Hi Yasser! Are you coming to football practice on Thursday?

Yasser : Oh Hello Ali. No I can't come this week. My granddad is in hospital again. I have to look after my little brothers while my mum goes to visit him.

Ali : I'm sorry to hear that. I hope he gets better soon. It's a pity that you can't come. Maybe I'll see you next Thursday, then.

Yasser : Thanks Ali.



1- تدريب  
2- يتحسن  
3- من المؤسف  
4- ربما

-2-

**Yasser:** Hey Ali, Guess what! I'm in the football team!  
The coach told me after football practice last night.  
**Ali:** Well done, Yasser! That's great news.



**Hana:** Hello Salma. How are you? Great to see you! How's it going at your new school? Are you enjoying it?

**Salma:** Hello, Hana. Great to see you too! The new school is really hard! I don't know anyone, and I feel everyone is much cleverer than me. I have to do hours of homework every night.



**Hana:** That must be difficult. But don't worry. I'm sure things will get better. You were always the best student in our class!

٥- نحن مفلحون  
٦- فريق  
٧- صعب  
٨- شاق  
٩- صعبة

**Hana:** Hi Huda. How are things?

**Huda:** Hello Hana! Fine thanks. I passed my English exam!

**Hana:** Congratulations! I'm so happy for you. Everyone knows that's a really difficult exam.



WB Page (84)

## New Message

**Hi Tarek**  
How's it going? Congratulations on passing your maths test! Do you have more exams next term?

The news from me is that we are moving to a new house! I'm so excited because my bedroom in the new house is very big. I have got some bad news, too. I'm sharing the room with my brother! But this is only for a week until his room is ready.

I'm looking forward to meeting you in the summer. Do you want to go swimming or sailing at the beach this year? I can't wait to see you.  
Write soon!



١- الأخير  
٢- منزل / مبيت  
٣- يتقاسم / يشترك  
٤- جاهز  
٥- الأرجل

Send

١- الأخير  
٢- منزل / مبيت  
٣- يتقاسم / يشترك  
٤- جاهز  
٥- الأرجل

WB Page (85)

This is a photo of a market. In the foreground towards the left, we can see a man. I think it is his shop and he is selling fruit and other things. In the middle of the picture, we can see a man on a bicycle. He is carrying something. On the right, we can see two women. I think they want to buy something. In the background, we can see some other people.

## Reading

SB Page (20)

## New Message

**Hi Salma**

How are you? I hope you are enjoying your new school. We really miss you.

I am fine, but there is some bad news from school. Mrs Tahony is leaving! She is such a good science teacher and we are feeling very sad.

I have some good news, too. Guess what? My parents say I can go on the school trip to Amman. I am very excited! There are many amazing places to visit there. The trip is in March and I can't wait.  
So what's your news? Write soon!



١- يعتقد  
٢- مدرسة علوم  
٣- رحلة مدرسية  
٤- مدينة عمان  
٥- مشوق  
٦- منزل

Send

١- يعتقد  
٢- مدرسة علوم  
٣- رحلة مدرسية  
٤- مدينة عمان  
٥- مشوق  
٦- منزل

SB Page (21)

## New Message

**Hi Jada!**

How are you? I hope you are well. Guess what! I've passed my maths exam. I'm really happy, but my brother didn't pass. He is working hard to pass it next time.

It's raining today, so I'm happily sitting in my bedroom. I'm playing a game with my sister. What's your news?  
Write soon!

١- جادل  
٢- يحب

Send

١- جادل  
٢- يحب

## 0 New Message

My name is Dina. I am Egyptian but my mother is from England. I live with my parents, my brother, my sister and my grandmother. Who do you live with? Write soon, from Dina.

## Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB &amp; Exams

1. I'm sorry to hear that. I hope he ..... better soon.

- a. gets                      b. gives                      c. takes                      d. makes

2. We are ..... to a new house.

- a. sharing                      b. moving                      c. passing                      d. missing

3. Congratulations ..... passing your maths test.

- a. at                      b. in                      c. up                      d. on

4. He has deep ..... with the poor.

- a. empathy                      b. suggestion                      c. term                      d. news

5. Mo Salah had a/an ..... on TV last night.

- a. review                      b. view                      c. interview                      d. revision

6. When he joined a new school, he ..... friends with lots of students.

- a. built                      b. made                      c. did                      d. came

7. My brother didn't ..... his exam. He is very sad.

- a. hope                      b. act                      c. pass                      d. be

8. It's a ..... that you can't come to my birthday party.

- a. normal                      b. dear                      c. pity                      d. sorry

9. Every summer, they go ..... in the Red Sea.

- a. sailing                      b. selling                      c. saying                      d. sewing

10. Hady goes to school ..... a bicycle.

- a. in                      b. on                      c. with                      d. at

## Speaking

## 1 Responding to news

## Good news

أخبار سعيدة / أخبار جيدة / أخبار رائعة

- Well done, ....
- That's great news!
- Congratulations!
- I'm so happy for you.
- أنا سعيد للغاية من أجلك.

## Bad news

أخبار سيئة / أخبار سيئة

- It's a pity that ....
- I'm sorry to hear that.
- That must be difficult.
- أنا حزين لسوء هذا.
- من المؤكد أن هذا صعب.

## 2 Useful phrases to use in an email

عبارات مفيدة تستخدم في كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني

Phrases to begin	عبارات لبدءية	Dear / Hi / Hello .....
Asking how someone is:	السؤال عن شخص	- How are you? - How are things? - How's it going? - How's life?
Introducing news:	تقديم الأخبار	- The news from me / us is that... - Guess what? - I / we miss you.
Talking about feelings:	التحدث عن المشاعر	- I / we hope that you are ... - I'm so excited / sad because - I'm looking forward to ...
Talking about the future:	التحدث عن المستقبل	- I can't wait (to) ...
Phrases to end:	عبارات للختام / النهاية	- Write soon. - See you soon

## General Exercises

on Lessons 5 & 6

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Dalida's mother is ill and she didn't go to work.

Dalida : My mother didn't go to work today because she is ill.

Heba : 1

Dalida : She had an interview at the bank for a new job. 2

Heba : 3

Dalida : She did the interview online from her bed!

Heba : 4

Dalida : Yes, but she got the job!

Heba : 5

Dalida : She is still not feeling very well.

Heba : Don't worry, I'm sure she'll be better soon.

I'm so happy for her.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

#### Vocabulary

1. It's a ..... that you won't travel this summer holiday.

- a. sorry      b. congratulations      c. great      d. pity

2. .... done, Yasser! That's great news!

- a. Well      b. Wall      c. Wheel      d. Will

3. That must be difficult. But don't ..... I'm sure things will get better.

- a. hurry      b. marry      c. worry      d. carry

4. Congratulations! I'm so ..... for you.

- a. unhappy      b. happy      c. sorry      d. sad

5. We all like Leila; she is ..... a lovely girl.

- a. so      b. very      c. such      d. that

6. I ..... the train because I went to the station late.

- a. missed      b. shared      c. moved      d. did

7. .... what? I have passed my exams.

- a. Miss      b. Guess      c. Pass      d. Cross

8. A: ..... 's life?      B: Good.

- a. Where      b. How      c. When      d. Why

## Unit 2

# Review

### Vocabulary

airport	مطار	sign language	لغة الإشارة	congratulations	تهنئة
wedding	حفل زفاف	empathy	تعاطف	sewing	الخياطة
suitcase	حقيبة سفر	sorry	أسف	miss (ed)	يفقد - يفتقر (شيء)
normal	طبيعي / معتاد	teenager	شخص مرافق	worry (ed)	قلق
deaf	أصم / أطرش	ward	عناية (في مستشفى)	communicate (d)	يتواصل
pity	شيء محزن / شفقة	make (made)	يأخذ	look (ed)	ينظر إلى
sharp	حاد	food stall	كشك لبيع الطعام	repair (ed)	يصلح
news	أخبار	striped	مخطط	guess (ed)	يخمن
guest	ضيف	clone	بمفرده	park (ed) (n)	يركن (مركبة) / موزنة
grateful	ممتن / شاكر	painting the kitchen	دهان المطبخ		
calligraphy	فن خط اليد				

### Jobs

call-centre worker	عامل مركز اتصالات	nurse	ممرضة
computer engineer	مهندس كمبيوتر	police officer	ضابط شرطة
shop worker	عامل في محل	street-food seller	بائع طعام متجول
artist	فنان	cook	طاهي - طاهية

## Language

### 1 The present continuous tense

المضارع المستمر

am, is, are + V-ing.

Ex. Dina is watching TV now.

• يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن:

Ex. Listen! The boys are singing.

• فعل يحدث الآن (في وقت الكلام)

Ex. My brother is learning to speak English.

- Ex. Esraa is taking a course at university.  
نفس فعل في زمن المضارع المستمر تستخدم (not) بعد (am / is / are) كما يلي:
- Ex. He isn't watching TV at the moment.  
نسال عن فعل في زمن المضارع المستمر بالصيغة الآتية:

نسال ...؟  
فعل + am, is, are + V-ing

- Ex. Is Ahmed studying English?
- Ex. What is Marwan doing?

## 2) Adverbs of manner

طرق الطريقة  
يكون ظرف الطريقة غالباً بإضافة (يا / يا / يا) إلى الصفة:

quick → quickly سرعة  
excited → excitedly متحمس

## Speaking

### 1) Describing weekend activities

وصف أنشطة في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

- What do you usually do at the weekend?
- At the weekend, I usually visit my grandparents.
- At the weekend, I do my homework.

### 2) Describing a photo

وصف صورة

نستخدم للتعبيرات الآتية أثناء وصف صورة:

- This is a photo of....
- It shows....
- In the foreground, we can see....
- In the background, we can see....

### 3) Responding to news

الاستجابة للأخبار

Good news	Bad news
عند سماع أخبار سارة يمكنك أن تقول:	عند سماع أخبار غير سارة يمكنك أن تقول:
- Well done, ....	- It's a pity that....
- That's great news!	- I'm sorry to hear that.
- Congratulations!	- That must be difficult.
- I'm so happy for you.	

## 2) Useful phrases to use in an email

عبارات مفيدة تستخدم في كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني

Phrases to begin
- Dear / Hi / Hello .....
- How are you?
- How are things?
- How's life?
- The news from me / us is that...
- I / we miss you.
- I'm looking forward to ...
- I can't wait (to) ...
- Write soon.
- See you soon

## General Exercises on Unit 2

### 1) Complete the following dialogue:

Samy is asking Kamal about his job.

Samy : What do you do?

Kamal : 1

Samy : Where are you parking your food stall?

Kamal : 2

Samy : 3

Kamal : Because lots of people and tourists come this way.

Samy : 4

Kamal : They start to buy their breakfast at 7 o'clock.

Samy : What are you looking forward to?

Kamal : 5

I'm so tired.

### 2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

#### Vocabulary

- My sister speaks very .....  
a. beautiful      b. careful      c. quiet      d. quietly
- When I arrived at the clinic, there were four ..... there.  
a. engineers      b. sellers      c. patients      d. managers
- This is a photo of my parents' .....  
a. married      b. marry      c. wedding      d. weeding
- Fatma is ....., so she cannot hear you.  
a. dear      b. blind      c. deaf      d. strong

5. The nurse works on the ..... for children.

- a. stadium b. ward c. word d. playground

6. Your father can ..... the car on this road, it is very quiet.

- a. park b. break c. remind d. remember

7. Please ..... sure that you write your emails carefully.

- a. build b. take c. do d. make

8. It is usually easy to ..... with people in other countries if you speak English.

- a. communicate b. listen c. shout d. cry

9. My little brother is very ..... He always wants to stay at home and watch TV!

- a. active b. angry c. interesting d. lazy

### Language

10. We're sitting ..... on the rocks because they are very sharp!

- a. happy b. happily c. carefully d. careful

11. We ..... a film and it is very funny.

- a. watch b. watching c. watches d. are watching

12. My cousins are not standing under the tree, they are ..... by the fountain.

- a. sit b. sits c. sat d. sitting

13. What is Emod ..... ? It looks very nice!

- a. eat b. eating c. eds d. ate

14. I can't come to the park because I ..... the house today.

- a. clean b. cleaning c. am cleaning d. cleans

15. Ola ..... sports today because she hurt her leg.

- a. are not doing b. is not doing c. doesn't do d. don't do

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. This boy is crying ..... (loud).

2. Mr Ahmed speaks English ..... (good).

3. Mr Osman ..... (live) in a lovely flat.

4. We ..... (learn) English now.

5. Moja and Rami ..... (text) their cousins in Canada now.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"What you do at the weekend"

(محتاج علمه في آخر الوحدة)

يمكنك من خلال الرقعة الآتية كتابة المقطع النصي:

- What do you usually do at the weekend?  
- Who do you spend the weekend with? - Who do you visit at the weekend?

يمكن استخدام الجمل الآتية:

- At the weekend, I usually get up .....  
- At the weekend, I usually visit .....

## Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات وصفية ومطلوب عن شخصيات أخرى بالحدود

4- Different people in my family

(Lessons 1 & 2)

I have many people in my family. We are all now in the park. My dad is playing chess with my uncle. My brothers are playing football. My mum and aunt are making us sandwiches. We are in a quiet place in the park. My sisters are taking selfies beside the flowers. We usually come to the park at the Weekends. We enjoy our time together there. We feel very happy at the park.

2- A description of my friends' photo

(Lessons 3 & 4)

This is a photo of my friends. It shows that we are all happy. We took it in a nearby park. In the background, our fathers and mothers are sitting under a big tree. In the foreground, my friends Tamer and Salah are sitting on the grass. You can see some people walking. We usually take photos when we get out together. I have a lot of photos in a big album.

3- What I do at the weekend / Your weekend activities

(General Exercises - Al Azhar)

Hi, I'm Omar. I'm a prep-school student. I'm twelve years old. I live with my mum and dad in a small flat in Minya. At the

weekend, I'm usually quite lazy. I usually spend a nice time with my family. My

parents and I go and visit my grandparents at their house. Their house is bigger than our flat. On Saturday morning, I often stay in bed and then I have a late breakfast with grandmother - she's a fantastic cook!

4- A trip to Al Azhar Park (Test)

To : sarahmadi@yahoo.com

From : salmazaki@gmail.com

Subject : A trip to Al Azhar Park

Dear Sara,

I live with my family in Cairo. My family and I always go on trips. Once, we went on a trip to Al Azhar Park. It was sunny. We arrived at Al Azhar Park at 9 am. My mother and father sat under a tree. We visited the Umm al-Sultan Shabon Mosque. It was really amazing. We took wonderful photos there. My middle sister took selfies as usual. We got home at 6. It was a fantastic day and all of us felt happy.

Yours,  
Salma



### A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الأسئلة الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Nature makes us .....  
a. unhappy      b. happy      c. worry      d. sad
2. If we live in the ....., we can go to a park.  
a. village      b. country      c. city      d. sea

### B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1- Ramy : You live near the sea. Do you have a boat?

Yaseen :

2- Omar :

Adel : Sami is learning sign language because he is deaf.

### C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We should be ..... to our parents.  
a. careful      b. normal      c. grateful      d. hungry
2. .... Osman staying in London now?  
a. Is      b. Has      c. Are      d. Does
3. All the kids are looking forward ..... to the beach.  
a. to go      b. going      c. to going      d. go
4. .... means unable to hear.  
a. Blind      b. Deaf      c. Dumb      d. Strong
5. The players ..... to score a goal at the moment.  
a. try      b. are trying      c. tried      d. tries
6. The baby is crying .....  
a. loudly      b. loud      c. as loud      d. load

### D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Hi Samia,

It's better to meet you on Saturday because I'm going out with my family on Friday. So, if that's still good for you, why don't you come here? Then you can see the new flat. We can eat at home and then go for a walk in the afternoon. I want to hear all about your new job! Our address is in Nahda Street, but it's a bit difficult to find because the house numbers are really strange here. There's a small side street behind it. Don't ask me why the side street doesn't have a different name! But call me if you get lost and I'll come and get you. Let me know if there's anything you do! don't like to eat. See you soon!

Gehan

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why can't Gehan meet Samia on Friday?
2. Where does Gehan live?
3. What does the underlined pronoun "We" refer to?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Gehan wants Samia to see the new .....  
a. job      b. flat      c. street      d. address
5. Gehan suggests eating at .....  
a. home      b. a restaurant      c. the club      d. a café

### E Writing

5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your weekend activities"

أخبارك عن فراقتك

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الجواب عن الأسئلة التالية كتابة فقراتك الإبداعية:

- What activities do you usually do at the weekend?

- Where do you go at the weekend?

- At the weekend, I usually play .....

- I usually spend nice time with ....

- On Saturday morning, I often .....

يمكن استخدام العبارات التالية:



### A Listening

#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص السماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب.

- The speaker looks after ..... at a hospital.  
a. pupils      b. friends      c. patients      d. boys
- The speaker looks after children in a children's .....  
a. house      b. flat      c. school      d. ward
- The speaker is feeling ..... tonight.  
a. happy      b. tired      c. sad      d. glad
- The speaker is looking forward to going home and having a .....  
a. rest      b. food      c. fruit      d. drink

### B Language Functions

#### 2 Complete the following dialogue:

Hadeer has some good news.

Hadeer : How are you?

Khaled : I am fine. 1 .....

Hadeer : Fine. Thanks. I have good news.

Khaled : Really! 2 .....

Hadeer : I got the full mark in the science exam.

Khaled : 3 .....

Hadeer : What did you do in this exam?

Khaled : 4 .....

Hadeer : Well done! That's great news.

Khaled : 5 .....

### C Reading Comprehension

#### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

This is Nelly. She's a nurse. She's tall and thin. She works at a hospital. She looks after sick people. She gets up at six o'clock in the morning. She takes a shower and puts on her clothes. Then she eats breakfast at half past six. At seven o'clock, she catches the bus to the hospital. Nelly starts work at eight o'clock. She helps the doctors. At twelve o'clock, she has lunch. She goes home at five o'clock. She has dinner at half past six in the evening. Then, she watches TV. At ten o'clock, she goes to bed.

#### A. Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the passage?
- What does the underlined pronoun "She" refer to?
- Do you think people like Nelly? Why / Why not?

#### B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Nelly watches TV in the .....  
a. morning      b. afternoon      c. evening      d. midday
- The word "sick" means .....  
a. well      b. good      c. ill      d. healthy
- Nelly works as a/an .....  
a. nurse      b. engineer      c. doctor      d. architect

### D Vocabulary and Structure

#### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I love my friends so much. I really like to ..... with them.  
a. take      b. comment      c. clean      d. communicate
- On Saturday, I usually ..... time with my cousins.  
a. spend      b. spends      c. spending      d. am spending
- We must all be ..... to those who help us.  
a. tired      b. grateful      c. careless      d. rude
- I buy food from this street-food ..... His food is delicious.  
a. seller      b. officer      c. worker      d. thief
- The boy cried when he felt that he was ..... at home.  
a. happy      b. careful      c. alone      d. cheerful

6. Nabilah feels ill, so she ..... in bed this morning. **WB**  
 a. staying b. is staying c. stay d. is stayed
7. Hassan wants his handwriting to be fine. That's why he is learning .....  
 a. calligraphy b. sign language c. music d. sewing
8. Mrs. Ota is learning ..... these days because she wants to be a dressmaker. **WB**  
 a. drawing b. hunting c. painting d. sewing
9. Our football team will win because they are playing very .....  
 a. good b. well c. badly d. bad
10. Deaf people can use ..... language to communicate.  
 a. sign b. signal c. sight d. safe
5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: **WB**  
 1. What time do you ..... (doing) your homework after school?  
 2. Watch out! The bus ..... (comes) too fast.  
 3. It is important to drive ..... (careful) when it is raining.  
 4. Look! The sun ..... (shines) and the sky is clear. **WB**

### Writing

#### 6. Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

- To your friend Sara telling her about a trip to Al Azhar Park.  
 - Your name is Salma and your email address is salmazaki@gmail.com  
 - Your friend's email address is sarahamdi@yaho.com

(ممكن ان تكتب بالانجليزية)

يمكنك من خلال الكتابة عن الأسطة الالية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني:

- Do you usually go on trips?
- Where did you last go on a trip?
- How was the weather then?
- Once, we went on a trip to .....
- We took photos there.
- It was sunny and .....
- We felt .....

يمكن استخدام العبارات الالية:

## Unit 2 New Hello!



## Unit 3

## Great jobs

### Objectives

#### Reading:

An article about the Egyptian handball team; a text about Ancient Egyptian doctors; a text about heroes

#### Writing:

A paragraph about rubbish collectors, a paragraph about someone you are proud of

#### Listening:

Descriptions of different heroes; a talk about a family history; a discussion about what makes a hero

#### Speaking:

Talking about heroes; discussing your family history; saying what you are proud of; checking you understand

#### Language:

used to

#### Life Skills:

Collaboration; Communication

#### Values:

Work values; Love and respect for homeland and the family

#### Issues:

Citizenship; Loyalty and belonging; National unity

## Key Vocabulary

hero (heroes)	بطل / أبطال	charity	جمعية خيرية / عمل خيري
competition	مسابقة / منافسة	handball	لعبة كرة اليد
junior	ناشئ / مبتدئ	the final	المرحلة النهائية
junior team	فريق الناشئين	fence	لنن / مؤنث
senior	كبير في السن / راشد	win (won / won)	يفوز
senior team	الفريق الاول		
patron	راعي / كميل	jobs	مدرّب رياضي
nuclear scientist	عالم نووي	sports coach	طبيب جراح
		surgeon	

## Verbs & Nouns

do a job	يلدّي وظيفة / يقوم بمهمة	start a charity	ينشئ مؤسسة خيرية
do / play a sport	يلعب رياضة	win a competition	يفوز بمسابقة
do experiments	يجري تجارب علمية	get a prize	يحصل على جائزة
start school	يبدأ الدراسة	get a job	يحصل على وظيفة

## Vocabulary

date of birth	تاريخ الميلاد	shark	سمكة قرش
heart problems	مشاكل في القلب	princess	أميرة
goal	مرمى / هدف	Khedive	خديوي
nuclear	نووي	national	قومي
treatment	علاج	organise (d)	ينظم
teamwork	عمل جماعي	score (d)	يسجل (أهداف / نقاط)
event	حدث (هام)	attack (ed)	يهاجم

## Expressions & Prepositions

get married	يتزوج	play for	يلعب لصالح
improve in a sport	يتحسن في رياضة	find out about	يعرف / يكتشف
(be) born into a rich family	يولد لعائلة ثرية	throw the ball into ...	يلقي بالكرة في ...
give money	يمنع مالا	good at + n / V-ing	جيد في
look inside	ينظر بداخل ...	died in + year	مات في سنة ...
win ... against	يفوز بـ ... ضد	help children with heart problems	يساعد أطفال لديهم مشاكل بالقلب
lose ... against	يخسر ... ضد		
under - 19 (adj)	تحت سن 19		

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs Present

lose	يفقد / يخسر	Past simple	Past Participle
bear	تلد	lost	lost
mean	يعني	bore	born
throw	يرمي / يلقي	meant	meant
		threw	thrown

Word	Meaning	Opposite
similar	مشابه	different
brave	شجاع	courageous
patient	صبور	impatient
successful	ناجح	unsuccessful
junior	ناشئ / مبتدئ	senior
win	يفوز	succeed
national	قومي	local
		international

## Definitions

sports coach	مدرب رياضي	- a person who trains or helps people to do a sport - a person who teaches people how to play or improve in a sport
surgeon	طبيب جراح	a special doctor who knows how to look inside a person's body to help people who are ill
scientist	عالم	someone who does experiments to study and find out about how things work
charity	جمعية خيرية	you can give money to this to help poor people
hero	بطل	a person that people admire <sup>(1)</sup> because they have done something very brave <sup>(2)</sup> or good
patron	راعي / كميل	a person who gives money to help people or places
handball	لعبة كرة اليد	a sport with seven players in a team. They score by throwing <sup>(3)</sup> the ball into a goal
competitions	مسابقات	events when people try to get a prize by being the best at something
win	يفوز	to be the first person or team in a game or competition
junior	ناشئ / مبتدئ	for younger people
senior	كبير / راشد	for older people
female	أنثى / مؤنث	a woman or a girl

# Language Notes

## 1) win - earn

- **win** (won / won) يفوز بـ
- (a medal - a prize - a competition)
- Ex. All students hope to **win** the first prize.
- **earn** (ed - ed) يكسب مالاً / قوت يومه
- (money - a living / his living)
- Ex. We **earn** money from our work.
- Ex. My dad works hard to **earn** his living.

## 2) lose - miss

- **lose** (v) (lost / lost) يفقد / يخسر (شيء) يخسر - يفقد / يفقد شخص
- Ex. Barcelona **lost** the last match.
- Ex. I **lost** my keys yesterday.
- **miss** (v) (ed) يفوت شخص يفوته شيء / يفقد شخص
- Ex. I **missed** the train, so I took the next one.
- Ex. I **miss** you.

## 3) patient

- **patient** (adj) مريض
- Ex. You should be **patient**, the food will be ready soon.
- **patient** (n) شخص مريض
- Ex. Doctors examine **patients** and give them medicines.

## 4) as - like

- **as** كـ: ثاني قبل وظيفة شخص / شيء
- Ex. He works **as** a doctor.
- Ex. We use this drink **as** medicine for cold.
- **like** نستخدم بمعنى مشابه
- Ex. This soldier is **like** a lion.

## 5) the first ... to + inf.

- Ex. He was **the first** player to **score** five goals in a match.
- يستخدم هذا الأسلوب بمعنى (الأول في القيام بشيء)

## Check on Language Notes

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mr Ali works hard to ..... his living.  
a. win b. lose c. earn d. take
2. My friend ..... his bag on a bus.  
a. lost b. won c. missed d. earned
3. Dr Magdy Yacoub treats many ..... for free.  
a. doctors b. parts c. patrons d. patients
4. Dr Zewail worked ..... a scientist.  
a. like b. as c. such d. unlike
5. That team was the first ..... the gold cup.  
a. win b. winning c. to win d. won

## Audio script

SB Page (23)

استمع إلى الصوت

1- Photo one shows Omar Abdelkader. He was born in 1994. When Omar was 22, a shark<sup>(1)</sup> attacked<sup>(2)</sup> him and he lost a leg<sup>(3)</sup>, but this did not stop him wanting to be successful<sup>(4)</sup>. Now he helps other people with similar<sup>(5)</sup> problems and he is an important sports coach<sup>(6)</sup>.



2- Photo two shows Sameera Moussa. Sameera was born in 1917 and studied science<sup>(7)</sup> at Cairo University. She was Egypt's first female<sup>(8)</sup> nuclear scientist<sup>(9)</sup> and wanted to use nuclear treatments<sup>(10)</sup> in medicine<sup>(11)</sup>. She died in 1952.



3- Photo three shows Magdy Yacoub. He was born in Bilbeis in 1935. He went to Cairo University and became an important heart surgeon<sup>(12)</sup>. He then helped people with heart problems<sup>(13)</sup> for many years. He stopped most of his work a long time ago, but in 2006, he started a charity<sup>(14)</sup> to help children with heart problems.



4- Photo four shows Princess<sup>(15)</sup> Fdima Ismail. The princess was the daughter of Khedive Ismail<sup>(16)</sup> and she was born in 1853. She became a patron<sup>(17)</sup> of Egypt's first national<sup>(18)</sup> university after she gave a lot of money and land to help it to open in 1908. From 1908 to 1940, people called it the Egyptian University, but it is now called<sup>(19)</sup> Cairo University<sup>(20)</sup>.



Say it correctly

\* surgeon

ينطق المقطع الملون مثل حرفي [أ] في كلمة (bird)

# Reading

SB Page (24)

## Egyptian heroes!

The Egyptian handball team<sup>(1)</sup> are heroes<sup>(2)</sup>! They won the handball Africa Cup of Nations<sup>(3)</sup> in Tunisia<sup>(4)</sup> in 2020. They won the final<sup>(5)</sup> against Tunisia 27-23. That means they are the best team in Africa!



This is not the first time Egypt's handball team played in a final. In 2019, the junior team<sup>(6)</sup> won the under-19<sup>(7)</sup> World Cup Final 32-28 against Germany<sup>(8)</sup>. They were the first team from Africa to win it. In 2018, the senior team<sup>(9)</sup> were also in the final of the Africa Cup of Nations, but lost the final against Tunisia.

Now, lots of people in Egypt love the sport. Let's hope the Egyptian team can win competitions<sup>(10)</sup> again!



Say it correctly  
\* Tunisia

ينطق حرف (ا) في هذه الكلمة مثل حرف (ا) في كلمة tube وينطق حرف س مثل Z

WB Page (86)

When my parents were younger, they lived in Luxor. Then they moved to Port Said in 1990. My father got a job in Cairo 15 years ago. They then lived in a small flat from 2005 to 2006. They moved to the bigger flat a year later when I was born.

WB Page (87)

My brother Ahmed loves playing handball, and he's very good at it. When he was eight, he played in a junior competition<sup>(1)</sup> for a team in our city. The team didn't win<sup>(2)</sup>, but it was second. Ahmed is now 21 and last year, he played an important senior team. He was very pleased<sup>(3)</sup>. Next year, the team are playing in an important competition. I hope they win it!



1- جيد في  
2- مسابقة للشباب  
3- سعيد  
4- لم يفلح  
5- يلعب لصالح  
6- مسرور

## Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. Players score by throwing the ball into a goal in .....  
a. handball  
b. chess  
c. swimming  
d. karate  
[SB]
2. The ..... Egyptian handball team did not win the final in 2018.  
a. ancient  
b. final  
c. nuclear  
d. senior  
[SB]
3. Teams from Africa never won the handball World Cup .....  
a. Ball  
b. Total  
c. Final  
d. Goal  
[SB]
4. To ..... means to be the first in a game or competition.  
a. miss  
b. win  
c. lose  
d. earn  
[SB]
5. A ..... is an event when people try to get a prize by being the best at something.  
a. charity  
b. coach  
c. competition  
d. team  
[SB]
6. A/An ..... does experiments to study and find out about how things work.  
a. event  
b. hero  
c. worker  
d. scientist  
[WB]
7. A ..... knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill.  
a. scientist  
b. nurse  
c. surgeon  
d. chemist  
[WB]
8. The ..... Egyptian handball team won the under-19 World Cup Final in 2019.  
a. junior  
b. poor  
c. general  
d. moral  
[SB]
9. A ..... gives money to people or place.  
a. scientist  
b. patron  
c. surgeon  
d. coach  
[WB]
10. The nurse was a ..... She saved a lot of people.  
a. begger  
b. manager  
c. servant  
d. hero  
[SB]
11. Sameer Mousa was Egypt's first ..... nuclear scientist.  
a. mole  
b. man  
c. female  
d. daughter  
[WB]
12. A ..... helps people who are poor, sick or have no home.  
a. chair  
b. charity  
c. shoe  
d. ship  
[WB]
13. Scientists do many experiments to find ..... for many illnesses.  
a. treatments  
b. development  
c. moments  
d. monuments  
[WB]
14. After the match, the ..... told me that I would be in the football first team.  
a. worker  
b. coach  
c. surgeon  
d. volunteer  
[WB]

### Bit by Bit Exercises

15. Dr Magdy Yacoub looks after children with heart .....  
 a. trips      b. experiments      c. competitions      d. problems
16. Tunisia has one of the best handball ..... in Africa.  
 a. teams      b. hearts      c. surgeons      d. flats
17. My neighbour Tarek was born ..... a rich family.  
 a. under      b. for      c. into      d. at
18. The Egyptian football team won 1-0 ..... Italy in 2009.  
 a. for      b. against      c. to      d. from
19. Mohamed Salah plays ..... Liverpool.  
 a. to      b. in      c. for      d. on
20. "Cowardly" is the opposite of .....  
 a. brave      b. patient      c. junior      d. similar

## Language

Remember: The past simple tense

يكون زمن الماضي البسيط كالآتي:  
 فعل في التصريف الثاني + فاعل

تقسم الأفعال في زمن الماضي البسيط إلى نوعين:

### 1- Regular verbs

• هي الأفعال التي يضاف إليها (ed) أو (d) أو (t) في التصريف الثاني لتكون صيغة الماضي البسيط:

الفعل في المصدر	الفعل في التصريف الثاني	الإضافة
cook	cooked	فعل غير منتهي بـ (e) يضاف له (ed)
arrive	arrived	فعل منتهي بـ (e) يضاف له (d)
play	played	فعل منتهي بـ (y) قبلها حرف متحرك يضاف له (ed)
study	studied	فعل منتهي بـ (y) قبلها حرف ساكن تحذف الـ (y) ويضاف (ied)
stop	stopped	بعض الأفعال التي تنتهي بحرف ساكن قبله حرف متحرك يكرر الحرف الأخير ويضاف (ed)

## Pronunciation of (ed)

Lessons 1 & 2

هناك ثلاث طرق لنطق (ed) المضافة للفعل في الماضي البسيط:

ينطق إذا انتهى الفعل بـ	ينطق إذا انتهى الفعل بـ	ينطق إذا انتهى الفعل بـ
t - d	c - k - x - p - ch - sh - gh - th - ss	g - l - n - r - s - v - w - y - z
wanted needed	danced - cooked mixed - helped watched - washed laughed - breathed passed	managed - called cleaned - offered used - loved followed - enjoyed

### 2- Irregular verbs

• الأفعال غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هي مثل:

hit → hit      teach → taught      see → saw

• ادرس نصيحة الأفعال (be) (do) (have):

Infinitive	Present simple	Past simple
be	am / is / are	was / were
do	do / does	did
have	have / has	had

يوجد جدول الأفعال غير المنتظمة في آخر الكتاب

• تغير الكلمات الآتية عن زمن الماضي البسيط:

	أمس	الآن
- yesterday	- last (week - month - year - night ...)	- this morning
- in the past	- once (upon a time)	- ago
- in 2016	- في عام ٢٠١٦	- منذ

• يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن:

Ex. We went to Aswan for a holiday last winter.

Ex. When I was young, I rode a bike.

Ex. The naughty boy woke up, had breakfast and left for school.

نفس الفعل في زمن الماضي البسيط باستخدام الصيغة الآتية:

مصدر الفعل + **inf.** + **didn't** + فاعل

Ex: I did not (didn't) arrive at school late.

كما يمكن أن نستخدم (never) في النفي بوضعا قبل الفعل في زمن الماضي البسيط ويقف الفعل مفعلا.

Ex: I never lost money.

للسؤال عن الماضي البسيط بـ "هل...؟" نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

؟ مصدر الفعل + **inf.** + فاعل + **Did**

Ex: Did you watch TV last night?

- Yes, I did / No, I didn't.

للسؤال عن الماضي البسيط بـ "كلمة استفهام...؟" نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

؟ ... مصدر الفعل + **inf.** + فاعل + **did** + كلمة استفهام

Ex: What time did you go to bed?

- I went to bed at 10 pm.

## Exercises on Language

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Suzan is asking Yomna about her study.

Suzan : Hi, Yomna. Can I ask you some questions?

Yomna : 1 .....

Suzan : 2 .....

Yomna : I was born on 3<sup>rd</sup> May 2007.

Suzan : 3 .....

Yomna : I went to primary school when I was 6.

Suzan : When did you start preparatory school?

Yomna : 4 .....

Suzan : What was your favourite subject in primary school?

Yomna : 5 .....

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

#### SB, WB & Exams

1. My grandfather ..... work in 2015.

a. stopping

b. stop

2. When Omar was 22, a shark attacked him and he ..... a leg.

a. is lost

b. lost

3. Magdy Yacoub ..... born in 1935.

a. was

b. is

4. He started playing chess when he was very little and he ..... always very good at it.

a. does

b. were

5. .... your friends ready for the exam last week?

a. Was

b. Did

6. When you arrived at the party, who ..... there?

a. do

b. did

7. Did Mohamed ..... to the shops yesterday?

a. goes

b. go

8. When ..... you start this job?

a. does

b. are

9. They ..... at home yesterday.

a. don't

b. aren't

10. I ..... a bike when I was young.

a. having

b. has

11. Tamer ..... know what marks he got in the last test.

a. don't

b. didn't

12. Why ..... those students punished by the teacher yesterday?

a. was

b. have

13. Who ..... you yesterday?

a. called

b. did called

14. In 2016, a thief ..... me and stole my money.

a. attacked

b. attacks

15. I met an old friend ..... month.

a. next

b. in

c. for

d. last

#### Bit by Bit Exercises

المعجم/الترتيب 2022

المعجم/الترتيب 2022

المعجم/الترتيب 2023

المعجم/الترتيب 2022

WB


WB

WB

16. When ..... you have dinner last night? d. will  
a. were b. had c. did
17. My brother bought his car two years ..... c. once  
a. lost b. ago

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

SB, WB & Exams

1. Weeheed ..... (be) a former for more than thirty years. WB
2. Aunt Leila ..... (lives) in England from 1995 to 2010. WB
3. Magdy Yacoub stopped most of his work as a surgeon for many years. SB
4. Magdy Yacoub ..... (was helped) people with heart problems for many years. SB
5. Last year, I ..... (go) to Cairo and visited a museum. WB
6. .... (Do) you meet your friends yesterday? Bit by Bit Exercises
7. Basma ..... (weren't) at school yesterday.
8. How long did it ..... (took) you to write this story?
9. I watched a nice film ..... (next) week.
10. .... (Do) your parents help you at school when you were young?
11. Why ..... (doesn't) Adel take his medicine yesterday? 
12. A long time ..... (since,) I went to London.

Speaking

1 Talking about heroes.

Question

- What makes a hero?  
مالذي يصنع البطل؟
- Why is a firefighter a hero?  
لماذا يعد رجل الإطفاء بطلاً؟
- Is a nurse a hero? Why? Why not?  
هل الممرضة من البطل؟ لماذا لم؟

Answer

- A hero is a brave person, kind and patient.  
البطل هو الشخص الشجاع والعطوف والصبور.
- He saves people from fires.  
يلقذ الناس من الحرائق.
- Yes, she is. She saves patients' lives.  
نعم، لأنها تساعد في إنقاذ حياة المرضى.

الحديث عن البطل.

2 Talking about teamwork.

Question

- Why is teamwork important?  
لماذا يعتبر العمل الجماعي مهماً؟
- Which team do you like? Why?  
أي فريق تحب؟ لماذا؟
- Did the team win many games last year? Why?  
هل فاز الفريق بالكثير من المباريات العام الماضي؟ لماذا؟
- When did your favourite team last win a competition?  
متى فاز فريقك المفضل بأحدى المسابقات؟
- Would you like to play in a team? Why? Why not?  
هل تحب في أن تلعب ضمن فريق؟ لماذا؟ لماذا لا؟

Answer

- Teamwork makes team wins.  
العمل الجماعي يؤدي لفوز الفريق.
- Chelsea is my favourite team. They play very well.  
تشيلسي هو فريق المفضل. إنهم يلعبون اللعب.
- Yes, they won many games last year. They scored many goals.  
نعم، فازوا بالعديد من المباريات العام الماضي. سجلوا العديد من الأهداف.
- They won the last competition.  
فازوا بالمسابقة الأخيرة.
- Of course, I'd like to play in a team because teamwork helps us win.  
بالطبع، أحب أن ألعب ضمن فريق لأن العمل الجماعي يساعدنا على الفوز.

General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

- Jana is telling Hala about her hero.
- Hala : Who is your hero, Jana? 1 .....
- Hala : What is your father's job? 2 .....
- Hala : 3 .....
- Jana : He works in a hospital in Cairo.
- Hala : 4 .....
- Jana : No, he isn't a surgeon. He is a dentist.
- Hala : Are you proud of him? 5 .....
- Jana : 6 .....

2023 - 2024

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Vocabulary

1. The Egyptian player won the gold medal, he's a real .....  
a. coach b. junior c. hero d. trainer

2. A ..... is a girl or woman.  
a. man b. female c. male d. child

3. Magdy Yacoub started a ..... to help people with heart problems.  
a. work b. team c. competition d. charity

4. .... is a sport with seven players in a team.  
a. Tennis b. Boxing c. Handball d. Snorkelling

5. The Egyptian handball team won an important ..... in 2020.  
a. competition b. station c. experiment d. expression

6. Omar is the first student ..... a prize in sports in our class.  
a. wins b. to win c. winning d. to winning

7. We ..... experiments at the school lab every Monday.  
a. make b. fly c. look d. do

## Language

8. A: Did you win the first prize? B: No, I .....  
a. didn't b. don't c. did d. do

9. Egypt's football team ..... the Africa Cup of Nations in 2010.

WB الدفصله / مينا محرم 2023

10. When ..... your grandfather born?  
a. win b. won c. to win d. winning

11. The Pyramids were ..... thousands of years ago.  
a. built b. build c. building d. to build

12. .... the children in the park yesterday?  
a. Was b. Did c. Are d. Were

13. Once, I ..... money to a poor man.  
a. give b. gave c. giving d. to give

## 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Did you ..... (bought) a new T-shirt yesterday?

2. Yousef ..... (be) born in 1962.

3. He ..... (come) first last year.

4. Karim ..... (visit) Luxor last week.

5. Heba ..... (travel) to Canada a week ago.

6. Magdy ..... (not / be) at home yesterday.

## 4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"What makes a hero"

WB (ممكن عندي آخر الوحدة)

يمكنك من خلال الجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الشخصية:

- Who's a hero?

- What do heroes often do?

- Why do you think someone is a hero?

يمكن استخدام الجوابات الآتية:

- A hero is someone who ....

- A hero is someone who is able to....

- A person can become a hero by.....

## Key Vocabulary

volunteer  
the countryside  
emergency  
natural disaster  
surgery

مطوع  
الريف  
حالة طوارئ  
كارثة طبيعية  
مريض / جراح

### Parts of the body

brain  
eyes  
mouth

الدماغ  
العين  
الفم

#### In your head

#### In your body

## Vocabulary

family history  
nature  
function  
earthquake  
serious  
the Red Crescent  
burns  
blood

تاريخ العائلة  
الطبيعة  
وظيفة / مهمة  
زلازل  
خطير - جاد  
العلل الأحمر  
حروق  
دم

عظام مكسورة  
مياه قذرة  
من نوع خاص  
مجوهرات  
منظمة / هيئة  
يتنفس  
يجري بحث / بحث  
يصلح / يجبر كسر

## Verbs & Nouns

### Noun

### Verb

cut  
pump  
plant  
infection

جرح  
مضخة  
نبات  
عدوى

جرح / شق  
يضخ  
يزرع  
يعدو

## Expressions & Prepositions

work for no money	يعمل بدون مقابل مالي	pass an exam	يحال امتحان
feel pleased with	يشعر بسعادة تجاهه	proud of	فتور
do research	يجري بحث	take in air	تأخذ الهواء
do a school project on	يقوم بمشروع مدرسي عن	write down	يكتب / يسجل
stop infection	يمنع العدوى	different to	مختلف عن
mend broken bones	يجبر العظام المكسورة	pay for	يدفع مقابل من أجل
sew cuts	يخيط الجروح	fall off	يسقط من على
start school	يبدأ الدراسة	cut... into	يقطع ... إلى ...

## Conjugations of

### Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
sew	بخط	sewed
pay	يدفع مالا	paid
burn	يحرق / يحرق	burnt / burned

## Word

### Meaning

### Opposite

serious	خطير	dangerous	safe
different	مختلف	various	the same
ancient	قديم جدا	old	modern
sick	مريض	ill	healthy / well

## Definitions

charity	جمعية خيرية	an organisation <sup>(1)</sup> that gives money, food, etc. to people who are in need <sup>(2)</sup>	1- منظمة 2- في احتياج
the countryside	الريف	the area outside a city, where there are farms and lots of nature	3- زراعي 4- فضاء
emergency	حالة طوارئ	something serious or dangerous that you need to do something about	5- مرض
natural disaster	كارثة طبيعية	- a terrible event, such as an earthquake <sup>(3)</sup> - something that happens in nature and causes a lot of damage, for example a flood <sup>(4)</sup> or an earthquake	
infection	عدوى	a disease <sup>(5)</sup> in a part of your body	
proud	فتور	If you are proud of someone, you feel pleased with them. This is because you think they are or have done something very good.	

volunteer	متطوع	- someone who works for no money to help people
cut	دعا	- a person who does a job without being paid for it
		on injury <sup>6</sup> when something cuts you, made by something sharp <sup>7</sup>
brain	الدماغ	it tells the parts of our body what to do
heart	القلب	it pumps blood around the body
lungs	الرئتين	they take in air into the body and help us to breathe <sup>8</sup>
pump	بضخة - مضخة	make water, air, gas, etc move in a particular direction; the thing you use to do this

### Language Notes

#### 1) feel - fall - fill

• <b>feel</b> (felt - felt) + adj.	يشعر	• <b>fall</b> (fell - fallen)	يسقط
Ex. I felt pleased with my brother. He won a prize.		Ex. The boy fell off his bike and broke his arm.	
• <b>fill</b> (ed-ed)	يملأ		
Ex. Hany filled his football with air.			

#### 2) breathe - breath

• <b>breathe</b> (V - d)	يتنفس	• <b>breath</b> (n)	الأنفاس (شعيق وزفير)
Ex. I can't breathe because of the smoke in the room.		Ex. He was sad. He took a deep breath.	

#### 3) special - private

• <b>special</b>	مميز / من نوع خاص	• <b>private</b>	خاص / شخصي / ملكية خاصة
Ex. It's a special hospital for children.		Ex. Don't read private letters. It's impolite.	

#### 4) stop

• <b>stop</b> + V-ing.	يتوقف عن شيء كان يفعل	• <b>stop</b> + to + inf.	يتوقف لكي يفعل شيئاً ما
Ex. Omar stopped smoking last year.		Ex. On my way home, I stopped to buy some fruits.	

### 5) jewellery - furniture

Ex. The furniture in our house is new and expensive.

نلاحظ أن هذه الكلمات لا تأخذ فعل مفرّد

وتمام عملها الاسم المفرد لا تأخذ فعل مفرّد

uncountable

is - has - was - (v+s)

#### Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The child ..... the balloon with air.  
a. felt                      b. failed                      c. filled                      d. fell
- The jewellery in that museum ..... fantastic.  
a. is                      b. are                      c. were                      d. be
- The doctor asked me to ..... slowly.  
a. breath                      b. birth                      c. breathe                      d. break
- You should stop ..... the boy next to you, Hazem.  
a. to hit                      b. to hitting                      c. hitting                      d. hit
- Patients in this hospital receive ..... treatment  
a. special                      b. ancient                      c. private                      d. brave

### AudioScript

SB Page (26)

Yasser:

I didn't use to know very much about my family history. Then, last week, I did a school project<sup>1</sup> about someone in my family so I did some research<sup>2</sup>, and I found out some really interesting things about my great grandfather. I knew he used to be a doctor, but I didn't know he worked for a charity<sup>3</sup>! My great grandfather used to live in the countryside<sup>4</sup>, and he worked as a volunteer<sup>5</sup> doctor for the Red Crescent<sup>6</sup> when there was a natural disaster<sup>7</sup>, or a health emergency<sup>8</sup>. For example, when there was an earthquake<sup>9</sup>, my great grandfather went to help. The work was difficult and sometimes scary<sup>10</sup>. He also used to look after people who didn't have much money. I feel very proud<sup>11</sup> of him.



- 1- مشروع مدرسي
- 2- بحث
- 3- جمعية خيرية
- 4- الريف
- 5- منطقة
- 6- جمعية الهلال الأحمر
- 7- كارثة طبيعية
- 8- حالة طوارئ
- 9- زلزال
- 10- مرعب / مخيف
- 11- فخور

#### Say it correctly

- \* volunteer
- \* Crescent
- \* disaster

ينطق حرف O في هذه الكلمة مثلما ينطق في كلمة got

ينطق الحرف الأول مثل صوت K وينطق المقطع الأخير مثل كلمة sent

ينطق حرف S الملون مثل الصوت Z

## Reading

SB Page (38)

## Ancient Egyptian doctors

We know how Ancient Egyptian doctors helped their patients because they wrote down their ideas thousands of years ago.

## The body

Ancient Egyptian doctors understood that the heart pumps blood around the body. However, they used to think that the heart also pumped air to our lungs. They were also the first people to understand some of the things the brain does, but they did not know how important it was.

## Ways to help

Doctors used to use plants to help people with burns. They also knew how to mend broken bones and to stop infections. We still use some of these plants today. They also knew how to mend broken bones and saw cuts, but they didn't use to know everything. For example, they used to make medicine from animal eyes. They used to think that an animal's eye helped people who could not see!



\* pump  
\* burn

يقطع دواء في هذه الكلمة كما يقطع في كلمة  
نقطه هذه الكلمة مثل كلمة bird مع الحروف البنية



الاسماء  
التي استخدمها  
الاطباء  
في  
الطب  
في  
الوقت  
القديم  
كانت  
تختلف  
عن  
التي  
نستخدمها  
الآن  
لكن  
بعض  
الاسماء  
لا تزال  
تستخدم  
اليوم  
مثل  
النباتات  
التي  
تستخدم  
في  
الطب  
اليوم

## Magdy Yacoub

WB Page (39)

We should all be proud of Magdy Yacoub. He was born in 1935 in Bilbeis, but the family used to travel to many places because his father was an important doctor. Magdy also became a doctor. Before he stopped working in 2001, he used to work in a special hospital in London. At this hospital, Magdy used to help to give people new hearts for the first time. Before the 1980s, people with heart problems often died. In 2009, Magdy Yacoub started a charity for ill children in Aswan. Very ill children didn't use to live long lives, but many ill children can now live healthy lives!



الاسماء  
التي  
استخدمها  
الاطباء  
في  
الوقت  
القديم  
كانت  
تختلف  
عن  
التي  
نستخدمها  
الآن  
لكن  
بعض  
الاسماء  
لا تزال  
تستخدم  
اليوم  
مثل  
النباتات  
التي  
تستخدم  
في  
الطب  
اليوم

WB Page (39)

Life in Ancient Egypt was different to today's. Poor children didn't use to go to school, but children from rich families used to start school when they were about seven. When they were at home, children used to enjoy playing games. When older parents died, they used to leave their houses to the sons. However, they used to leave things inside the house, such as jewellery and furniture, to the daughters.



الاسماء  
التي  
استخدمها  
الاطباء  
في  
الوقت  
القديم  
كانت  
تختلف  
عن  
التي  
نستخدمها  
الآن  
لكن  
بعض  
الاسماء  
لا تزال  
تستخدم  
اليوم  
مثل  
النباتات  
التي  
تستخدم  
في  
الطب  
اليوم

## Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## SB, WB &amp; Exams

- A natural ..... is a terrible event, such as an earthquake. **SB**  
a water b science c gas d disaster
- A ..... helps people who are poor, sick or don't have a home. **SB**  
a school b charity c museum d theater
- ..... the meat into small pieces before you cook it. **WB**  
a Boil b Mend c Pump d Cut
- The ..... is the area outside a city, where there are farms and lots of nature. **SB**  
a countryside b earthquake c mountain d crescent
- My grandmother was born in 1955 and my ..... grandmother was born in 1930. **WB**  
a big b senior c high d great
- If you are ..... of someone, you feel pleased with them. **SB**  
a interested b bored c proud d keen

7. Dirty water from a river can ..... you if you drink it.  
 a. infect b. enjoy c. clean d. mend
8. The ..... tells the parts of our body what to do.  
 a. heart b. brain c. eye d. stomach
9. You can only open this door in d/cn ..... such as a fire.  
 a. emergency b. charity c. pleasure d. organisation
10. He was a ..... for the Red Crescent.  
 a. beggar b. charity c. donation d. volunteer
11. This football has no air inside it. I need a ..... to fill it.  
 a. cut b. plant c. pump d. box
12. .... is usually made of gold.  
 a. Furniture b. Jewellery c. Information d. Sheets
13. My friend had an accident, so he had a ..... arm.  
 a. break b. broke c. breaking d. broken
14. Can you tell me the ..... of the brain?  
 a. homework b. function c. housework d. career
15. Children in Egypt ..... school at the age of four.  
 a. start b. walk c. finish d. play
16. The little child ..... off his bike and broke his leg.  
 a. felt b. filled c. failed d. fell
17. Ola went to a surgeon to ..... the cut in her hand.  
 a. cook b. break c. sew d. plant
18. Lungs take in air and help us to .....  
 a. release b. breathe c. please d. relax
19. The opposite of "ancient" is .....  
 a. modern b. awful c. old d. dangerous
20. I feel pleased ..... my good exam result.  
 a. at b. with c. on d. for

## Bit by Bit Exercises

## Language

used to

اعتاد ان

## Affirmative

الاثبات

Subject + used to + inf. اعتاد ان

• استخدم (used to + inf.) للحديث عن عادات أو أفعال تكررت في الماضي ولا تحدث الآن.

used to play = played

Ex. I used to eat much bread, but now I don't.

## Negative

الإنفي

لم يعتاد ان. didn't use to + inf.

Ex. I didn't use to drive cars when I was younger, but I drive cars now.

## Question

الاستفهام

هل ... اعتاد ان ...؟ Did + subject + use to + inf. ...?

Ex. Did you use to read books when you were a child?

- Yes, I did. / - No, I didn't.

• يمكن أن تستخدم كلمات الاستفهام كما يلي:

Did + subject + use to + inf. ...? كلمة استفهام

Ex. What did your brother use to do when he was young?

- My brother used to play music.

## Notes

Ex. I used to be lazy, but now I am not.  
في المثال السابق، جاء فعل **be** بعد **used to** لم الصفة وذلك لسند معنا: **كنت لست**  
نحلي أني لم أبدأ أضع هذه الصفة:

ولكن

Ex. I used to come late to school, but now I don't.  
لما أنا جاء فعل الماضي **come** بعد **used to** كحالي المثال السابق سنستخدم:

لإشارة أني لم أبدأ أفعل هذا الفعل:  
- وحدث الحصة الثانية في امتحان محافظة المنوفية / ٢٠٢٢

Ex. He used to be fat, but now he .....

a. hasn't b. doesn't c. don't d. isn't

Answer d. isn't

## Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

- I used to ..... basketball, but I don't now.  
a. played b. play c. playing d. plays **SB**
- Before he got married, Yasser's dad ..... live in Cairo.  
a. was using b. don't use to c. uses to d. didn't use to **SB**
- When you were ten, ..... you use to live in a different house?  
a. do b. does c. did d. to do **SB**
- Yasser's uncle ..... live in Tunisia.  
a. used to b. used c. using d. is used to **SB**
- When she was a child, Yasser's Mum ..... play the piano every day.  
a. was used to b. used to c. was using to d. use to **SB**
- There ..... a hotel in our city ten years ago, but now there are three.  
a. weren't b. didn't c. isn't d. didn't use to be **WB**
- My grandfather ..... football when he was young, but he can't walk now.  
a. play b. used to play c. use to play d. plays **WB**
- Dina ..... give money to charity, but now she does.  
a. used b. didn't use c. used to d. didn't use to **SB**

9. Yasser's grandmother ..... work in a hospital.

a. used to b. is used c. uses to d. is using to **SB**

10. When I was young, I used ..... chess.

a. playing b. to playing c. to play d. played **WB**

11. Did he ..... to walk to work?

a. used b. uses c. using d. use **WB**

12. Where did you ..... ?

a. use to live b. used to live c. lived d. living **WB**

Bit by Bit Exercises

13. .... you use to go on boat trips when you lived in Aswan?

a. Do b. Did c. Does d. Are **WB**

14. I ..... to do sport in the club when I was a child.

a. use b. uses c. using d. used **WB**

15. We used to ..... in the countryside, but now we live in the city.

a. lived b. live c. lives d. living **WB**

16. Dad used to be late for work, but now he .....

a. do b. does c. doesn't d. isn't **WB**

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB, WB & Exams

- Yasser's grandfather ..... (doesn't) use to know how to drive a car. **SB**
- ..... (Do) you use to have a lot of homework? **WB**
- How did you ..... (used) to go to school? **WB**
- I used to ..... (nod) my lunch with my father when I was young. **WB**
- Where did he ..... (used) to live? **WB**
- I ..... (not used) to smoke. **WB**
- What ..... (do) your father use to do in the past? **WB**
- When I was young, I used to ..... (playing) tennis. **WB**
- My father used to ..... (worked) in a tourist company five years ago. **WB**

Bit by Bit Exercises

## General Exercises

on Lessons 3 &amp; 4

## 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali is talking to Khalid about his great grandfather.

Khalid : Do you know much about your great grandfather?

Ali : ①

Khalid : ②

Ali : He used to have a big charity in his village.

Khalid : ③

Ali : Yes, he used to give money to the poor.

Khalid : Are you proud of him?

Ali : ④

Khalid : Do you want to be like him?

Ali : ⑤

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Vocabulary

1. The ----- take air into the body.

- a. ears                      b. lungs                      c. teeth                      d. eyes

2. The ----- pumps blood around the body.

- a. stomache                      b. brain                      c. heart                      d. lung

3. I wrote ----- the ideas which the teacher suggested.

- a. down                      b. about                      c. over                      d. above

4. A ----- is someone who works for no money to help people.

- a. scientist                      b. volunteer                      c. nurse                      d. police officer

## Language

5. Hudd's mother ----- be a nurse ten years ago.

- a. uses to                      b. use to                      c. used                      d. used to

## Speaking

## 1) Discussing family history

## Question

- Do you know much about your family history?

هل تعرف الكثير عن تاريخ أسرتك؟

- What job did your great grandfather do?

ما الوظيفة التي كان يشغلها جديك الأكبر؟

- What things did your great grandfather use to do?

ما الأشياء التي اعتاد جديك الأكبر على فعلها؟

## Answer

- Yes, I know much about my great grandparents.

نعم، أعرف الكثير عن تاريخ أجدادي الكبار.

- My great grandfather was a famous doctor.

كان جدي الكبير طبيباً مشهوراً.

- He was a hero, he used to look after poor patients.

كان بطلاً، حيث اعتاد على الاعتناء بالمرضى الفقراء.

## 2) Talking about Ancient Egyptian doctors

الحديث عن أطباء مصر القديمة

## Question

- How do we know about Ancient Egyptian doctors?

كيف نعرف عن أطباء مصر القديمة؟

- What did they use to know about the heart?

ماذا عرفوا بشأن القلب؟

- What did they use to do to help patients?

ماذا اعتادوا على فعله لمساعدة المرضى؟

- Are you proud of Ancient Egyptian doctors? Why/ Why not?

هل أنت فخور بأطباء مصر القدماء؟ لماذا؟

## Answer

- They wrote down their ideas thousands of years ago.

كتبوا (دوّنوا) أفكارهم منذ آلاف السنين.

- They understand that the heart pumps blood around the body.

فهموا أن القلب يضخ الدم إلى الجسم.

- They used to use plants to help people with burns and to stop infections.

اعتادوا على استخدام النباتات لمساعدة الناس من الحروق وإيقاف العدوى.

- Yes, because they used to think how to help people all the time.

نعم، لأنهم اعتادوا على التفكير في الاعتناء بالناس طوال الوقت.

6. ... you use to go to museums when you were a child?  
a. Do b. Are c. Did d. Have
7. Ali used to ... up early for school.  
a. gets b. get c. got d. getting
8. Did Hossam Hassan ... captain of the Egyptian Football Team?  
a. uses to be b. was c. be d. use to be
9. My father ... play chess when he was a child.  
a. used to b. use c. using to d. didn't used
10. Where ... you use to live before you came to Cairo?  
a. does b. do c. doing d. did

SB

**3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. Mamel ... (use) to like maths when she was at school.
2. How long ... (do) you use to study when you were young?
3. What games did you ... (used) to play with your friends?
4. She ... (used) to drink milk, but now she does.
5. When older parents died, they used to ... (left) their houses to the sons. **WB**

WB

**4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:**

"How your life used to be"

(محل عنه في آخر الورد)

- What did you use to do?
- How did you help your father?
- When I was ... I used to ...
- I used to ... father ...
- يمكنك من خلال الترجمة عن الأسئلة التالية كتابة المقطع الوارد:
- How did you help your mother?
- What did you use to do for your grandparents?
- يمكن استخدام العبارات التالية:
- I helped ... in the kitchen.

**Lessons 5 & 6**

SB pages 29-31 WB pages 90-92

**Key Vocabulary**

scared	مزعوب	street cleaners	عمال نظافة الشوارع
heroic	بطولي / شجاع	nursing	تدريس / ممرض
sure	مؤكد	manager	مدير
rubbish collectors	عمال جمع النفايات		

**Vocabulary**

education	التعليم	Athens	أثينا (عاصمة اليونان)
firefighter	رجل إطفاء	the Parthenon	البارثينون (معبد إغريس بأثينا)
captain	كابتن (قائد فريق)	the Island of Crete	جزيرة كريت
Faculty of Nursing	كلية التمريض	reason	سبب / مبرر
main idea	فكرة رئيسية	continue (d)	يستمر
painting	لوحة فنية / الرسم بالوان	agree (d)	يوافق
statue *	تمثال	collect (ed)	يجمع
championship	بطولة	study (ied) (n)	يدرس - دراسة
society	مجتمع		

**Expressions & Prepositions**

try their best	يحاولون بأقصى ما لديهم من جهد	at university	في الجامعة
do something useful	يفعل شيء مفيد	answer to	إجابة عن
put (someone) first	يضع (شخصاً) أولاً / يولي أولوية	on TV	في التلفزيون
keep our cities clean	نحافظ على مدننا نظيفة	scared of	مزعوب من
get better	يتحسن	In other words, ...	بمعنى آخر
help pay for	نساعد على دفع تكلفة		

**Conjugations of Irregular Verbs**

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
put	put	put
keep	kept	kept

## Confusing words

عادة ما يخلط بين معاني الكلمات الآتية، ادرس الفرق بينهم جيداً:

• to Ex. I went to the zoo yesterday. Ex. Omar wants to be a doctor. Ex. He studies hard to be a doctor.	حرف جر بمعنى إلى / نحو	• too Ex. This box is too heavy, I can't carry it. • two Ex. Dad bought two books yesterday.	ظرف يعني (كثراً/ أكثر من اللازم) إثنين
• know Ex. This is Ali. Do you know him?	فعل بمعنى (اعرف)	• no Ex. A: Do you have a car? B: No, I don't.	لا (تستخدم للجنابة عن سؤال بهل في النفي)
• their (They) Ex. The kids are eating their meals.	صفة ملكية للفاعل لجمع	• there Ex. Aswan is a big city. I live there.	ظرف مكان للبعد بمعنى (هناك)
• its Ex. The cat drank its milk.	صفة ملكية للفاعل غير العاقل	• it's (it is) Ex. I like pizza, it is (it's) delicious.	الانحصر (it is) وليما (it is): (n / adj)
• than Ex. Mogdy is taller than me.	حرف جر يستخدم مع صفات المقارنة	• then Ex. I got a degree. I then got a good job.	حال بمعنى (بعد ذلك)

Word		Meaning		Opposite	
useful	مفيد	helpful	useless	غير مفيد	
true	حقيقي	real	untrue	غير حقيقي	
scared	مرعوب	frightened	brave	شجاع	
main	رئيسي	major	minor	ثانوي	

## Definitions

heroic	بطولي / نبيل	very brave or great
manager	مدير	a person whose job is to <b>organise</b> people in a company or business
scared	مرعوب	<b>frightened</b> or afraid that something bad could happen

## Language Notes

### 1) reason - cause

• reason (for)  
مدير / تفسير  
Ex. What is the reason for leaving your job?

• cause (of)  
سبب  
Ex. Do you know the cause of the accident?

### 2) scared - scary

• scared  
خائف / مرعوب  
Ex. When the baby saw the dog, it was scared.

• scary  
مخيف / مرعب  
Ex. I saw a huge snake on TV. It was scary.

### 3) painting - drawing

• painting  
لوحة فنية - الرسم بالوان  
Ex. This painting is very colourful.

• drawing  
رسم - لرسم (بالقلم الرصاص / الحاف) (الرسم)  
Ex. He is good at drawing with pencils.

### 4) nursing - nursery

• nursing  
المرضى  
Ex. She studies at the Faculty of Nursing.

• nursery  
الحضانة  
Ex. The company has a nursery for the worker's children.

### 5) captain

• captain  
كابتن (قائد فريق)  
Ex. Salah is the captain of the Egyptian Football National Team.

• captain  
قبطان (قائد سفينة)  
Ex. The clever captain saved the ship from the storm.

**Soha** : All art is important.

**Sara** : What do you mean?

**Soha** : We all need art.

**Sara** : I'm not sure what you mean.

**Soha** : In other words, art can teach us things.

**Sara** : Sorry, I don't understand.

**Soha** : I mean, when we see a **painting** or a **statue**, we can learn things about life.

\*\*\*

**Karim** : I think that all teachers are heroes.

**Tarek** : What do you mean?

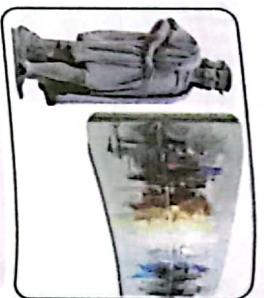
**Karim** : I mean, without teachers, we would not learn anything.

**Tarek** : There's the internet.

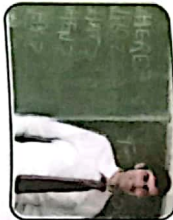
**Karim** : Sorry, I don't understand. I'm not sure what you mean.

**Tarek** : In other words, we don't need teachers because we have the internet.

**Karim** : I don't agree. We will always need teachers.



١- النحت  
٢- لوحة فنية  
٣- نحات



## New Message

Hi!

My name's Adam and I want to write about a person I am very proud to know. Her name is Mrs Karima Mohamed.

When she was younger, she used to study very hard because she wanted to be a nurse. She also used to work to help pay for her studies, but that is not the reason I am proud of her! In 2020, there was a health

emergency and many people were in hospital. I became ill, too. I was in hospital for two weeks and Mrs Karima Mohamed helped me and other people in the hospital. She was always very kind. I now know that she is one of the most important nursing managers in Cairo, so I am very happy she helped me. I am very proud of her!



١- تساعد في نقطة  
٢- سبب / سبيل  
٣- حالة طوارئ صحية  
٤- عطوفة

## Video script

There are some great jobs that you can do. Many great jobs do something to help other people.

Many people think that being a **firefighter** is a great job because they save people's lives. Sometimes they have to do dangerous things to save people.

It is also a great job to be a doctor or nurse. They save the lives of people every day. Many people think they are heroes!

This is a famous doctor called Professor Rashad Barsoum. He was born in Asyut in 1941. Today, he is one of the most important **kidney** doctors in the world.

He also teaches people to become doctors at Cairo University. One day these people will save lives and be new heroes.

A lot of people think teachers are heroes. They teach us to read, to write and to do many other things.

Which job would you like to do? Will you be a hero?

١- رجل إطفاء  
٢- إلهة

## Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### SB, WB & Exams

1. Street ..... help to keep our cities clean.

- a. builders                      b. makers                      c. walkers                      d. cleaners

2. I think rubbish ..... can be heroes.

- a. reviewers                      b. managers                      c. collectors                      d. bakers

3. We went to my cousin's house this morning, but nobody was .....

- a. there                      b. their                      c. they are                      d. they're

4. I don't think I ..... the answer to this question.

- a. go                      b. know                      c. no                      d. show

5. Warda is good at maths, and she's good at English, .....

- a. too                      b. two                      c. to                      d. twice

6. Athens is a great city and the Parthenon is ..... most famous building.  
a. it is b. it's c. its' d. its
7. Are you taller ..... your brother?  
a. that b. than c. this d. then
8. You can see ..... in a museum.  
a. castles b. players c. statues d. tents
9. My sister is a nurse. She helps her patients to ..... better.  
a. get b. have c. do d. make
10. I asked Samy about the ..... for his happiness.  
a. season b. reason c. cause d. manager
11. Kind teachers always give presents to ..... clever students.  
a. there b. they're c. their d. they are
12. My brother is trying his ..... to pass this year's exams.  
a. better b. best c. good d. the best
13. That poor girl works to help ..... for her study.  
a. to paying b. for paying c. paying d. pay
14. The word "scared" means .....  
a. brove b. dangerous c. frightened d. scary
15. Do you know the answer ..... this question?  
a. at b. to c. on d. in
16. The little girl is always ..... of dogs. She doesn't like them.  
a. scary b. proud c. scared d. fond
17. We all helped ..... our street clean.  
a. keep b. come c. do d. stop
18. My mother works as a nursing ..... in a big hospital.  
a. farmer b. officer c. tour guide d. manager
19. This nurse won a prize for her ..... work.  
a. silly b. useless c. heroic d. ugly
20. You must be ..... that the food you eat is healthy.  
a. true b. sure c. care d. able

Bit by Bit Exercises

Speaking

Checking you understand

- What do you mean?  
- I'm (not) sure what you mean.  
- Sorry, I don't understand.
- I mean...  
- In other words, ...
- I (don't) agree!  
- I (don't) agree!

General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

- Yousif is asking Mohammed about his father's job.
- Yousif : Hi, Mohammed. What does your father do?  
Mohammed : 1 .....
- Yousif : 2 .....
- Mohammed : He works in a big hospital in Cairo.  
Yousif : 3 .....
- Mohammed : He examines them and gives them medicine.  
Yousif : Does he like helping the poor?  
Mohammed : 4 .....
- Yousif : Do you like to be a doctor, too?  
Mohammed : 5 .....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

- Our ..... is full of great heroes.
  - captain
  - society
  - statue
  - reason
- ..... with you, we should be proud of our teachers.
  - agree
  - collect
  - study
  - continue
- ..... hard work, you wouldn't pass your exams.
  - For
  - By
  - Without
  - Of
- Rami is an active student, he ..... rubbish from his class.
  - manages
  - studies
  - drops
  - collects
- The opposite of "useful" is .....
  - useless
  - unable
  - helpful
  - able
- Samy is the ..... of our team. He plays very well.
  - manager
  - coach
  - captain
  - doctor
- The colours of this ..... is very bright.
  - painting
  - hero
  - charity
  - drawing
- Rubbish ..... come to our street every day to take rubbish away.
  - cleaners
  - managers
  - collectors
  - volunteers

WB

3 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"A hero you are proud of"

(محتاج عنه في آخر الوجدو)

- يمكنك من خلال الدجاجة عن الأسئلة التالية كتابة المقرة الشخصية:
- Who are you proud of?
  - What did he/she do when he/she was young?
  - How did he / she become your hero?
  - Why do people like him / her?
  - Is he/she important?
  - يمكن استخدام العبارات التالية:
  - I'm proud of .....
  - He / She helped in .....
  - He / She studied ..... to become a .....
  - He / She ..... very kind.

Review

Vocabulary

handball	لعبة كرة اليد	proud	فخور	volunteer	مطوع
hero (heroes)	بطل (الرجال)	competition	مسابقة/منافسة	body	جسم
junior	ناشئ/مبتدئ	the final	المنافسة النهائية	sure	متأكد
junior team	فريق الناشئين	win (won / won)	يفوز	heroic	بطولي
senior	كبير في السن / راشد	charity	جمعية خيرية / عمل خيرية	nursing	تفريض
senior team	الفريق الأول			manager	مدير
emergency	حالة طوارئ	the countryside	الريف	patient (n)	شخص مريض
natural disaster	كارثة طبيعية	great grandmother	الجددة الكبرى		
scared	مرعوب / خائف	great grandfather	الجد الأكبر		
scary	مرعب / مخيف	female	أنثى / مؤنث		

Jobs

scientist	عالم	nuclear scientist	عالم نووي
surgeon	طبيب جراح	street cleaners	عمال نظافة الشوارع
patron	راعٍ / كفيل	rubbish collectors	عمال جمع القمامة
sports coach	مدرب رياضي		

Verbs & Nouns

do a job	يؤدي وظيفة / يقوم بعمله	start a charity	يشي مؤسسة خيرية
do / play a sport	يلعب رياضة	win a competition	يفوز بمسابقة
do experiments	يجري تجارب علمية	get a prize	يحصل على جائزة
start school	يبدأ الدراسة	get a job	يحصل على وظيفة

## Language

## 1 The past simple tense

## زمن الماضي البسيط

يتكون زمن الماضي البسيط من التصريف التالي للفعل. ننقسم الأفعال إلى أفعال منتظمة يخاف لها (d / ed / ied) وأفعال غير منتظمة (إشادة) والتي نلاحظ كما هي:

walk → walked see → saw

- يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن فعل حدث في الماضي ونفسي وسرد أحداث قصة.
- نفسي الفعل في زمن الماضي البسيط باستخدام (didn't) قبل مصدر الفعل.

فاعل + did not = didn't + فاعل

Ex. I did not (didn't) watch the film yesterday.  
للسؤال عن الماضي البسيط برهمل...؟ نستخدم:

Did + فاعل + inf...?

Ex. Did you travel to Alexandria last night?

- Yes, I travelled to Alexandria last night.

ويمكن أن نجيب بإجابة مختصرة كالآتي:

- Yes, I did. الإجابة في الإيجابيات

- No, I didn't. الإجابة في النفي

للسؤال برهمل...؟ كلمة استعملنا في زمن الماضي البسيط تتبع الصيغة الآتية:

فاعل + did + فاعل + inf...?

Ex. When did you buy this laptop? - I bought it last week.

## 2 used to

## اعتاد أن

1. نستخدم (used to + inf.) للحديث عن عادات أو أفعال كانت متكررة في الماضي ولا تحدث الآن.

Ex. I used to visit my uncle's farm when I was young.  
ننفي (used to) كالآتي:

فاعل + did not (didn't) + use to + inf.

Ex. I didn't use to sleep early when I was in Alexandria.  
نسال برهمل عن (used to) كالآتي:

Did + فاعل + use to + inf...?

Ex. Did you use to read stories when you were younger?

- Yes, I did.

نسال بر (كلمة استعملنا) عن (used to) كما يلي:

فاعل + use to + فاعل + did + فاعل + use to + inf...?

Ex. How did you use to go to school? - I used to take the school bus.

## Speaking

## 1 Talking about heroes.

الحديث عن الأبطال.

## Question

- What makes a hero?

## Answer

- A hero is a brave person, kind and patient.

- Why is a firefighter a hero?

- He saves people from fires.

- Is a nurse a hero? Why? Why not?

- Yes, she is. She saves patients' lives.

## 2 Talking about teamwork.

الحديث عن العمل الجماعي

## Question

- Why is teamwork important?

## Answer

- Teamwork makes team wins.

- Which team do you like? Why?

- Chelsea is my favourite team. They play very well.

## 3 Discussing family history

مناقشة تاريخ الأسرة

## Question

- Do you know much about your family history?

## Answer

- Yes, I know much about my great grandparents

- What job did your great grandfather do?

- My great grandfather was a famous doctor.

## 4 Talking about Ancient Egyptian doctors.

الحديث عن أطباء مصر القدماء

## Question

- How do we know about Ancient Egyptian doctors?

## Answer

- They wrote down this ideas thousands of years ago.

- What did they use to do to help patients?

- They used to use plants to help people with burns and to stop infections.

5) Checking you understand

- What do you mean?  
عند ماذا أنت متأكد من أنك تفهم؟
- I'm (not) sure what you mean.  
عند أن تكون متأكد من أنك تفهم، أنت تستخدم الكلمات الخاطئة.
- Sorry, I don't understand.  
للأسف، أنا لا أفهم.
- I mean ...  
أعني ...
- I (don't) agree!  
أنا (لا) أوافق!

General Exercises on Unit 3

1) Complete the following dialogue:

Dina and Rama are talking about the Red Crescent.

Dina : Have you heard about the Red Crescent?

Rama : It is one of the most important charities in the world.

Dina : Who helps in the charity?

Rama : Volunteers help ill and injured people when there is a natural disaster.

Dina : Thank you for this information.

Rama : Yes, many people give money and clothes.

Dina : Thank you for this information.

Rama : Thank you for this information.

Dina : Thank you for this information.

Rama : Thank you for this information.

Dina : Thank you for this information.

Rama : Thank you for this information.

Dina : Thank you for this information.

Rama : Thank you for this information.

Dina : Thank you for this information.

Rama : Thank you for this information.

Dina : Thank you for this information.

Rama : Thank you for this information.

Dina : Thank you for this information.

Rama : Thank you for this information.

Dina : Thank you for this information.

Rama : Thank you for this information.

Dina : Thank you for this information.

Rama : Thank you for this information.

Dina : Thank you for this information.

General Exercises

- A teaches people how to play or improve a sport.  
a. sports coach b. scientist c. teacher d. professor
- This book is about some Egyptian people who are all proud of.  
a. useless b. silly c. dangerous d. heroic
- AlAn is something serious or dangerous that you need to do something about.  
a. charity b. emergency c. nature d. organisation

Language

- My uncle to be a police officer.  
a. using b. is used c. used d. uses
- My uncle Rashid born in 1961.  
a. were b. was c. is d. does
- I started preparatory school a year ago.  
a. at b. for c. in d. ago
- I used to play football, but now I don't.  
a. didn't b. don't c. am not d. will not
- How did people use to in the past?  
a. travels b. travelled c. travel d. travelling
- He a junior chess competition when he was only 12.  
a. won b. win c. wins d. to win

3) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- My uncle lived in Giza (for) 2016.
- I (go) to primary school for six years.
- Where (does) you use to live in the past?
- Tamer didn't (used) to study hard at school.
- Yesterday, we (have) lunch in a big restaurant.
- (Do) you use to do sport when you were a child?

4) Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"How life used to be different in Ancient Egypt"

يمكنك من خلال الحياة عن السلوكيات القديمة في مصر القديمة.

- Was life in Ancient Egypt different to today's life?

- Did all children use to go to school?

- What did children use to do at home? - What did the daughters use to get?

- Life in Ancient Egypt was .... - Poor children didn't use to ....

- Children used to enjoy ....

# Paragraphs & Emails

## 1- What makes a hero

(Lessons 1 & 2)

A hero is a person who is able to help others. A person who saves someone who is in danger. A hero thinks about other people. Firefighters are heroes. They think about saving people. Sometimes a hero can be a teacher. He/ She can teach you to read and write. That will make a difference to your life. We have a lot of heroes who we're proud of in Egypt.

## 2- How my life used to be

(Lessons 3 & 4)

My life was different when I was young. I used to have different activities. When I was seven, I used to help my parents in the house. I helped my mother with the kitchen work. I used to help my father with his work in the garden. I used to help my grandfather on his farm. Now, I'm much older. I have a different house, different friends and different activities.

## 3- A hero I am proud of

(Lessons 5 & 6)

I'm proud of Mrs Karima Mahmoud. She is a great woman. When she was young, she used to study hard to become a nurse. She worked hard to pay for her study. When she became a nurse, she helped many people in her hospital. Her patients like her because she is very kind. She became an important nursing manager.

## 4- How life used to be different in Ancient Egypt

(General Exercises)

Life in Ancient Egypt was different to today's life. Poor children didn't use to go to school. Children from rich families used to go to school. Children used to enjoy playing games. When parents died, they left their houses to the sons. The Ancient Egyptians lived around the Nile River. They could grow crops. They built pyramids.

## 5- My future job

(Al Azhar)

I would like to be a scientist in the future. I like this job. I can make people's life easier. I can do something new and helpful. Without science life could be hard.

## 6- A person that I am proud of (Test)

To : radi(o)jdi@yahoo.com

From : radi(o)omar@gmail.com

Subject : A person I'm proud of

Dear Nadi(a),

How are you? I want to tell you about my mother. My mother is a person I am very proud of. When she was younger, she used to study very hard. She wanted to be a doctor. She used to work to help pay for her studies. In 2020, there was a health emergency. I became ill. I was in hospital for two weeks. She helped me and other people in the hospital. She was always very kind. I am very proud of her!

Yours,

Radi(c)

## Unit 3

## Al Azhar Test



### A Listening

#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The speaker's uncle is a/an .....  
a. doctor b. engineer c. teacher d. farmer
- The speaker's uncle works for .....  
a. a factory b. a school c. the Red Crescent d. a farm

### B Language Functions

#### 2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

- Abdullah : Did you meet your friends yesterday?

Amr : .....

- Esraa : .....

Farha : Because he works as a volunteer for the Red Crescent.

### C Usage

#### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We should help ..... collectors and keep our city clean.  
a. water b. money c. rubbish d. stamp
- Leila used to eat outside, but now she .....  
a. don't b. doesn't c. isn't d. didn't
- I always ..... my family when I travel for a long time.  
a. lose b. waste c. throw d. miss
- Our neighbour ..... to a new house last month.  
a. moved b. has moved c. will move d. moves
- The ..... helped the team to play the match well.  
a. volunteer b. coach c. engineer d. nurse
- The firemen ..... two women from the fire in this building yesterday.  
a. saved b. are saved c. were saved d. was saved

## D Reading Comprehension

## 4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Every person in this world has a dream which he/she wants to achieve during his / her life. This dream encourages him / her to do better and better and move towards his / her goal.

Not everything you think of can be your dream. Some things are just a part of the character you grow up with during your childhood. However, your dream plays an important role in your life. You should know how to realise a dream. So, don't leave your dream and try to make it come true.

## A. Answer the following questions:

1. What does every person in this world have?
2. How can you realise your dream?
3. What is your dream for the future?

## B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. A person's dream ..... him/her to do better.  
a. stops      b. encourages      c. asks      d. collects
5. A dream plays a/an ..... role in our life.  
a. important      b. slow      c. fast      d. simple

## E Writing

## 5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your future job"

اكتب عنه قبل الحصة

يمكنك من خلال الجدية عن السلطة التيبة كطبة المستقبلية.

- What would you like to be?
- Why do you choose this job?
- I'd like to be a/an .... in the future.
- This job will make me be able to.....

يمكن استخدام الممارات التيبة.

## TEST



## A Listening

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. The speaker's parents lived in ..... when they were younger.  
a. Cairo      b. Luxor      c. Giza      d. Aswan
2. They moved to Port Said in .....  
a. 2005      b. 2000      c. 2006      d. 1990
3. The speaker's father got a job in Cairo ..... years ago.  
a. 10      b. 12      c. 15      d. 20
4. They moved to a bigger ..... a year later when the speaker was born.  
a. flat      b. house      c. village      d. villa

## B Language Functions

## 2 Complete the following dialogue:

Esraa and Amal are talking about ancient Egyptian doctors.

Esraa : Did you read about ancient Egyptian doctors?

Amal : 1 .....

Esraa : Do you think that they helped their patients?

Amal : 2 .....

Esraa : 3 .....

Amal : They used plants to help people with burns and to stop infections.

Esraa : Did they know anything about the heart?

Amal : 4 .....

Esraa : 5 .....

Amal : You can visit museums and temples to know more about them.

## Reading Comprehension

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Omar and Salma went to Greece on holiday. They stayed in a nice, big hotel. In the mornings, they had breakfast at the hotel and in the evenings, they ate dinner at restaurants.

One night, they went to a famous restaurant and they sat outside because it was lovely, warm weather. They ordered fish with salad and chips. The waiter served it. They saw a big sign. It said, 'Don't feed the cats.' Soon, they saw a beautiful cat. It came up to their table. It sat beside Salma.

Salma cut a piece of fish and gave it to the cat. It ate the fish. The waiter was not happy! The cat did not wait for another piece. It jumped on the table, took the fish and quickly jumped back down. At that moment, the waiter came back out. He saw the cat with the fish. He looked at Salma, but he didn't say a thing. His look said it all.

## A. Answer the following questions:

- Where did Omar and Salma go on holiday?
- Why did they sit outside the famous restaurant?
- What did the sign say?

## B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the .....  
a. fish      b. table      c. cat      d. piece
- The restaurant was ..... to put the sign.  
a. bad      b. right      c. wrong      d. rude
- The waiter gave Salma a bad .....  
a. meal      b. fish      c. cat      d. look

## D Vocabulary and Structure

## 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I always ..... money to a charity that helps poor children.  
a. win      b. make      c. do      d. give
- When you are older, do you want to live in the city or the .....?  
a. side      b. earth      c. countryside      d. continent
- A ..... worker helps people or animals that need help.  
a. charity      b. sports      c. nuclear      d. fruit
- She helped to look ..... poor children in Egypt from 1920 to 1969.  
a. for      b. in      c. after      d. from

5. This is the town where I .....

a. bearing

b. was born

c. bear

d. to bear

6. Lind's cousin is in hospital with an eye .....

a. infection

b. part

c. nature

d. look

7. Winning the gold medal is .....

a. hero

b. heroic      work for any player.

c. poor

d. bad

8. My uncle .....

a. used to be

b. is

c. uses to be

d. were

9. Where ..... live before you moved to Alexandria?

a. are you

b. do you

c. you used to

d. did you use to

10. Mona's mother is a/an ..... at the hospital; they don't pay her for her work.

a. coach

b. adult

c. patient

d. volunteer

## 6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- In 1990, he ..... (becomes) the number one chess player in our city. **WB**
- Did you visit the Pyramids when you ..... (are) young?
- Hany ..... (uses to) eat much chocolate when he was young.
- Amany used to ..... (playing) music when she was at school.

## E Writing

## 6 Write an email of about NINETEEN (90) words:

to your friend Nadi(a) telling him/ her about a person you are proud of:

- Your name is Radi(a) and your email address is radi(a)@yahoo.com

- Your friend's email address is nadi(a)omar@gmail.com

(أجاب عنه قبل الحين)

يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني:

- Who is the person you are very proud of?
- What is this person's job?
- Why are you proud of him / her?
- .... is a person I'm proud of.
- He / She works as a/an .....
- When he/ she was younger, he / she used to .....

يمكن استخدام الجملات الآتية:

## SD pages 32-33 WB pages 03-04

استلزم إلى المقررات



## SB Page (32)

استخرج إلى الطريق



A photograph of a young boy with blonde hair, wearing a maroon and white jacket and blue pants, riding a black bicycle on a concrete sidewalk. The background shows a green lawn and a white fence.

When I was a child, I

grandparents. We

ami

ed. It took me an

—

10

---

only

SB Page (33)

1. 1000  
 2. 1000  
 3. 1000

## Life in Antarctica



retrato

p at  
 we  
 ther

The weather is very  
miss my friends and

## SB Page (JJ)

re you? I wanted your help with something. My homework is to write a letter for children around the world. I have some questions about life in other countries. When you were a little child, what games did you use to play? What did you use to eat? What did you use to do? What did you use to eat?

you can answer the questions for me.  
good!

# Test on Units 1, 2 & 3

## A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:  
نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

- The speaker used to work as a/an .....  
a. teacher      b. engineer      c. scientist      d. farmer
- The speaker saw a job .....  
a. advertisement      b. poster      c. uniform      d. money
- The job was in a big .....  
a. company      b. city      c. school      d. factory
- The speaker thought the job looked .....  
a. boring      b. hard      c. interesting      d. easy

## B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ayman is doing a school project.

Samy : What are you doing?

Ayman : 1 .....

Samy : Do you mean a project about your family history?

Ayman : 2 .....

Samy : 3 .....

Ayman : My great grandfather lived in the countryside.

Samy : 4 .....

Ayman : He was a doctor at the Red Crescent.

Samy : I think he was a helpful man.

Ayman : 5 .....

## C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Tamer works at a bank. He is the manager. He starts work every day at 8:00 a.m. He finishes work every day at 6:00 p.m. He lives very close to the bank. He walks to work every day. His brother and sister also work at the same bank. But, they don't live close to it. They drive to work. They start work at 9:00 a.m. Tamer likes his job. He is very good at it. People in the bank like Tamer because he is very kind and friendly. They say hello to him when they come to the bank. Tamer likes to talk to them and make them feel happy. All managers should be like Tamer.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where does Tamer work?

2. What time does he start work?

3. Where do Tamer's brother and sister work?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Tamer goes to work .....

a. by bike      b. on foot      c. in a car      d. by train

5. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to .....

a. the cars      b. Tamer's parents  
c. people      d. Tamer's brother and sister

6. Tamer is a/an .....

a. manager      b. worker      c. officer      d. writer

## D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I saw a/an ..... for a job in the newspaper.

a. development      b. pavement  
c. movement      d. advertisement

2. Osama ..... the tennis game easily because his brother is only four.

a. designs      b. prays      c. wins      d. drives

3. Amir is carrying the eggs ..... because he doesn't want to drop them.

a. carefully      b. hardly      c. carelessly      d. noisily

## Review A

4. The girl ..... happily on the bed and talking on the phone.  
a. has sat      b. sit      c. is sitting      d. is sat
5. In this photo, I am lying lazily on the ..... because it is very hot.  
a. beach      b. arch      c. ruin      d. view
6. The view from the top of the tower is .....  
a. expensive      b. careful      c. ancient      d. attractive
7. This train is going ..... so that it does not arrive late.  
a. hard      b. fast      c. slowly      d. quietly
8. Where ..... you use to eat pizza when you lived in Cairo?  
a. do      b. have      c. did      d. are
9. .... did you live when you were a child?  
a. What      b. Where      c. Why      d. Who
10. I ..... a selfie with a famous person yesterday.  
a. hit      b. made      c. gave      d. took

### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. .... (When) time did you usually get up?
2. Huda and Fareeda ..... (studies) hard because they have an English test next week.
3. Nabila is talking ..... (quiet) to her friend because they are working in a library.
4. What subjects did you ..... (used) to study hard at school?

## Writing

### 6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Your city / village in the past and today"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## Module 2

### Different places

## 4 UNIT

### Into the past

## Objectives

### Reading:

Reviews of historic places in Egypt; a student's account of Jerash; information about a museum; a text about ancient objects; a text about the Stone Circles of Senegambia

### Writing:

A paragraph describing a historic place; a report about a historic site

### Listening:

A talk about a school trip; a talk about a historic place; an account of a trip to a museum; a class debate

### Speaking:

Describing a historic place; a telephone call asking for information; a debate about the effects of tourism

### Language:

Past continuous

### Life Skills:

Self-management; Critical thinking  
Values:  
Coexistence values; Responsible behaviour  
Issues:  
Environmental and developmental issues

## Key Vocabulary

arch	قنطرة	entrance	مدخل
castle	قلعة	amazing	مذهل
mosque	مسجد	ancient	أثري (قديم جداً)
museum	متحف	guide	مرشد
pyramid	هرم	view	منظر
ruins	آثار (منايا)	awesome	مذهل
stadium	استاد	historic	تاريخي
statue	نماتل	interesting	شيق
temple	معبد	protected (ed)	يحمى
theatre	مسرح		

استمع إلى المفردات



## Vocabulary

stone	حجر	picnic lunch	وجبة غداء للترفيه
objects	أشياء	rules	قواعد
the Romans	الرومان	safely	بأمان
Roman times	العصور الرومانية	litter = rubbish	قمامة
horse race	سباق خيل	behave (ed)	يتصرف
hill	تل	explain (ed)	يشرح
complete (ed)	كامل	pray (ed)	يعلي
properly	بشكل سليم	touch (ed)	يلمس
walls	أسوار/جدران	plan (ned)	يخطط
a packed lunch	وجبة غداء جاهزة (معبأة)	drop (ped)	يلقي / يرمى

## Historic cities & places

Abidos, Sohag	معبد أيدوس في سوهاج	Jerash, Jordan	مدينة جرش في الأردن
Elephantine Island, Aswan	جزيرة فيلة في أسوان	Lepcis Magna, Libya	مدينة لبيد العظمى في ليبيا
Petra, Jordan	مدينة البتراء في الأردن	The Roman Theatre, Alexandria	المسرح الروماني في الاسكندرية

Djenné, Mali	مدينة جنى في مالي	The Karnak Temple, Luxor	معبد الكرنك في الأقصر
Djemila, Algeria	مدينة جميلة في الجزائر	The South Theatre, Jordan	المسرح الجنوبي في الأردن
Baalbeck, Lebanon	مدينة بعلبك في لبنان	The Pyramids of Dahshur, Giza	أهرامات داهشور في الجيزة
the National Stadium	الاستاد الوطني		

## Expressions & Prepositions

it is important to	مهم جداً	excited about	مستيقظ
it's a long drive	نهارة طويلة بالسيارة	on time	في الوقت المحدد
it was great fun.	كانت متعة كبيرة	interested in	مهتم بـ
recommend a visit	يوصي بزيارة	walk around	يتجول
enjoy our visit	نستمتع بزيارتنا	it dates to	يرجع تاريخه إلى
leave straight away	نغادر على الفور	show... round	يُصطحب في جولة
the whole day	اليوم بأكمله	go back to	يعود / يرجع إلى
a day out	يوم للترويح	walk for a long way	يسير لمسافة طويلة

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
show	عرض	showed
drive	تسير (للسيارة)	drove

## Word Meaning Opposite

strong	قوي	powerful	ضعيف
careful	حريص	cautious	مهمل
go in	يدخل	get in	يخرج
		go out	

## Definitions

historic	تاريخي	- connected with '1' history or with the past	أ- مرتبط بـ
		- important in history	
awesome	مذهل	- very good, great	
		- amazing	
guide	مرشد	a person who can show you round a place	
ancient	أثري (قديم جداً)	very old	

view	منظر	what you can see from the top of something
arch	قوس	- a <b>covered</b> (half circle) part of buildings - an entrance to another place
castle	قلعة	a place which usually has very strong walls
mosque	مسجد	a place where Muslims pray
ruins	آثار / بقايا	the broken parts that are left of a building or city
stadium	استاد	a place where we can watch a sports match

### Language Notes

#### 1) hundred - thousand - million

نلاحظ ان هذه الكلمات لا تكتب إلا جده بعدها اسم، لكن نكتب الاسم الذي يليها.

Ex. He gave me a **thousand** pounds.

Ex. Dinosaurs lived on earth for more than **150 million** years.

كما نلاحظ ان كلمة لا تكتب إلا سبقتها تعبير عدد مثل **a few** of

Ex. We need a **few** hundred dollars.

ويمكن جمعها إلى جمع : **of**

Ex. Hundreds of people were at the concert.

#### 2) recommend - advise

• recommend + n / v-ing. يوصي - يشرع شيء

Ex. I **recommended** a visit to / visiting the museum.

• advise (someone) to + inf. يشرع (شخص ما) يفعل شيء ما

Ex. She **advised** me to **visit** the Karnak Temple.

#### 3) so that

تفعل الشيء لكي، وبهذا **can / could** عبارة

علاقة → so that → can.

علاقة → so that → could.

Ex. We **tried** / **managed** up so that we **could** catch the train.

#### 4) litter / letter

• litter = نفايات (n) litter = نفايات

Ex. We try to solve the **litter** problem in our town.

• letter = رسالة (n) letter = رسالة

Ex. I got a **letter** from my cousin today.

### Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This temple dates to five ..... ago.

- a. thousands years
- b. thousands year
- c. thousand years
- d. thousand year

2. My brother ..... a visit to the Cairo Tower.

- a. advised
- b. recommended
- c. told
- d. lent

3. Tamer studies well so that he ..... pass the test.

- a. can
- b. would
- c. could
- d. did

4. Don't drop ..... in the street.

- a. letter
- b. later
- c. litter
- d. little

### Audio-script

SB Page (35)

**Teacher:** I'm sure you're all **excited** about visiting the pyramids next Sunday. It's important that we **plan** our trip **properly**, so I need to talk to you about **rules**.

On Sunday morning, you must arrive at school on time

so that we can **leave straight away**. It's a **long drive**

to Giza from the school. We are going to be away from school

for the whole day, so you must bring a **packed lunch**. It's going

to be very hot, so you must also bring a hot and a bottle of water.

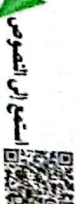
Of course, the pyramids are very important to the history and

culture of our country. We must help to **protect** them. You

mustn't climb the pyramids or sit on them. You mustn't **drop**

**litter**. We must bring all of our rubbish home with us.

So, are there any questions about the trip?



### Reading

SB Page (36)

An amazing day out \*\*\*\*\*

I visited **Abydos** last week with my cousins. There's so much to see: temples, amazing art and ruins in the desert.

I'm not usually very interested in history, but this place is **amazing**! It is really amazing!



Maged, Cairo

- 1- مصرية
- 2- يخطط
- 3- بشكل سليم
- 4- فورا
- 5- لي
- 6- بعيدا عن المدرسة
- 7- رحلة طويلة بالسيارة
- 8- وجبة غداء جاهزة
- 9- زجاجة ماء
- 10- زجاجة
- 11- لا تترك النفايات

Get a guide \*\*\*\*

The ruins at the Karnak Temple were amazing and we really enjoyed our visit! It's a big place, so you need a few hours to walk around it. It's also a good idea to get a guide to tell you all about the history.

Leila, Assiut

Go back to Roman times! \*\*\*\*\*

I visited the Roman theatre in Alexandria with my cousins last week. It's easy to imagine what life in Roman times was like here. There are also statues and the ruins of a temple in the museum there. It was great fun!

Samir, Giza

Say it correctly

awe some or كلمة في ظرف awe هذه الكلمة في هذه المكانين

- 1- يذهب
- 2- مشد
- 3- الجدران الرومانية
- 4- المسح للرومان
- 5- يتجول
- 6- تماثيل
- 7- مائة

SB Page (37)

The City of Jerash By Azza



Jerash is a Roman city in Jordan. It is more than 2,000 years old!

When you go there, the first thing you see is the entrance to the city. The arch is very tall. You must buy a ticket before you go in.

The Romans enjoyed watching sport. This stadium is for Roman horse races. You can watch races there today.

Jerash has three Roman theatres. The biggest theatre is the South Theatre. Five thousand people can sit here.

This temple is on a hill. There is an amazing view of the city from here.

I think it is important to learn about historic places around the world. We must protect them so that people can visit in the future, too.

Say it correctly

arch

ينطق حرفي (ch) في هذه الكلمة مثلها في كلمة (watch)

- 1- مدينة رومانية
- 2- مدخل
- 3- قنطرة
- 4- تذكرة
- 5- استاد
- 6- سباقات الخول
- 7- معبد
- 8- تل
- 9- منظر مذهل
- 10- تاريخي

WB Page (35)

It is a long walk to the temple so you must all listen carefully. It is hot today, so you must all wear a hat. You must take some water, too. Cars mustn't drive on this road so we can walk on it safely. However, you must stay on the road and you must walk. You mustn't run there. When we arrive at the temple, you mustn't touch any of the buildings because it is very old. We can eat our picnic lunches after we visit the temple, but you mustn't eat in the temple. Finally, you mustn't forget to write about what you see!



- 1- نمشية
- 2- عطش/جوع
- 3- لسان
- 4- لسان
- 5- وجبات غداء للزينة
- 6- ينسى

My trip to Petra



I love historic places like Petra in Jordan. It dates to around 300 BCE, so it is more than two thousand years old!

You must buy a ticket to visit, but when you are inside, you can walk for a long way through the old city and the views from some of the higher places are awesome, but you must be careful! Our guide explained how old the temples are: they are really ancient! I really enjoyed our day there and recommend a visit!

- 1- يعود تاريخها إلى
- 2- قبل الميلاد
- 3- حريص
- 4- شرح
- 5- قديم جدا
- 6- أوصى

WB Page (101)

What do these signs mean?



- You mustn't drink this.
- You mustn't touch this.
- You must turn right.
- You must watch out of cows.

- لا تشرب هذا.
- لا للمس هذا.
- الجهة اليمين.
- احترس من البقر.

Video script

SB Page (37)

**Narrator:** These people are visiting the ancient site of Karnak, near Luxor. People were also visiting Karnak thousands of years ago.

There are lots of different ruins at Karnak. It is one of the most important historic places in the world.

You can see many awesome things, such as ancient statues and temples.

This is an obelisk. This obelisk is nearly thirty metres tall and it has hieroglyphics on it.

There is even a lake at Karnak called the Sacred Lake. Important people came here to wash themselves.

- 1- موقع
- 2- مسلة
- 3- كتابات بالبرص
- 4- البحيرة المقدسة

This is the amazing **Temple of Amun**<sup>١</sup>. It was one of the first buildings to be built at Karnak around four thousand years ago. It has **huge columns**<sup>٢</sup>.

In the past, people came to Karnak from all over Egypt. More than two thousand people could be in the Temple of Amun at the same time.

Today, people visit Karnak from all over the world. They must **walk past**<sup>٣</sup> lots of statues of **sphinx**<sup>٤</sup> when they enter the Temple of Amun.

Visitors mustn't enter some parts of Karnak. This is because they are very old and **protected**<sup>٥</sup>. These are the ruins of the **Temple of Montu**<sup>٦</sup>. It is more than three thousand years old.

We know a lot about the history of the world because of historic places like Karnak.

١- معبد آمون  
٢- أعمدة ضخمة  
٣- يسير من أجل  
٤- أبو الهول  
٥- محصى  
٦- معبد مونتو

## Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. Last year, I visited Karnak with my family. We saw the ..... temples.

SB

a. ancient      b. new      c. difficult      d. careless

2. A/An ..... is an entrance to another place.

WB

a. pyramid      b. arch      c. view      d. stone

3. You can watch a sports match at a/an .....

WB

a. entrance      b. statue      c. museum      d. stadium

4. We pray at a/an .....

WB

a. mosque      b. theatre      c. pyramid      d. arch

5. A/An ..... has very strong walls.

WB

a. object      b. desert      c. castle      d. ticket

6. A ..... is not a complete building.

WB

a. stone      b. ruin      c. house      d. hill

7. You might see a ..... in a museum.

a. castle      b. race      c. temple      d. statue

8. I love going to ..... places such as museums and ancient places.

a. carriage      b. culture      c. historic      d. history

9. Don't drop ..... Put it in bins.

a. litter      b. letter      c. ladder      d. water

10. People wear sunglasses to ..... their eyes from the sun.

a. affect      b. protect      c. infect      d. give

11. We have a house with a wide .....

a. castle      b. statue      c. entrance      d. emergency

12. We can see plays at the .....

a. theatre      b. mosque      c. temple      d. castle

Bit by Bit Exercises

13. The Pyramids are really .....

a. expensive      b. careful      c. useless      d. awesome

14. A ..... shows tourists interesting tourist places.

a. guide      b. keeper      c. teacher      d. statue

15. My new house has a wonderful ..... of the sea.

a. ruin      b. guide      c. arch      d. view

16. More than thirty ..... people live in my town.

a. thousands'      b. thousand's      c. thousand      d. thousands

17. The ..... has a lot of objects of the Pharaohs.

a. guide      b. museum      c. club      d. view

18. The Karnak ..... was built thousands of years ago.

a. Theatre      b. Stadium      c. Tower      d. Temple

19. The Great Pyramid ..... to around 2600 BCE.

a. dates      b. takes      c. keeps      d. lasts

20. We have a holiday, could you ..... a place to visit?

a. advice      b. comment      c. recommend      d. reply

## Language

## must / mustn't

## 1- must + inf.

نستخدم **must** بمعنى (حبس) للتعبير عن الضرورة والبرام بفعل شيء ما (في المضارع).

Ex. You must arrive at school on time.

Ex. We must put your rubbish in the bin.

## 2- mustn't + inf.

نستخدم **mustn't** بمعنى (حبس) للتعبير عن النهي / التحريم (في المضارع).

Ex. You mustn't be noisy in class.

Ex. You mustn't run near the pool.

• نستخدم **mustn't** للتحريم بالصيغة الانية

نقول عن البرام / التحريم بالصيغة الانية: **must / mustn't + فعل + inf. .... ?**

Ex. A: Must I call before I come to see the doctor?

B: Yes, you must.

Ex. A: Why mustn't I park here?

B: Because it's against the law.

## Notes

لا نستخدم **to** قبل مصدر الفعل الذي يأتي بعد **must / mustn't**

و نعلم أن المصدر من **be** هو **(am, is, are)**

ومن **have** هو **have, has**

Ex. You must be careful when you cross the road.

Ex. Travellers must have a passport when they travel abroad.

في الشيء ضع **not (n't)** مباشرة بعد **must** وليس بعد الفعل

must not (mustn't) go ✓

~~must go not~~ ✗

## Exercises on Language

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## SB, WB &amp; Exams

1. You ..... put your rubbish in the bin.

a. must

b. has

2. You ..... listen to the teacher.

a. can't

b. must

3. You ..... be quiet in the library.

a. am

b. don't

4. In a museum, you ..... touch the objects.

a. must

b. can

5. Cars ..... drive on this road so we can walk on it safely.

a. must

b. mustn't

6. You ..... smoke at hospitals.

a. mustn't

b. have to

7. He ..... be at work on time.

a. mustn't

b. must

8. Drivers ..... stop when the light is red.

a. can't

b. have

9. All students ..... follow the school rules.

a. must

b. can't

10. You ..... speak loudly. Your dad is asleep.

a. can

b. mustn't

11. You ..... use your mobile phone while driving.

a. must

b. can

12. What ..... to get this job, Ahmed?

a. must do I

b. do I must

13. .... I take this medicine every day?

a. Must

b. Aren't

14. What ..... I do before I enter this museum?

a. am

b. must

15. We ..... wash fruits and vegetables before we eat them.

a. won't

b. are

## Bit by Bit Exercises

8. Drivers ..... stop when the light is red.

a. can't

b. have

9. All students ..... follow the school rules.

a. must

b. can't

10. You ..... speak loudly. Your dad is asleep.

a. can

b. mustn't

11. You ..... use your mobile phone while driving.

a. must

b. can

12. What ..... to get this job, Ahmed?

a. must do I

b. do I must

13. .... I take this medicine every day?

a. Must

b. Aren't

14. What ..... I do before I enter this museum?

a. am

b. must

15. We ..... wash fruits and vegetables before we eat them.

a. won't

b. are

## 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

## SB, WB &amp; Exams

1. You ..... (must) run inside the building of the school. **SB**
2. You ..... (mustn't) buy your ticket before you enter. **SB**
3. You ..... (should) drink this water, it's dirty. **WB**
4. Students must ..... (are) quiet in class. **WB**
5. During an exam, you ..... (aren't) copy from the other students. **WB**
6. You mustn't ..... (going) to school late. **WB**
7. People ..... (must) throw rubbish in the street. **WB**
8. .... (Must) I smoke in public transport? - Yes, you mustn't. **WB**
9. We must ..... (to eat) healthy food. **WB**
10. Workers ..... (doesn't) work without safety boots. **WB**
11. .... (Mustn't) we drink milk every day? - Yes, it's healthy. **WB**
12. You ..... (shouldn't) enter the museum with a camera. It's forbidden. **WB**

## Bit by Bit Exercises

## Speaking

## 1 Asking and answering about a historic place you visited

السؤال والجواب عن مكان تاريخي زرت

## Question

- What was the historic place you visited?  
ما المكان التاريخي الذي زرت؟
- What did you think of that place?  
مارأيك في هذا المكان؟
- What could you learn from this historic place?  
ما الذي تعلمت من أن تتعلم من هذا المكان؟

## Answer

- I visited .....  
فقدت زيارة .....
- It was awesome.  
كان المكان مذهلاً.
- I could learn about the history of my country.  
تسكنت من معرفة تاريخ بلدي.

## General Exercises

on Lessons 1 &amp; 2

## 1 Complete the following dialogue:

A teacher is asking his student about the Kamak Temple.

Teacher: What was the last historic place you visited?

Student: 1 .....

Teacher: What could you see there?

Student: 2 .....

Teacher: 3 .....

Student: Around four thousands of years ago.

Teacher: 4 .....

Student: It was awesome.

Teacher: What could you learn from this historic place?

Student: 5 .....

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Vocabulary

1. Petro is a greet ..... place in Jordan. A lot of tourists visit it.  
a. funny      b. hard      c. historic      d. interested
2. When we arrived at the museum, a ..... was waiting for us.  
a. statue      b. waiter      c. guide      d. guest
3. We walked under a big ..... before we entered the museum.  
a. arch      b. castle      c. stadium      d. theatre
4. There's a beautiful ..... from the top of the mountain.  
a. review      b. preview      c. view      d. interview
5. We should ..... ourselves from pollution.  
a. bring      b. protect      c. make      d. walk

6. I went to the National

a. Museum

b. Theatre

c. Castle

d. Cinema

7. A/an

is a building where Muslims pray.

a. attic

b. sofa

c. mosque

d. church

## Language

8. Why

people smoke in hospitals?

a. must

b. can

c. mustn't

d. haven't

9. You

touch any of the building because it is very old.

a. must

b. can

c. haven't

d. mustn't

10. Children

play with matches.

a. must

b. mustn't

c. should

d. have

## 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You

(not must) sail in bad weather. It is dangerous.

2. You

(mustn't) be careful when you do experiments in the laboratory.

3. What mustn't I

(to do) in class?

4. A: What

(does) we do when we drive?

B: We must follow the traffic rules.

5.

(Has) Ziad take this exam to get the degree?

## 4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"A description of a historic place you visited"

(مكتبك عليه في آخر الوحدة)

SB

يمكنك من خلال الرحلة عن الالسنة التاريخية القديمة في الإسكندرية.

- What and where is the historic place you visited?

- Why is it important?

- How old is it?

- What must people do to protect it?

- I visited ....

- This place is ..... years old.

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- This place is important because.....

- People mustn't ..... in that place.

## Lessons

## 3 &amp; 4

SB pages 38-40 WB pages 97-98

## Key Vocabulary

object

keep cwwj

day

insect

senet

شياء

يُحفظ

يوم

حشرة

السنة

السنة إلى المفردات

مراة

خشب

نصمم - نرسم

مفاتيح - مفاتيح

## Museum objects

(أشياء مصرية قديمة تشبه النسخة)

tool

vase

pot

bowl

papyrus

mask

figure

ring

necklace

coin

web page

opening times

price

square

metel

ingredients

doorbell

equipment

sculpture

model

The Museum of Islamic Art

محفف الفن الإسلامي

runner

mixer

sunglasses

curtains

ticket officer

customer

except

chemical

mosquito

cover (ed)

mix (ed)

point (n) (ed)

عشاء

خلط

نظارة شمسة

ستائر

موظف جواز زائر

زبون / عميل

ما عدا

مادة كيميائية

نموسية

يغطي

يخط

طلاء / لون

## Vocabulary

mask



figure



ring



necklace



coin



papyrus



tool



vase



pot



bowl



papyrus



papyrus



## Expressions & Prepositions

answer the phone	يرد على الهاتف	go into	يدخل إلى
take a photo	يلتقط صورة	What's on?	ما المزعوس؟
travel home	يسافر عائداً لبلده	on the train	في القطار
make ... look good	يجعل ... يبدو جيداً	under 12	أقل من 12 عاماً
look around	يتفقد مكان	take off	يخلع (الملابس - حذاء...)
protect ... from	يحمي ... من		

### Configurations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
cost	cost	cost
draw	drew	drawn
ring	rang	rung
hold	held	held
keep	kept	kept

### Word Meaning Opposite

Word	Meaning	Opposite
huge	ضخم	tiny
open	مفتوح	closed
popular	شعبى / محبوب	unpopular

### Definitions

- A small, flat piece of metal, usually round in shape

coins

عملات معدنية

1- تمثال ملصق  
2- زينة / زخرفة

figure (نمط / انشعاب)

a picture or model of a person, an animal or a sculpture

mask

قناع

something people wear to cover or protect their face

necklace

قلع

jewellery you wear around your neck

tool

أداة

a piece of equipment you can use to make or repair things

vase

قارورة

- a pot used for holding flowers  
- something which people put flowers in, or have in their home as decoration

### 1) like - look like

What is (somebody / something) like?

ما المزعوس؟

Ex. What is your teacher like?

ما رأيك في مدرستك؟

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

ما رأيك في مدرستك؟

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

## Language Notes

### 1) like - look like

What is (somebody / something) like?

ما المزعوس؟

Ex. What is your teacher like?

ما رأيك في مدرستك؟

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

ما رأيك في مدرستك؟

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

# Audioscript

SB Page (39)

استمع إلى الصوت



Boy : Last Tuesday, I went to the *Museum of Islamic Art*<sup>(1)</sup> with my family. While we were waiting to go into the museum, I saw my friend Amir with his mum and dad! As my parents were buying the tickets, Amir and I *decided*<sup>(2)</sup> what we wanted to see first. While we were *looking around*<sup>(3)</sup> the museum, Amir and I found some tall doors with amazing *designs*<sup>(4)</sup> on them. They were very interesting, so I wanted a photo. I put my bag on the floor while I was taking the photo. We stayed in the museum for two hours before we went home. While we were travelling home, Amir phoned me. He had my bag - I left it in the museum! We got home an hour later. Amir arrived while I was *taking off*<sup>(5)</sup> my shoes! He gave me my bag.



- 1- متحف الفن الإسلامي  
2- قررت  
3- يتجول (مكان)  
4- تصميمات  
5- يخلع (الملابس)  
حقيبة!



Say it correctly

- \*Vose يَنطِق حرف S في هذه الكلمة مثل صوت Z ولا يَنطِق حرف e  
\*papyrus يَنطِق حرف Y في هذه الكلمة مثلما يَنطِق في كلمة رب  
\*figure يَنطِق هذه الكلمة مثل نطق كلمة bigger مع اختلاف الصوت الأول

WB Page (97)

**Ticket officer**<sup>(1)</sup> : Good morning, City Museum. How can I help you?  
**Customer**<sup>(2)</sup> : Good morning. Can you tell me what times the museum is open?  
**Ticket officer**<sup>(3)</sup> : Certainly<sup>(4)</sup>. We open from 9.30 to 6.30 every day *except*<sup>(5)</sup> Friday. We close then.  
**Customer**<sup>(6)</sup> : I'd like to know how much a ticket for two *adults*<sup>(7)</sup> and one child is, please.  
**Ticket officer**<sup>(8)</sup> : Of course. Adults are 150 pounds and children under 12<sup>(9)</sup> are 75 pounds.  
**Customer**<sup>(10)</sup> : Can I buy the tickets at the museum?  
**Ticket officer**<sup>(11)</sup> : Yes, or you can buy them *online*<sup>(12)</sup>.  
**Customer**<sup>(13)</sup> : Thank you for your help. Goodbye.

- 1- موظف حجز التذاكر  
2- زبون  
3- متزوج  
4- بالتأكيد  
5- ما عدا  
6- لاصطفين  
7- تحت سن 12 عاماً  
8- عبر الإنترنت

WB Page (98)

- These are made of wood. People use them to play a game. (chess)
- These are usually made of plastic. They help to protect<sup>(1)</sup> your eyes from the sun. (sunglasses)<sup>(2)</sup>
- These are made of glass or wood. They help to keep away<sup>(3)</sup> insects<sup>(4)</sup>. (window)
- This is made of metal and plastic. People use it to mix<sup>(5)</sup> ingredients<sup>(6)</sup> when they are cooking. (mixer)<sup>(7)</sup>



- 1- يحمي  
2- نظارة شمسية  
3- يبعد  
4- الحشرات  
5- يخلط  
6- مكونات (الغذاء)  
7- خلاط

## Reading

SB Page (40)

### Objects from Egypt's past

Objects<sup>(1)</sup> from the past can help us to understand what life was like many years ago. They can also show us that we use many of the same objects today!



In Ancient Egypt, many people used mirrors<sup>(2)</sup> to help them *point*<sup>(3)</sup> around their eyes. This was not just to make them look good: the paint helped to protect their eyes from the sun and kept away insects. The mirrors were *metal*<sup>(4)</sup> and had interesting designs. Where do you have mirrors in your home?

The Ancient Egyptians used *pots*<sup>(5)</sup> and *bowls*<sup>(6)</sup> for making food such as bread. These objects were made of *clay*<sup>(7)</sup>, which came from the River Nile.

While some people were mixing ingredients for bread in bowls, other people used large stones to mix the ingredients in a bowl. How do we make bread today?

Ancient Egyptians liked playing games like *senet*<sup>(8)</sup>. Senet boxes have 30 *squares*<sup>(9)</sup>. This box is made of *wood*<sup>(10)</sup> and is about 3,500 years old. Some people did not have senet boxes, but they still played the game. They *drew*<sup>(11)</sup> the square on the floor. What games are *popular*<sup>(12)</sup> in Egypt today?



Say it correctly

Bowl

يَنطِق هذه الكلمة مثل كلمة goal مع اختلاف أول صوت فقط

- 1- الأشياء  
2- مرآة  
3- يلمح  
4- معدن  
5- إناء  
6- وعاء  
7- سائطانية  
8- السنينيت (اللعبة)  
9- صينية قديمة  
10- مزرعات  
11- خشب  
12- يرسم  
13- محبوب / شائع

## Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. Ancient Egyptians made ..... with clay from the Nile River. **SB**  
 a. pots                      b. insects                      c. papyrus                      d. magazines
2. Can you tell me the ..... of the ticket, please? **SB**  
 a. prize                      b. coin                      c. price                      d. object
3. Ancient Egyptians used ..... to help them paint around their eyes. **SB**  
 a. chairs                      b. mirrors                      c. wood                      d. floors
4. A ..... has four corners. **SB**  
 a. square                      b. bowl                      c. circle                      d. tool
5. There are more than 2,000 ..... in the museum. **WB**  
 a. prices                      b. subjects                      c. objects                      d. phones
6. The black and white ..... around this window are beautiful. **WB**  
 a. pages                      b. webs                      c. prices                      d. designs
7. .... are pieces of money made of metal. **WB**  
 a. Bowls                      b. Pots                      c. Coins                      d. Figures
8. This chemical helps to keep ..... mosquitoes. **WB**  
 a. in                      b. away                      c. about                      d. over
9. A ..... is a model of a person, an animal or a sculpture. **WB**  
 a. figure                      b. design                      c. bowl                      d. vase
10. Ancient Egyptians used ..... for writing. **WB**  
 a. wood                      b. papyrus                      c. cotton                      d. paper
11. A ..... is a piece of equipment you can use to make or repair things. **WB**  
 a. vase                      b. top                      c. tool                      d. pot
12. A ..... is a piece of jewellery you wear on your finger. **WB**  
 a. vase                      b. necklace                      c. mask                      d. ring

## Bit by Bit Exercises

13. The waiter put a ..... of soup in front of each of us.  
 a. vase                      b. bowl                      c. plan                      d. design
14. My mum put a ..... of flowers on the table.  
 a. vase                      b. pool                      c. coin                      d. pan
15. The ..... she wears around her neck is very expensive.  
 a. ring                      b. sock                      c. necklace                      d. skirt
16. You can see the ..... of Tutankhamun in the Grand Egyptian Museum.  
 a. price                      b. mask                      c. chemical                      d. page
17. Most doors are made of .....  
 a. clay                      b. paper                      c. cotton                      d. wood
18. The opposite of "huge" is .....  
 a. tiny                      b. large                      c. enormous                      d. famous
19. Children like to use ..... to make shapes.  
 a. water                      b. clay                      c. ingredient                      d. iron
20. The bee is a useful .....  
 a. bird                      b. human                      c. object                      d. insect
21. We arrived at the Pyramids and looked ..... the area.  
 a. around                      b. over                      c. up                      d. under
22. Pens are usually made ..... plastic.  
 a. with                      b. in                      c. from                      d. of

## Language

### The past continuous tense

Form

I / He / She / It / ..... was .....  
 You / We / They / ..... were .....  
 + V-ing.

Ex. I was reading all morning.  
 Ex. They were travelling for a long time.

## Negative لـن

لـن + was not (wasn't) / were not (weren't) + V-ing  
 Ex. They weren't doing anything at that time.

## Question سؤال

Was / Were + subject + V-ing.....?  
 (كلمة استفهام)

Ex. Were you studying when your mother called you?  
 - Yes, I was. / No, I wasn't.

Ex. What was Ali doing when you saw him?

## Usage الاستخدام

1- نستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في الحدث أثناء توقيت محدد في الماضي:

Ex. I was waiting for the match to start at 8 last night.

2- نستخدم للتعبير عن حدث طويل كان مستمرا في الحدث عندما قطع أو وقع أثناء حدث آخر قصير فيكون الحدث الطويل في الماضي المستمر والحدث القصير الذي وقع أثناء في الماضي البسيط:

Ex. While I was reading a story, the telephone rang.

وللتعبير عن فكرة الحدث الطويل المستمر والحدث القصير الذي وقع أثناء أو قطعه في الماضي نستخدم الروابط التالية:

While / As / Just as → Past continuous  
 ماضي مستمر (حدث طويل) + ماضي بسيط (حدث قصير)

• As / While we were working into the museum, we saw some huge statues.

When → Past simple + Past continuous  
 ماضي بسيط (حدث قصير) + ماضي مستمر (حدث طويل)

Ex. When Mona fell asleep, she was watching TV.

3- نستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين في نفس التوقيت في الماضي - وللتعبير عن هذه الفكرة نستخدم الروابط التالية:

While / As / Just as → Past continuous + Past continuous  
 ماضي مستمر (حدث طويل) + ماضي مستمر (حدث طويل)

Ex. While I was having lunch, my sister was watching TV.

## While + V-ing

هـ- يمكن أن يلي بعد While فعل مضارع (ing) بشرط أن يكون فعل الحالتين واحد.

Ex. While walking in the street, we met an old friend.

Ex. While playing, I scored an amazing goal.

During أثناء + n.

Ex. During the night, it rained heavily.  
 أثناء While يمكن While ولكن يأتي بعدها اسم:

## Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### SB, WB & Exams

1. As Karim ..... photos of the animals, he lost his phone. **WB**

a. took b. is taking c. takes d. was taking

2. As my parents ..... the tickets, we decided what we wanted to see first. **SB**

a. are buying b. were buying c. buy d. bought

3. As we ..... home, Amir phoned me. **SB**

a. were travelling b. travelled c. travelling d. are travelling

4. As the teacher was talking, I ..... a question. **SB**

a. ask b. asked c. am asking d. were asking

5. We ..... on the train for hours before it finally arrived at the station. **WB**

a. are travelling b. travelling c. travel d. were travelling

6. I ..... my bag on the floor while I was taking a photo. **SB**

a. was putting b. will put c. put d. am putting

7. While we ..... around the museum, we found some amazing designs. **SB**

a. looking b. are looking c. will look d. were looking

8. When we ..... down for a picnic, lots of runners were running through the park.  
a. was sitting b. sat c. sit d. to sit

9. While Mona was playing tennis, she ..... her arm.  
a. was hurting b. was hurting c. hurts d. hurt

10. While we ..... to go into the museum, I saw my friend Amir.  
a. were waiting b. are waiting c. were waiting d. wait

11. While I was reading my book, the phone .....  
a. rang b. is ringing c. rings d. will ring

12. While Sahar ..... to school, she saw a famous squash player.  
a. was walking b. walk c. walking d. walked

13. While I ..... the light went out.  
a. was studying b. was studying c. study d. studied

### Bit by Bit Exercises

14. Tarek was crossing the street, he had an accident.  
a. Because b. During c. Where d. As

15. my father arrived home, we were preparing for the party.  
a. Where b. During c. When d. On

16. While ..... to work, Hazem had an accident.  
a. drive b. drives c. was driving d. driving

17. I finished cooking, my sister Hana was setting the table.  
a. When b. As c. While d. During

18. the meeting, the manager had an important phone call.  
a. While b. As c. While d. During

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. As I was walking to school, it ..... (start) to rain.

2. As Mr Badr was walking to work, he ..... (was seeing) an old friend.

### SB, WB & Exams

3. I was sweeping the floor ..... (while) my father came.

4. At four p.m. yesterday, I ..... (do) my homework.

5. While he ..... (play) on the computer, his mother arrived.

6. As we ..... (go) out, Amir phoned me.

### Bit by Bit Exercises

7. What ..... (did you do) when I called you last night?

8. .... (Be) Mona playing music at 5 yesterday?

9. Nada was sleeping ..... (while) the night.

10. While ..... (walked) around the temple, I hurt my feet.

11. While we ..... (shopped) in the market, we lost some money.

12. Jana was listening to a song ..... (while) the lights went out.

13. Tamer ..... (bought) a ticket while I was waiting for him.

14. The children ..... (didn't read) when dad came home.

### Speaking

### Asking for information on the telephone

طلب المعلومات عبر الهاتف

### Question

-A: Hello! How can I help you?

هل يمكنني مساعدتك؟

-A: Certainly/Of course. It's ...

بالتأكيد/بالطبع، إنه ...

### Answer

-B: Hello, can you tell me ...?

مجددًا، هل يمكنك أن تخبرني ...؟

-B: I'd like to know what time

أود أن أعرف في أي وقت ...

-Can I buy ...? ...

-Thank you for your help?

شكرًا لمساعدتك.

## General Exercises

on Lessons 3 &amp; 4



## 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Nader is calling the Egyptian Museum for information.

Nader : Hello! Is it the Egyptian Museum?

Man : Yes. 1

Nader : Yes. Can I ask for some information, please?

Man : 2

Nader : 3

Man : We open from 9:00 am till 5:00 pm every day except Friday.

Nader : 4

Man : 30 pounds and 10 pounds for students.

Nader : 5

Man : You're welcome.

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Vocabulary

1. The boy could make a horse with a piece of ..... He likes making shapes.  
a. water b. clay c. papyrus d. paint2. Scientists learnt the ancient Egyptian language from the old .....  
a. mirrors b. ingredient c. papyrus d. children

3. Oia has a gold ..... on her finger.

a. necklace b. hat c. shoes d. ring

4. The Ancient Egyptians used ..... and bowls for making food. 2022 / 2022  
a. bins b. pots c. taps d. lambs5. The little girl looked at the ..... to see herself. 2022 / 2022  
a. mirror b. coin c. bowl d. pot6. You can use these ..... for making a chair.  
a. squares b. tools c. ingredients d. insects

## Language

7. While I ..... about the museum, my mother brought me some juice.

a. read b. were reading c. was reading d. is reading

8. It ..... when I went to the club.

a. was raining b. rained c. rain d. rains

9. While I was waiting for lunch, mum .....

a. cooks b. was cooking c. cooked d. is cooking

10. The men ..... when it rained heavily.  
a. were working b. work c. are working d. will work

11. While the teacher was marking the homework, we ..... quietly.

a. was sitting b. sitting c. were sitting d. are sitting

12. While ..... at home, I phoned Ziad.  
a. was being b. am c. were d. being

## 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. While Noura was sewing her dress, her sister .....

(While) the match, it rained. (looks) at her.

2. ....

3. While ..... (was cooking), mum hurt her hand with a knife.

## 4 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

to your friend Fowzi(a) describing an object in your home.

- Your name is Shadi(a) and your email address is shadi(a)post@gmail.com

- Your friend's email address is fawzi(a)mail@yahoo.com

(يمكنك كتابة أي آخر الكلمة)

يمكنك من خلال الدجاجة عن الأسئلة التالية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني:

- What object in your room would you like to describe?

- What is it made of?

- What do you use it for?

- What do you think of it? Why?

يمكن استخدام الجملات التالية:

- I'd like to describe.....

- ..... bought it for me from.....

- It's made of.....

- I feel ..... when I look at it.

- I use it for....

# Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 41- 43 WB pages 99 - 101

## Key Vocabulary

tourism	السياحة	holiday companies	شركات تنظيم الإجازات
tourist	سائح	maybe	ربما
company	شركة	damage (d)	يتلف
historic places	أماكن تاريخية	agree (d)	يوافق
pollution	التلوث	weigh (ed)	يزن
environment	البيئة		

## Vocabulary

debate	مناقشة / مناظرة	Pharaoh Thutmose III	الفرعون توتмосيس الثالث
local people	السكان المحليين	busy	مزدحم
report	تقرير	monuments	أثار قديمة
across	عبر	storm	عاصفة
oil	بنزين	injure (d)	يجرح / يضرع
the British	البريطانيون	enter (ed)	يدخل
earthquake	زلازل	follow (ed)	يتبع

## Famous places

Cleopatra's Needle	مسلة كليوباترا	Senegal	السنغال
the River Gambia	نهر جامبيا	Gambia	جامبيا
the River Thames	نهر التايمز	Wassu	مدينة ولسو بجامبيا
Stone Circles of Senegambia	الدوائر الحجرية سيني جامبيا (السنغال وجامبيا)	the United Arab Emirates	الإمارات العربية المتحدة

## Cities & Countries

## Expressions & Prepositions

bring money to	يجلب المال ر	make more pollution	يسبب مزيد من التلوث
drop litter	يلقي بالقمامة	in other ways	بطرق أخرى
behave well	يتصرف بشكل لائق	pay for	يدفع مالاً ر
Let me know	دعني اعرف	work for	يعمل لدى
give work to	يوفر العمل ر	plan for	خطه ر
20 metres high	على الارتفاع ٢٠ متراً	walk up	يصعد
research information	يبحث عن معلومات	good / bad for	مفيد / مضر ر

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
sink	غرق / غرق	sank
bring	جلب / أحضر	brought
build	بنى	built

Word	Meaning	Opposite
local	محلي	national
damage	يتلف	destroy
		keep
		حافظ / يحفظ

## Definitions

company	شركة	a business that makes money by producing <sup>(1)</sup> or selling things or services <sup>(2)</sup>
debate	مناقشة / مناظرة	when different people with different ideas talk about a subject <sup>(3)</sup>
damage	يتلف / يضرع	have a bad or harmful <sup>(4)</sup> effect <sup>(5)</sup> on something so that it is broken or spoiled <sup>(5)</sup>

## Language Notes

### 1) maybe - may be

• maybe = perhaps ربما	• may be من المحتمل أن يكون
(ظرف غالباً ما يأتي في أول الجملة)	(inf. متفاعل يفتح بمتبعه مصدر الفعل)
Ex. Maybe it will be sunny tomorrow.	Ex. It may be sunny tomorrow.

### 2) sink - drown

• sink - sank - sunk غرق / انشبط	• drown (ed) غرق / انشطاضا
Ex. The coin sank to the bottom of the lake.	Ex. Don't swim in this deep water you may drown.

Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Mustafa ..... at the club now.  
a. maybe b. perhaps c. may be d. may
- I threw a stone in the river and it .....  
a. sank b. flooded c. drowned d. flew

AudioScript

SB Page (11)

Amira: What do you think, Hana? Is tourism good for historic places?

Hana: Yes, Amira. I think it is. Tourists bring money to an area. This helps the local people.

Amira: I don't think so ... a lot of the money goes to big companies, not local people.

Hana: Maybe, but some holiday companies help the environment and the local people.

Amira: I don't agree that tourism helps the environment. Tourists drop litter and damage places in other ways, like sitting on ancient ruins.

Hana: I see what you mean, but most tourists behave well. They know it's important to protect historic places.



- 1- أضرار - damage
- 2- أضرار - damage
- 3- أضرار - damage
- 4- أضرار - damage
- 5- أضرار - damage
- 6- أضرار - damage
- 7- أضرار - damage
- 8- أضرار - damage
- 9- أضرار - damage
- 10- أضرار - damage

WB Page (9)

Fady: Do you think this plan for a new hotel is a good idea, Barher?

Barher: I don't think so. It only has jobs for people in the city.

Fady: I don't agree. More tourists in the area can help the local people.

Barher: Maybe, but what about the water? Taking water from the lake will damage the environment.

Fady: I see what you mean. It's important to protect the environment.

Reading

SB Page (12)

Report on Stone Circles of Senegambia

Where are the stone circles?

There are more than 1,000 Stone Circles of Senegambia. They follow the River Gambia for 350 kilometres across two countries: Senegal and Gambia.

Why are the stone circles important?

The stone circles are very important to the history of Senegal and Gambia. They tell us about the people who made them and how they lived.

How old are the stone circles?

The oldest stone circles are around 2,300 years old and the youngest are around 500 years old. This means that people were building the circles for more than 1,800 years.

Can tourists visit them?

Tourists can visit them, but they must not damage them. Money from tourism helps to pay for local people to look after the stones. It is important to protect the stones.



- 1- أضرار - damage
- 2- أضرار - damage
- 3- أضرار - damage
- 4- أضرار - damage
- 5- أضرار - damage
- 6- أضرار - damage
- 7- أضرار - damage
- 8- أضرار - damage
- 9- أضرار - damage
- 10- أضرار - damage

WB Page (9)

New Message

While we were visiting the beach last month, we decided it was a great place to build a new hotel. The hotel will give work to a lot of people. We are a big company, so we can ask people from our city hotels to work here in the summer. This is the time when the hotel will be busy. There is not much water near the beach at the moment, but while we were driving to the area, we saw a big lake. We can use the water from the lake for the new hotel. Let me know what you think of our plan.



- 1- أضرار - damage
- 2- أضرار - damage
- 3- أضرار - damage
- 4- أضرار - damage
- 5- أضرار - damage
- 6- أضرار - damage
- 7- أضرار - damage
- 8- أضرار - damage
- 9- أضرار - damage
- 10- أضرار - damage

WB Page (10)

Report on Cleopatra's Needle

Where is Cleopatra's Needle?

Cleopatra's Needle is a large and important stone with beautiful designs on it. You can see it next to the River Thames in London, England.



- 1- أضرار - damage
- 2- أضرار - damage
- 3- أضرار - damage
- 4- أضرار - damage
- 5- أضرار - damage
- 6- أضرار - damage
- 7- أضرار - damage
- 8- أضرار - damage
- 9- أضرار - damage
- 10- أضرار - damage

How old is it?

The Ancient Egyptians made the stone for Pharaoh Thutmose III and it is about 3,500 years old.

How big is it?

The stone is more than 20 metres high and weighs about 200,000 kilograms.

How did it get to this country?

The British made a special ship for the stone in 1877. While the ship was travelling to London, it nearly sank in a storm. Another ship helped the stone to arrive in England a year later.



weigh

نطق هذه الكلمة بشكل صحيح

## Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB &amp; Exams

1. Tourists often travel by car. This makes more.....  
a. pollution b. tourism c. holiday d. history **SB**
2. It is important to protect all parts of the.....  
a. guide b. environment c. century d. pollution **SB**
3. .... it will rain tomorrow, but I'm not sure.  
a. May be b. May c. Might d. Might be **WB**
4. Don't play football here or you might..... that car.  
a. hurt b. injure c. damage d. repair **WB**
5. I love going to..... places such as museums and ancient ruins.  
a. historic b. scary c. cultured d. historian **WB**
6. Ali's uncle works for a big oil..... in the United Arab Emirates.  
a. work b. environment c. job d. company **WB**

2023 / العربية / نطق الكلمات

7. .... is very important for Egypt.

a. Pollution

b. Tourism

c. Holiday

d. Flood **SB**

8. There was a..... in our class about how to help the environment.

١- اجتماع لطلاب  
٢- نقاش  
٣- جدل  
٤- مظاهرات  
٥- سباق  
٦- سباق  
٧- ألعاب

2023 / العربية / نطق الكلمات

c. debate

b. carpet

c. debate

d. lamp

9. Tourism can help the..... people.

b. local

c. ancient

d. hero

## Bit by Bit Exercises

10. We must encourage.....

from all over the world to visit Egypt.

a. thieves

b. museums

c. ruins

d. tourists

11. I don't like shopping at very..... markets.

a. clear

b. high

c. busy

d. heavy

12. We shouldn't..... litter on the beaches.

a. draw

b. drop

c. collect

d. clean

13. Thutmose III is a great.....

a. tourist

b. mask

c. guide

d. pharaoh

14. A good student..... well at school.

a. follows

b. keeps

c. behaves

d. agrees

15. Cleopatra's Needle..... about 200,000 kilograms.

a. weighs

b. sews

c. damages

d. behaves

16. Building new factories..... work to many young people.

a. takes

b. weighs

c. gives

d. protects

17. We all..... that education is very important for everyone.

a. agree

b. greet

c. disagree

d. give

18. The opposite of "local" is.....

a. national

b. international

c. metal

d. awful

19. Does iron..... in water?

a. drown

b. sink

c. fly

d. drink

## Speaking

مناقشة عن أثر السياحة

## 1) A debate about the effects of tourism

- Do you think tourism is good or bad for historic places? Why?  
هل تعتقد أن السياحة مفيدة أم ضارة للمواقع التاريخية؟ لماذا؟

يجيب عن هذا السؤال بإراء إيجابية أو سلبية كالآتي:

## Positive opinion

- It brings money to the country.  
تجلب المال للدولة.

- Some holiday companies help the environment and local people.  
بعض شركات تنظيم الإجازات تساعد البيئة والسكان المحليين.

- When people visit a historic place, they understand why we need to protect it.  
عند زيارة مكان تاريخي، يفهم الزائرون لماذا نحتاج حماية المكان.

## Negative opinion

- A lot of tourism money goes to big companies.  
الكثير من أموال السياحة تذهب للشركات الكبيرة.

- Tourists drop litter and damage places in other ways.  
السياح يلقون بالقمامة ويلحقون بالمواقع الأضرار بطرق أخرى.

- Tourists often travel by car. This causes more pollution.  
غالباً ما يسافر السياح بالسيارات، ذلك يحدث المزيد من التلوث.

## 2) Asking for and responding to an opinion

طلب الرأي والرد عليه

## Asking for opinion

- Do you think.....?  
هل تعتقد.....؟

- What do you think.....?  
ماذا تعتقد.....؟

- Is..... good / bad for.....?  
هل..... مفيد/ضار ل.....؟

## Response

## Agreeing:

- Yes, I think so / I agree.  
نأولف.

## Disagreeing:

- I don't agree.  
لا أعتقد ذلك.

- I don't think so.  
أعتقد أنه.....

- I think it is.....  
أفهم ما تعني.

- I see what you mean.  
ربما.....

- Maybe,.....

## General Exercises

on Lessons 5 & 6

Lessons 5 & 6

## 1) Complete the following dialogue:

Amira and Hana are talking about tourism.

Amira : I think tourism is good for our country.

Hana : 1 ..... Tourists bring money to us.

Amira : 2 ..... ?

Hana : Yes, it's good for local people.

Amira : 3 ..... ?

Hana : I think it's sometimes bad for the environment?

Amira : How does this happen?

Hana : 4 ..... .

Amira : 5 ..... Most tourists behave well.

Hana : You are right.

## 2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Vocabulary

1. .... gives work to young people.

a. Pollution b. Damage c. War d. Tourism

2. Egypt has a lot of ..... places for tourists to visit.

a. pollution b. historian c. historic d. century

3. A holiday ..... near our house makes many trips to famous places.

a. company b. environment c. history d. pollution

4. Air ..... is when there are dangerous chemical in the air.

a. port b. population c. bag d. pollution

5. All students took part in today's ..... about pollution.

a. debate b. race c. match d. sport

6. Smoke can ..... our lungs.

a. repair b. damage c. keep d. clean

7. This company ..... work to students during the summer holiday.

a. takes b. makes c. does d. gives

3 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"What you think of tourism. Is it good or bad for historic places? Why?"

اكتب عنه في آخر الوحدة

يمكنك من خلال الرحابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة المنشائية:

- Is tourism important?
- Do you think tourism helps the local people?
- What do you think tourists do at historic places?
- How can holiday companies help the environment?
- Tourism brings money .....
- Some holiday companies help .....
- Tourists drop litter and .....

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

Review

Vocabulary

arch	قنطرة	awesome	مذهل	ring	خاتم
castle	قلعة	object	شيء	interesting	شيق
mosque	مسجد	Keep away	يُبعد	necklace	عقود
museum	متحف	day	صباح	coin	عملة معدنية
pyramid	هرم	insect	حشرة	tourism	السياحة
ruins	آثار (بقايا)	wood	خشب	tourist	سائح
stadium	استاد	mirror	مرآة	historic places	اماكن تاريخية
statue	نماتل	company	شركة	pollution	التلوث
temple	معبد	tool	أداة	environment	البيئة
theatre	مسرح	vase	فازة	map	رسم
entrance	مدخل	pot	وعاء / قدر	damage (d)	يتلف
amazing	مذهل	bowl	سلطانية	agree (d)	يوافق
ancient	أثري (قديم جداً)	papyrus	ورق البردي	weigh (ed)	يزن
guide	مرشد	mask	قناع	protect (ed)	يحمي
view	منظر	figure	نماتل / نموذج (لشخص)	design (n) (ed)	تصميم - يصمم
senet	السينات (عبية مصرية قديمة شبيهة الشطرنج)	holiday companies	شركات تنظيم الاجازات	open (ad) (ed)	مفتوح - يفتح

Language

1 must / mustn't

1. نستخدم (must) بمعنى اجب ان لتعتبر عن الضرورة والزام بفعل شيء ما (في المضارع).  
 Ex. You must be careful when you cross the road.  
 2. نستخدم (mustn't) بمعنى اجب ان لتعتبر عن الممنوع / التحريم (في المضارع).  
 Ex. You mustn't come to school late.

2 The past continuous tense

فاعل	أفعال	نفي	استفهام
He / She / It / <sup>اسم مفرد</sup>	was	was	was
We / You / They / <sup>اسم جمع</sup>	were	were	were
	+ v-ing	+ v-ing	+ فاعل + v-ing?

Usage الاستخدام

• يجدر عن حدث استمر في وقت محدد في الماضي / حدث استمر في الماضي عندما قطع حدث آخر.

Ex. I was reading a book when someone phoned me.

Ex. Hanl wasn't sleeping when I visited him.

Speaking

1 Asking and answering about a historic place you visited

السؤال والجابة عن مكان تاريخي زرت

Question

- What was the historic place you visited? - I visited .....
- What did you think of that place? - It was awesome.
- What could you learn from this historic place? - I could learn about the history of my country.

Answer

2 Asking for information on the telephone

طلب معلومات عبر الهاتف - طلب الأسئلة والردود للخدمة المستخدمة في طلب وإعطاء المعلومات غير الهاتف.

Question

- A: Hello! How can I help you? - B: Hello, can you tell me ...?
- A: Certainly./Of course. It's ... - B: I'd like to know what time
- Can I buy ...? - Thank you for your help?

Answer

3 A debate about the effects of tourism

مناقشة عن آثار السياحة

- Do you think tourism is good or bad for historic places? Why?

Positive opinion

- It brings money to the country.
- Some holiday companies help the environment and local people.
- A lot of tourism money goes to big companies.
- Tourists drop litter and damage places in other ways.

Negative opinion

4 Asking for and responding to an opinion

طلب الرأي والرد عليه

Asking for opinion

- Do you think .....? - Agreeing: - I agree.
- What do you think .....? - Disagreeing: - I don't agree.
- Is ..... good / bad for .....? - I don't think so.

Response

General Exercises on Unit 4

General Exercises

1 Complete the following dialogue:

2023 / 2024

Nora and Mariam are talking about tourism.

Nora : Are many tourists visiting Egypt these days, Mariam?

Mariam : 1 .....

Nora : 2 .....

Mariam : They stay in hotels.

Nora : 3 .....

Mariam : Many tourists visit the Red Sea, Luxor, Aswan and many other places.

Nora : How should we treat tourists?

Mariam : 4 .....

Nora : 5 .....

Mariam : You're welcome.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. We have a ..... in the bathroom. SB

a. bed b. ruin c. temple d. mirror

2. Modern technology is .....

a. interested b. amazing c. careful d. useless

3. Businessmen travel a lot ..... the world.

a. under b. above c. around d. about

4. A ..... is a pot used for holding flowers. WB

a. mask b. vase c. necklace d. figure

5. .... means very old. WB

a. Modern b. Awesome c. Public d. Ancient

6. Playing computer games is great ..... for children.

a. fun b. report c. web d. view

7. A ..... is what you can see from the top of something. WB

a. pyramid b. view c. review d. ruler

8. A ..... is a person who can show you round a place. WB

a. tourist b. professor c. manager d. guide

9. Can you ..... a book to read at the weekend, Tarek?

a. recommend b. advise c. say d. tell

10. There's ..... to see in old Cairo. 2023 / مطاى / مطاى  
 a. lot b. any c. much d. that
11. Tourists mustn't ..... places that they visit. 2023 / مطاى / مطاى  
 a. repair b. save c. protect d. damage
12. I ..... in Al-Ahmedy Mosque in Tanta every Friday. 2023 / مطاى / مطاى  
 a. prey b. pray c. replay d. reply

## Language

13. I ..... my homework when my sister called me. WB  
 a. was doing b. will do c. did d. am doing
14. You ..... leave large bags at the ticket office before you enter the castle. SB  
 a. are b. must c. have d. shall
15. You ..... use your mobile while you are driving.  
 a. must b. aren't c. mustn't d. haven't
16. .... Nadia was writing a message to Amany, her phone broke down.  
 a. Just as b. On c. After d. If
17. People were running quickly from the park because it ..... to ruin. WB  
 a. starts b. is starting c. start d. started

## 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. While I was doing my homework, I ..... (drop) my pencil. SB
2. When the guide ..... (was arriving) at the museum, we were waiting outside.
3. It's a "No Smoking" area. You ..... (must) smoke here. SB
4. You ..... (must) touch the stones of the Pyramids.
5. .... (While) the lesson, all the students were listening carefully.

## 4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"The rules for a place you will visit"

- يمكنك من خلال الرحلة عن الأسئلة الآتية:
- What place will you visit? - Where is it?
- What must you do there? - What mustn't you do there?
- I'll visit ..... next week. - It is in .....
- I must ..... there. - I mustn't ..... there.
- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

## Paragraphs &amp; Emails

1- A description of a historic place I visited (Lessons 1 & 2)

We went to Luxor and Aswan. We flew to Luxor first. We began our tour with a guide. We visited all the places there. He was a clever guide. He gave us information about the ancient Egyptian culture. In Luxor, we visited the Luxor Temple and the Karnak Temple. In Aswan, we visited many wonderful places. We visited the High Dam, the Philae Temple and the Aswan Museum. I recommend this trip my friends.

## 2- An object in my home. (Lessons 3 &amp; 4)

To : fawzi(a)mail@yaho.com

From : shadi(a)post@gmail.com

Subject : An object in my home

Dear Fawzi(a),

I'd like to describe my favourite object in my home. It's a vase. My friend Samy bought the vase for me from Aswan in 2000. It is made of clay and it was made in Egypt. The vase is fantastic. It is coloured beautifully. I put fresh flowers in this vase every morning. At present, this vase is kept on my desk. It makes my desk more wonderful. It is the best present I got from Samy. I like it very much. I feel happy when I look at it. Write soon.

Yours,  
Shadi(a)

## 3- What I think of tourism. (Lessons 5 &amp; 6)

Tourism is very important to Egypt. It brings money to the country. This helps the local people. But I don't think that tourism helps the environment. Tourists

drop rubbish and damage places in other ways. They often travel by car. This makes pollution. However, most tourists behave well. They know it's important to protect historic places. When people visit a historic place, they understand why we need to protect it.

4- The rules for a place I visited (General Exercises)

There are some rules I have to follow the Egyptian Museum. I mustn't drop rubbish. I mustn't damage objects. I mustn't touch any of them. I mustn't sit on stones. I must keep the place clean and safe. I mustn't use a camera. I must protect all the objects in the place. These historic places are very important to Egypt. Many tourists visit these places. We should treat them kindly.

## 5- A school trip to a museum (Al Azhar)

I went on a school trip to the Egyptian Museum last week. There were many statues and ancient monuments. It was fun. I recommend it because we can learn about Ancient Egyptian history. I saw many tourists there.

6- What I think we can do to protect the environment (Test)

We can help protect the environment. We can plant trees. We must also stop cutting down them. We mustn't destroy gardens and forests. We must use less water. We can walk, use bikes or public transport instead of our cars. Cars cause a lot of air pollution. We can collect rubbish and recycle it. This helps keep the environment clean.



### A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في نص الحادي عشر

1. Ancient Egyptians liked playing .....  
a. wood                      b. senet                      c. chess                      d. tennis
2. Senet boxes have ..... squares.  
a. three                      b. thirteen                      c. thirty                      d. third

### B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

1. Ticket officer : Good morning, City Museum. How can I help you?

Elham :

2. Fahd :

Alaa : Certainly. What do you want to know?

### C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. After the end of the war, many houses became .....  
a. rains                      b. ruins                      c. arches                      d. statues
2. You ..... see today's programme. It's useful to you.  
a. mustn't                      b. have                      c. are                      d. must
3. .... the party, the light went out.  
a. While                      b. During                      c. When                      d. As
4. Paper doesn't ..... in water.  
a. sleep                      b. drown                      c. sink                      d. drink
5. The new villa has got a wonderful .....  
a. design                      b. mask                      c. object                      d. guide
6. She ..... at her mobile while she was crossing the street.  
a. looking                      b. was looking                      c. looked                      d. is looking

### D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Tourists usually go to another country to see ancient buildings and works of art. They can learn new languages and enjoy scenery. By the start of 21<sup>st</sup> century, international tourism became one of the world's most important activities. The history of tourism is of nice interest and importance. Some companies organise tours to many ancient places. Tourism is important because it brings a lot of money. It also helps provide new jobs. It helps young people show new products and services. We should encourage tourism in our country. We should be helpful and kind to tourists who come to visit Egypt.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do tourists usually go to other countries?
2. What do some companies organise?
3. Why is tourism important?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. We should ..... tourism in our country.  
a. damage                      b. drop                      c. encourage                      d. leave
5. Tourists visit another country to see ..... places.  
a. dirty                      b. clean                      c. busy                      d. ancient

### E Writing

5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"A school trip to a museum"

(مجالس على قبل الخطأ)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الرحلة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة المطلوبة:

- Where was the school trip to? - How old is the place?

- What must or mustn't you do there? - What can you see and do there?

يمكن استخدام الجمل الآتية:

- I went on a school trip to..... - We must / mustn't ..... there.

- There is / are..... - I recommend it because.....

## TEST



## A Listening

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص السماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

- Cleopatra's Needle is a large and important .....  
a. statue      b. stone      c. castle      d. temple
- Cleopatra's Needle has beautiful ..... on it.  
a. paintings      b. arches      c. colours      d. designs
- You can see it ..... the River Thames.  
a. next to      b. in front of      c. under      d. behind
- The River Thames is in .....  
a. Paris      b. Amsterdam      c. London      d. Tokyo

## B Language Functions

## 2 Complete the following dialogue:

Azza is asking Adel about a book he's reading.

Azza : What are you reading?

Adel : 1 .....

Azza : 2 .....

Adel : Yes, the ancient Egyptians were very clever.

Azza : 3 .....

Adel : They built huge temples and Pyramids.

Azza : What other things did they do?

Adel : 4 .....

Azza : How did they make pots and bowls?

Adel : 5 .....

## C Reading Comprehension

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last summer, Mr Adel and his wife went on holiday to Hurgada. They stayed in a small hotel. One day, Mr Adel went for a long walk. He found a cat! It was lost! It followed Mr Adel to the hotel. His wife liked the cat and she gave it some food. It ate the food very quickly. It sat down outside their front door.

At 10 p.m., it was cold, so Mr Adel's wife let the cat inside. It sat beside her on the sofa. They gave her the name Bosbos. Bosbos stayed in the hotel with them. Six days later, it was time to go home. Now, Bosbos lives with them, she sits on the wife's knee in the evenings. They love Bosbos and Bosbos loves them.

## A. Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the passage?
- Where did Mr Adel and his wife stay?
- Why do you think Mr Adel's wife liked the cat?

## B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the .....  
a. home      b. sofa      c. cat      d. food
- Mr Adel's wife is .....  
a. kind      b. bad      c. unkind      d. lost
- The word "outside" means .....  
a. beside      b. in      c. outdoors      d. inside

## 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- You ..... eat inside the castle.  
a. were      b. must      c. have      d. mustn't
- The guide showed us ..... the Temple of Luxor.  
a. behind      b. round      c. during      d. without
- These bowls are made of .....  
a. clay      b. flour      c. air      d. oil
- Bees and ants are important .....  
a. birds      b. planes      c. insects      d. guides
- Ramsis II's ..... was moved to the new museum many years ago.  
a. tower      b. statue      c. castle      d. view

6. There's a beautiful ..... that leads to the inside of the palace.  
a. chair      b. ruin      c. arch      d. stone
7. Most of the people ..... when the earthquake started.  
a. sleep      b. were sleeping      c. slept      d. will sleep
8. After the earthquake, three buildings became.....  
a. arches      b. views      c. arecs      d. ruins
9. What ..... I do when I visit a historic place?  
a. must      b. have      c. was      d. am
10. A ..... is something people wear to cover or protect their face.  
a. glove      b. mask      c. helmet      d. sock

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. While I ..... (am playing) on the computer, I found out an interesting fact.  
2. All people ..... (mustn't) wear a mask to avoid the dangerous disease.  
3. We were all laughing when he ..... (finishes) that funny story.  
4. Children ..... (must) play with matches.

Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"What do you think we can do to protect the environment"

ما يمكننا فعله لحماية البيئة

.....

.....

.....

.....

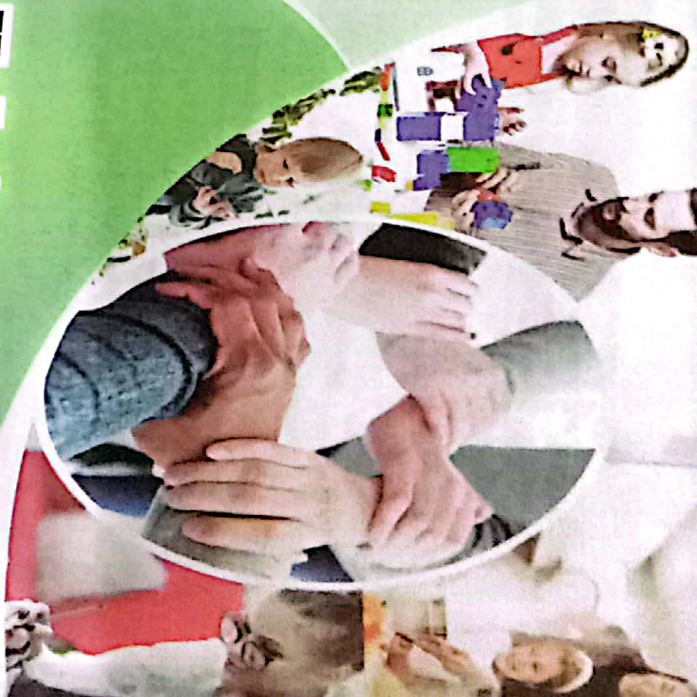
.....

- يمكنك من خلال العناية عن البيئة الآتية كتابة المقطع الإيضاحي:
- How can we help to protect the environment?
  - How much water must we use?
  - What means of transport can we use to protect the environment?
  - The most important way to protect the environment is.....
  - To protect the environment, we can.....
  - The environment needs.....
- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

New  
Hello!

5  
UNIT

Helping you,  
helping me



Objectives

- Reading:**  
An article about kindness; blogs about volunteering for charities; *Little Princess*; a news report about a charity; a blog about a project
- Writing:**  
A blog post on how to help your community
- Listening:**  
Conversations about jobs in the house; descriptions of photos; stories about people who helped; people making suggestions
- Speaking:**  
A discussion about jobs in the house; discussing random acts of kindness; making suggestions
- Language:**  
*who, which, that, where*
- Life Skills:**  
Participation; Collaboration
- Values:**  
Coexistence values; Sharing; Random acts of kindness
- Issues:**  
Community participation

## Key Vocabulary

random	عشوائي (غير مخطط)	kindness	طيبة / عطف
stronger	شخص عريب	lift	مساعد (السانسلا)
fantastic	رائع	messy	موضوي (غير منظم)
bin	سلة مهملات	smile (n)	ابتسامة
cooking	الطهي	tidying up	التنسيق / الترتيب
looking after	الرعاية	washing up	غسل الأطباق
putting away	وضع الملابس في مكانها المعتاد	taking out the rubbish	إخراج القمامة

### Jobs in the house

## Vocabulary

stairs	درجات السلم	seat	مقعد / نابت
schoolbag	حقيرة المدرسة	What sort...?	ما نوع...؟
apartment	شقة	distance	مسافة
shopkeeper	صاحب متجر (محل)	further	أبعد
acts	أفعال - أعمال	snack	وجبة خفيفة
attic	غرفة أعلى المبنى (استوديو)	care (v) (n)	رعاية / اهتمام
wheelchair	كرسي متحرك	check (ed)	يُفحص - يُتحقق
footballer	لاعب كرة قدم		

## Expressions & Prepositions

do the cooking	نظهو / تطبخ	have a smile	لديه ابتسامة
take the lift / the bus	يستقل المصعد / الأتوبس	get his bag ready	يجعل حقيرته
acts of kindness	أفعال خير	for no reason	بدون سبب
give ... back	يعيد	go on a boat	يذهب في رحلة بالقارب
make the bed	يرتب السرير	go down to	ينزل إلى
make sure	يتأكد	care about	يقيم بشأن
make a model for	يصنع نموذج لـ	walk into	يدخل مكان
make friends	يكون صداقات	run after	يطار

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
put away	put away	put away
take out	took out	taken out
get... ready	got... ready	got... ready
make	made	made
write down	wrote down	written down

### Word

### Meaning

### @pposite

lucky	مخطط	fortunate	unlucky	غير مخطط
messy	فوضوي	untidy	tidy	مرتب / منظم
fantastic	رائع	awesome	terrible	فظيع
surprised	مدهش	amazed		

## Definitions

kindness	طيبة / عطف	when you do things to help others and show you care about them
strangers	غرباء	people you don't know
fantastic	رائع	extremely <sup>1</sup> good; excellent <sup>2</sup>
tidy up	يرتب	make a place look better by putting things in their correct places
random	عشوائي	happening without a plan
a smile	ابتسامة	the shape <sup>3</sup> of your mouth that shows you are happy
messy	فوضوي	very untidy <sup>4</sup>
put away	يضع الشيء في مكانه المعتاد	put something in the place where you usually keep it when you are not using it
bin	سلة مهملات	- you put rubbish in this / - a place for rubbish
lift	مصعد	a machine that carries people up or down a tall building

## Language Notes

## 1) get ready - get on - get up

• get ready يستعد

Ex. He trained well to get ready for the match.

• get on استقل/ارتكبا

Ex. I helped the old man to get on the train.

• get up يستيقظ

Ex. I get up at seven o'clock every day.

## 2) on time - in time

• on time في الوقت المحدد

Ex. I always arrive at school on time.

• in time في الوقت المناسب

Ex. We arrived at the cinema in time. The movie was about to start.

## 3) every day - everyday

• every day (adverb) كل يوم

Ex. I study English every day.

• everyday (adjective) كل يوم (صفة تسمى 'يومي' والتي فقط قبل الاسم)

Ex. He writes about his everyday life in a diary.

## 4) spend

• spend + time + (V-ing) يقضي وقتاً في

Ex. Self spent three hours playing computer games.

## Check on Language Notes ✓

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The students are standing in a queue to get ..... the school bus.  
a. ready                      b. up                      c. on                      d. over
- You should arrive at the train station ..... time.  
a. by                      b. for                      c. at                      d. in
- These dishes are for ..... use.  
a. day                      b. everyday                      c. every day                      d. a day
- Every morning, I spend an hour ..... up my room.  
a. tidying                      b. tidy                      c. to tidy                      d. to tidying

## AudioScript

SB Page (45)

Hala

: I'm Hala. I have to make my bed<sup>(1)</sup> every day and tidy up my bedroom<sup>(2)</sup> once a week. My mother isn't happy about how messy<sup>(3)</sup> I am, but I always tidy up once a week on Saturday morning. It takes a long time. I have to put away all my clothes<sup>(4)</sup>, to wash up<sup>(5)</sup> after meals. I wash up after dinner on Mondays and Wednesdays and she washes up after dinner on Tuesdays and Thursdays. Sometimes, I help my grandmother to do the cooking<sup>(7)</sup>. I love making koushari.



Adam

: I'm Adam. I help with different things at home but my most difficult job is taking out our rubbish<sup>(6)</sup>. I don't have to do this every day; only when the bins<sup>(8)</sup> are full. I usually take out the bins in the evening on Wednesdays and Sundays. Our apartment<sup>(10)</sup> is on the third floor so I have to go down to the street in the lift<sup>(11)</sup>. The bins are heavy when they are full!



Nader

: I sometimes have to look after my brother<sup>(12)</sup> after school, but I like doing this. We play games and I give him a snack<sup>(13)</sup> to eat. He doesn't have to do any homework yet, but he has to get his bag ready<sup>(14)</sup> for school and I make sure he has the right books.



Aya

: The girl looks sad to be alone. I think she is new in the school and doesn't have any friends yet. The other students shouldn't forget how it feels when you start school. They should try to make friends<sup>(15)</sup> with her.

Samir

: A man forgot his bag. Someone should run after him and give the bag back<sup>(16)</sup> to him. Or they should look inside the bag to find his name and address.

Aya

: The woman looks really tired! I think someone in her family should make her a cup of tea and she should have a rest. They should take the children outside and play with them.

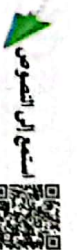
Samir

: She shouldn't carry<sup>(17)</sup> all those things. Someone should carry some of the things for her.



- 1- أريد فراشي
- 2- أريد حجرة نوم
- 3- فوضوي غير منظم
- 4- أضع ملابسي في مكانها
- 5- أتبلل لأدور
- 6- أغسل الأواني
- 7- أطبخ
- 8- أخرج القمامة
- 9- سلّة المهملات
- 10- شقة
- 11- مصعد
- 12- أختي، أخي
- 13- وجبة خفيفة
- 14- أجهز حقائبه
- 15- أجمع حقيبته

SB Page (46)



استمع إلى التوضيحات

# Reading

SB Page (47)

## Random acts of kindness

In 1982, some friends were in a restaurant in California, USA. They wanted to make the world better. One of the friends, Anne Herbert, wrote down her idea: *Practise random acts of kindness*. A random act of kindness is a kind thing that you do for someone, for no reason. You can do random acts of kindness for the people you know: for example, buy flowers for your mother. You can also be kind to strangers: for example, give your seat to someone on a bus. Now, February 17<sup>th</sup> is Random Acts of Kindness Day. All over the world, people do kind things for the day: not because they have to, but because they want to see a smile on a person's face. Isn't that a fantastic idea?



- ١- يولانس
- ٢- الفلح العنقولة
- ٣- عطف
- ٤- بروس سيني
- ٥- عرياء
- ٦- في جملة لخاصة
- ٧- تالار
- ٨- فاشلة
- ٩- رائحة

WB Page (102)

We're going on a boat today. It's going to be hot, so you have to wear sunglasses and a hat. Boats are fun but they can be dangerous. Dina uses a wheelchair, so she has to go on the boat first. You all have to be careful when you get on the boat. You also have to sit down when the boat is moving, but you don't have to sit when the boat stops. You can stand up then. Finally, if you see a dolphin, you have to tell us! That is why we are going!

- ١- نظارة شمسية
- ٢- كرسى متحرك
- ٣- ينحرك
- ٤- لؤلؤ
- ٥- دولفين

WB Page (103)

## Do you want to start running?

### Follow these tips!

- Start running short distances.
- Don't run too far, but go a bit further each day.
- Go with a friend if you can - it will help!
- Don't run if your legs hurt.
- Drink lots of water after a run, but not before!
- Eat healthy food.
- Don't eat a lot of sweets.



- ١- اصليح
- ٢- مسافات
- ٣- ابع قليل
- ٤- يولم
- ٥- جولة جري
- ٦- حلوى

## Exercises on Vocabulary

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hanady and Yomna are talking about what they do to help in their houses.

Hanady : Do you usually help in your house?

Yomna : 1

Hanady : 2

Yomna : I have to tidy up my room, wash up... etc.

Hanady : 3

Yomna : I tidy up my room every morning.

Hanady : Does your sister Samya help you?

Yomna : 4

Hanady : I think your mother is very lucky to have you both.

Yomna : 5

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

#### SB, WB & Exams

1. The bin is full. Please can you take..... the rubbish?

- a. up
- b. down
- c. out
- d. off

2. Karim is a happy person and always has a ..... on his face.

- a. smile
- b. pencil case
- c. knife
- d. tablet

3. I help to look ..... my little sister when my parents are busy.

- a. up
- b. after
- c. for
- d. to

4. Adam was surprised when a ..... walked into his shop.

- a. relative
- b. friend
- c. teacher
- d. stranger

5. Amal finds it very easy to ..... friends because she is so friendly.

- a. do
- b. give
- c. make
- d. hate

6. We all remember my grandfather's ..... : he always helped us when we were children.

- a. kindness
- b. weakness
- c. careless
- d. sadness

7. This book is ..... You should read it!

- a. boring b. useless c. fantastic d. bad

8. Hala is a ..... person and there are often things on her bed.

- a. tidy b. friendly c. kind d. messy

9. My clothes were clean and dry, so I put them all .....

- a. away b. up c. off d. in

10. I was surprised when I saw the present. The synonym of "surprised" is .....

- a. sad b. calm c. amazed d. frightened

11. I go to school every day, "every day" is a/an .....

- a. noun b. adverb c. verb d. adjective

12. We can get to the top of a tall building in the .....

- a. bin b. carriage c. left d. lift

13. Don't drop rubbish on the ground. Put it in the .....

- a. pen b. bowl c. bin d. plate

### Bit by Bit Exercises

14. I read ..... pages from the book and then I decided to buy it.

- a. friendly b. moving c. boring d. random

15. She can't walk so she uses a .....

- a. sofa b. wheelchair c. toy d. lamp

16. My mother ..... the cooking alone.

- a. makes b. has c. does d. takes

17. My sister always washes ..... after we finish eating.

- a. up b. over c. away d. in

18. The opposite of "messy" is .....

- a. untidy b. lucky c. terrible d. tidy

19. We arrived at the airport ..... time. The plane leaves in half an hour.

- a. in b. at c. on d. for

20. Let's ..... the house, the visitors are coming soon.

- a. wash up b. tidy up c. stand up d. make up

## Language

### Obligation and lack of obligation

#### Obligation / Necessity

have to / has to يجب أن / ضروري أن

يقصد بالضرورة / الضرورة أي فوجبه ضرورة من الضرورة وليس بالضرورة (إلزاماً) :  
• للتعبير عن ذلك في المضارع نستخدم:

I / We / You / They / اسم جمعة + have to

He / She / It / اسم مفرد + has to

Ex. I have to wear the school uniform.

Ex. He has to do a research.

#### Lack of Obligation / Necessity

don't / doesn't have to لا يجب أن / ليس ضروري أن

يقصد بعدم الإلزام / بعدم الضرورة (الشيء ليس من الضروري أن يفعلها)  
• للتعبير عن ذلك في المضارع نستخدم:

I / We / You / They / اسم جمعة + don't have to

He / She / It / اسم مفرد + doesn't have to

Ex. We don't have to go to school on Saturdays.

Ex. My mother doesn't have to go to work today because it's a holiday.

لعمل سؤال بمعنى (هل...؟) عن الإلزام / الضرورة في المضارع نستخدم:

Do + I / we / you / they / اسم جمعة + have to + Inf...?

- Yes, I / we / you / they / اسم مفرد + do. (نعم) → (نعم)  
- No, I / we / you / they / اسم مفرد + don't. (لا) → (لا)

Does + he / she / it / اسم مفرد + have to + Inf...?

- Yes, he / she / it / اسم مفرد + does. (نعم) → (نعم)  
- No, he / she / it / اسم مفرد + doesn't. (لا) → (لا)

Ex. Do you have to get up at seven o'clock?

- Yes, I do. / No, I don't.

Ex. Does she have to eat breakfast?

- Yes, she does. / No, she doesn't.  
لعمل سؤال باستخدام كلمة استعمال نستخدم:

Ex. When do we have to finish our homework?

Ex. Why does she have to go now?

## Check

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The red light means that you ..... stop.  
a. has to                      b. don't have to                      c. have to                      d. doesn't have to
  - Hela ..... odd salt. The food is already salty.  
a. has to                      b. don't have to                      c. have to                      d. doesn't have to
  - My mother is sick. I ..... cook dinner.  
a. has to                      b. have                      c. have to                      d. doesn't have to
- 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
- ..... (Do) Hossem have to do that homework?
  - The driver ..... (have to) give his licence to the traffic policeman.
  - I can't walk. I ..... (doesn't have to) use a wheelchair.

## Advice

## النصيحة

لا ينبغي أن / shouldn't ينبغي أن / should

نستخدم (should / shouldn't) للتعبير عن النصيحة بالصيغة الآتية:

... مصدر الفعل. inf. + shouldn't / should + فعل

للمصيحة بفعل شيء نستخدم (should)

Ex. We should see that film. It's fantastic.

للمصيحة بعدم فعل شيء نستخدم (shouldn't)

Ex. You shouldn't eat unhealthy snacks.

للسؤال عن النصيحة ب... هل...؟ نستخدم:

Should + فعل + inf. ....?

Ex. Should I write my name on my paper?

- Yes, you should.                      - No, you shouldn't.

للسؤال بكلمة الاستفهام نستخدم:

Should + فعل + inf. ....?

Ex. A: When should I start to revise for the exam?

B: Three days before the exam.



## Notes

• نستخدم **should / shouldn't** قبل مصدر الفعل الذي يلي بعد **be** هو **am, is, are, was, were** وعلم أن المصدر من **have** هو **has, have** :

Ex. You should be helpful.

في النقص **not (n')** مباشرة بعد **should** وليس بعد الفعل. **shouldn't go** ✓. **shouldn't go-not** ✗.

## Exercises on Language

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

- I ..... walk to school. I take the bus. **SB**  
a. have to                      b. doesn't have to                      c. has to                      d. don't have to
- You ..... drink lots of water after a run, but not before! **WB**  
a. should                      b. can't                      c. doesn't have to                      d. shouldn't
- It's a holiday today. We ..... to go to school. **SB**  
a. have                      b. has                      c. don't have                      d. doesn't have
- You ..... tell your teacher if you don't understand the lesson. **SB**  
a. can't                      b. should                      c. shouldn't                      d. has to
- You ..... buy your friend a present on his/her birthday. **SB**  
a. should                      b. shouldn't                      c. should to                      d. aren't
- My father ..... get up at six o'clock every day to go to work. **SB**  
a. have to                      b. has to                      c. don't have to                      d. doesn't have to
- When you get on the bus, you ..... buy a ticket. **SB**  
a. don't have to                      b. has to                      c. have to                      d. doesn't have to
- It's going to be hot, so you ..... wear sunglasses and a hat. **WB**  
a. have to                      b. don't have to                      c. shouldn't                      d. can't
- ..... you have to go to school? **WB**  
a. Must                      b. Are                      c. Does                      d. Do

Bit by Bit Exercises

10. You watch too much TV.  
a. shouldn't b. have to c. should d. has to
11. You always tell the truth.  
a. don't have to b. shouldn't c. has to d. should
12. We play with matches.  
a. should b. have to c. shouldn't d. has to
13. You eat fruit and vegetables. They're healthy.  
a. shouldn't b. should c. shouldn't to d. should to
14. You do sports to keep fit.  
a. should b. doesn't have to c. shouldn't d. don't have to
15. You shout in the classroom.  
a. should b. shouldn't c. has to d. doesn't have to
16. You be careful when you cross a road.  
a. shouldn't b. has to c. don't have to d. have to
17. A: I read this story? B: Yes, it's very interesting.  
a. Should b. Have c. Shouldn't d. Does
18. You stay up late the night before the exam.  
a. should b. have to c. shouldn't d. doesn't have to

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB, WB & Exams

1. At school, I (don't have) to arrive on time.
2. We (has to) clean our room every day.
3. You (not have to) go to school on Friday. It's a holiday.
4. My mother (don't) have to go to work today.
5. You (shouldn't) study hard.
6. Does Nader (has) to get up early?
7. You (should) eat many sweets. They are not healthy.
8. Should I (to read) this book?
9. You (not should) drink water from the tap.
10. We (shouldn't) drink enough water every day.
11. Should I (to visit) my relatives from time to time?

Bit by Bit Exercises

Speaking

1 A discussion about jobs in the house

Question

- Do you help in your house?

- What sort of jobs do you have to do at home?

ما نوع المهام التي يجب أن تقوم بها في المنزل؟

Answer

- Yes, I do.

- No, I don't

- I have to tidy up my room, wash up... etc.

يجب أن أقوم بتنظيف غرفتي، وغسل الأطباق... الخ.

2 Discussing random acts of kindness

Question

- Do you think people should always do random acts of kindness? Why?

هل تعتقد أن الناس لابد دائما أن يقوموا بأعمال خيرية عشوائية؟ لماذا؟

- What would you like to do on Random Acts of Kindness Day?

ماذا تريد أن تقوم به في (أيوم أعمال الخير غير المخطط لها)؟

Answer

- Yes, I think so because people should always help each other.

نعم، أعتقد ذلك، لأن الناس لابد دائما أن يساعدوا بعضهم البعض.

- I would like to take part in a charity to do many acts of kindness.

أود أن أشارك في جمعية خيرية للقيام بالعديد من أعمال الخير.

General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Zeinab and Hanan are talking about random acts of kindness.

Zeinab : What are you doing, Hanan?

Hanan : 1

Zeinab : 2

Hanan : This book is about random acts of kindness.

Zeinab : Should we always do random acts of kindness?

Hanan : 3

Zeinab : How?

Hanan : 4

Zeinab : 5

Hanan : Yes, I'll take part in a charity. You can join me.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

## Vocabulary

1. My mother is ..... dinner in the kitchen. **d. cooking**
- a. tidying      b. cleaning      c. moving
2. I love my friend. He always meets me with a pretty ..... **d. bin**
- a. mile      b. smile      c. schoolbag
3. Sameero always tidies ..... the kitchen after cooking. **d. away**
- a. off      b. down      c. up
4. My friend Karen lives in a nice ..... **d. lift**
- a. apartment      b. school      c. seat
5. He didn't come to school yesterday ..... no reason. **d. to**
- a. of      b. for      c. from
6. I usually ..... the rubbish when the bins are full. **d. put away**
- a. take out      b. wash up      c. tidy up
7. Hala is very ..... and leaves her toys all over the floor. **d. messy**
- a. tidy      b. dirty      c. missed
8. They gave the footballer a ..... test to check his health. **d. far**
- a. delicious      b. random      c. useless
- Language**
9. You ..... pass your exams to go to university. **d. don't have to**
- a. should      b. has to      c. have to
10. At the weekends, I ..... get up early. I can stay in bed until 9 o'clock. **d. don't have to**
- a. doesn't have to      b. has to      c. have to
11. We ..... eat healthy food. **d. are**
- a. shouldn't      b. should      c. has to
12. .... Samir have to do this homework? **d. Do**
- a. Does      b. Is      c. Has
13. Children ..... spend much time on mobile phones. It's not good. **d. doesn't have to**
- a. should      b. have to      c. shouldn't
14. What rules do we have ..... in that museum? **d. to following**
- a. followed      b. to follow      c. follow
15. You ..... be angry. This is my advice. **d. shouldn't**
- a. have to      b. doesn't have to      c. has to

③ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. We ..... (shouldn't) drink enough water every day.
2. Should I ..... (to visit) my relatives from time to time?
3. I ..... (have) to pay for the toy. It's free.
4. I feel ill. I ..... (shouldn't) see a doctor.
5. The bus is full. I ..... (don't have to) take a taxi.

4 Write an email of about **NINETY (90)** words:

to your pen pal(s) telling him/her about your school rules.

• Your name is fadi(d) and your email address is fadi(a)666@gmail.com

- Your permission's name is George(ina) and his / her email address is

george(ind)55@yaho.com

امحباب عنه في آخر الوحدة ١

يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني:

- What do you have to do at school?

**- What mustn't you do?**

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

**- At school, I have to .....**

- At school, I mustn't .....

**- In the library, I have to .....**

**- In the library, I mustn't .....**

## Key Vocabulary

boarding school	مدرسة داخلية	volunteer	مطوع
disabled	معاق	owner	المالك
the disabled	مُعَدَّق (لا عائلة/ ذوي الهمم)	beggar	مُتَسَوِّل
cruel	قاسي	feed (fed) (feed)	يُطْعِم
servant	خادمة/ خادم	donate (d)	يُؤَدِّع
community	مجتمع/ محل (أصغرا)	behave (d)	يُتَصَرَّف
princess	أميرة	pick up (ed)	يُلتَقِط

استمع إلى المفردات



## Vocabulary

trainers	حذاء رياضي	generous	كريم
volleyball	الكرة الطائرة	strange	غريب
certain	معيّن/ مؤكّد	sports person	شخص رياضي
local beach	شاطئ/ محل	directions	إتجاهات
schoolbooks	كتب مدرسية	die (d)	يُؤَتِّ
secondary school	مدرسة ثانوية	reach (ed)	يُحِلُّ إِلَى
headteacher	مديرة المدرسة	recommend (ed)	يُوصِي / يَرْشِي

## Expressions & Prepositions

pass the exam	يُجْتَاز الامتحان	recommend... to	يُوصِي بـ... لـ
work as	يُحْمِلُ كـ	terrible to	فُظِيحٌ مَعَ
get lost	يُضِلُّ الطَّرِيقَ	move to	يُنْقَلُ إِلَى (إِزِلًا)
behave well	يُتَصَرَّفُ بِشَكْلٍ لَائِقٍ	volunteer for	مُطَوِّعٌ لـ
behave like	يُتَصَرَّفُ مِثْلَ	ask for	يُطَلِّبُ
leave... behind	يُترِكَ... خَلْفَهُ	surprised about	مُتَحَشِّشٌ مِّنْ
polite to	مُهَذَّبٌ مَعَ	take... off	يُخَالِعُ (الْمَلَابِسَ/ سَاعَةَ الْيَدِ/ حذاءً)
cruel to	قاسي مَعَ		

## Configurations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
leave... behind	left... behind	left... behind
give	gave	given

## Word

Word	Meaning	Opposite
cruel	قاسي	unkind / terrible
polite	مؤدب	well - behaved
famous	مشهور	well-known
		unknown
		غير معروف

## Definitions

cruel	قاسي	not kind
boarding school	مدرسة داخلية	a school where the students live all the time (during the school year)
behave	يُتَصَرَّفُ	act or do something in a certain way <sup>1)</sup>
beggar	مُتَسَوِّل	a poor person who asks others for money or food
servant	خادم	a person who works in a house, cooking <sup>2)</sup> , cleaning, etc.
community	مجتمع/ محل	a small area and the people who live in it
pick up	يُلتَقِط	- collect something from a place - lift someone or something
disabled	معاق/ عاجز	When someone cannot use part of the body in the way most people can
donate	يُؤَدِّع	give something useful to a person or charity that needs help
feed	يُطْعِم	give food to a person or animal
princess	أميرة	the daughter of a king or queen

## Language Notes

### 1) buy

• buy + someone + something

يُشْتَرِي لِشَخْصٍ شَيْئًا مَا

Ex. I bought my mother a present.

• buy + something + for + someone

يُشْتَرِي شَيْئًا لِشَخْصٍ

Ex. I bought a present for my mother.

## 2) like - would ('d) like

• like + n / v-ing يحب

Ex. I like football matches.

Ex. I like watching football matches.

• would ('d) like + (to + inf) / n يريد  
= want + (to + inf) / n

Ex. I'd like (want) to drink tea, please.

### Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I bought a present ..... my friend on his birthday.  
a. for b. to c. about d. from
- I like ..... coffee in the morning.  
a. drink b. drinking c. drinks d. to drinking

## Audio-script

SB Page (48)

**Amal** : Our neighbour<sup>(1)</sup>, Mr. Othman, is the person who

helped me pass<sup>(2)</sup> my maths exams. He is 70 and doesn't work now, but he was a maths teacher before. The books which he used to help me were his old schoolbooks<sup>(3)</sup> from when he was teaching at secondary school<sup>(4)</sup>.

My aunt Dalia is a person who is always very kind to me.

She bought me the trainers<sup>(5)</sup> that I wore when I played in the school volleyball team for the first time. We won the match!

My little cousin Rana helped me last week when I lost my watch.

I was sad because it was the watch that my father gave me for my birthday. The place where I lost it was the garden. I look it off<sup>(6)</sup> when I was playing and it fell. Rana found it under a plant. Because her hand is so small, she could put it under the plant and reach the watch.



استمع إلى الصوت



- 1- جد
- 2- يفتقد
- 3- حذاء مدرسية
- 4- مدرسة ثانوية
- 5- حذاء رياضي
- 6- يعلق الساعة

## Reading

SB Page (49)



I work as a volunteer<sup>(1)</sup> for a charity which helps to clean our local<sup>(2)</sup> beach. At the weekend, we go to the beach and pick up<sup>(3)</sup> the rubbish that people left behind. We always pick up lots of plastic bottles!

**Samir**

It is good to help people in the community<sup>(4)</sup>. I visit a home for old people who are disabled<sup>(5)</sup> so it's difficult for their families to look after them. I go there after school on Thursdays. The volunteers have a special<sup>(6)</sup> person who we visit and talk to. The woman who I visit is called Mrs Nahla. She worked as a nurse when she was young and she is a fantastic person. I love talking to her.

**Fatma**



I work for a charity which looks after animals that are old or sick<sup>(7)</sup> and cannot work any more. People donate<sup>(8)</sup> money to the charity to buy food for the animals such as horses and camels. We help to feed<sup>(9)</sup> the animals and look after them. This camel is very old and she is my favourite<sup>(10)</sup> animal.

**Ahmed**

### A Little Princess

SB Page (50)

by Frances Hodgson Burnett

Everyone at Sara Crewe's boarding school<sup>(1)</sup> calls her "a little princess"<sup>(2)</sup> because her father is very rich. After Sara's father dies, the headteacher<sup>(3)</sup>, Miss Minchin, starts being cruel<sup>(4)</sup> to Sara because she has no money. She makes Sara work as a servant<sup>(5)</sup>. Sara has to work very hard and does not get much food. However, Sara decides to behave<sup>(6)</sup> like a real<sup>(7)</sup> princess, so she is always kind and polite<sup>(8)</sup> to everyone.

One day, Sara finds a coin<sup>(9)</sup> in the street. She can't find the owner<sup>(10)</sup>. She goes to the baker's<sup>(11)</sup> to buy some cakes. When she comes out, she sees a beggar<sup>(12)</sup> and gives the girl most of her cakes. Sara can see that this girl is cold<sup>(13)</sup> and hungry. Sara thinks that a real princess should always be kind and generous<sup>(14)</sup> like this. When the baker sees this, she is surprised. "This girl is very strange<sup>(15)</sup>. She is very poor but she is kind to beggars," she thinks.



- 1- مدرسة داخلية
- 2- أميرة
- 3- مديرة المدرسة
- 4- قاسي
- 5- خادمة
- 6- تتصرف
- 7- حقيقي
- 8- مهذب
- 9- عملة معدنية
- 10- المالك
- 11- الخبز
- 12- متسولة
- 13- شديدة البرد
- 14- كريم
- 15- غريبة

I think that the girl who came into my baker's shop today was a servant, because she didn't have very new clothes. The money that she had was enough to buy a few cakes. I often see a beggar in the street where I work. She usually asks for money, but when the young girl left my shop, she gave her most of her cakes! I was very surprised. I feel that this servant girl behaved like a princess!



## Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

### SB, WB & Exams

- If someone is \_\_\_\_\_ to you, they are terrible to you.  
a kind      b. nice      c. good      d. cruel **WB**
- To \_\_\_\_\_ is to give something useful to a person or charity.  
a spend      b. donate      c. pick up      d. call **WB**
- A \_\_\_\_\_ is a small area and the people who live in it.  
a community      b. country      c. team      d. communication **WB**
- A \_\_\_\_\_ always asks people for food and money.  
a. princess      b. servant      c. beggar      d. volunteer **WB**
- This book is very interesting. I \_\_\_\_\_ it to you.  
a advise      b. tell      c. try      d. recommend **WB**
- This boy always behaves \_\_\_\_\_ an adult. All people like him.  
a well      b. like      c. so      d. for **WB**
- A \_\_\_\_\_ is a person who works in a house cooking, cleaning, etc.  
a. servant      b. beggar      c. doctor      d. surgeon **WB**

### Bit by Bit Exercises

- When I was young, I went to a \_\_\_\_\_ school.  
a. pride      b. board      c. boarding      d. brood
- The charity saves money by using \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. volunteers      b. officers      c. beggars      d. strangers
- All people should help the \_\_\_\_\_, like those who are blind.  
a. cruel      b. rich      c. disabled      d. healthy
- We cleaned the playground and \_\_\_\_\_ up the rubbish.  
a. forgot      b. picked      c. pushed      d. trained
- I have a pet cat and I \_\_\_\_\_ it three times a day.  
a. eat      b. kill      c. hit      d. feed
- My uncle works \_\_\_\_\_ a doctor in a big hospital.  
a. as      b. so      c. too      d. but
- Osman studied hard so he \_\_\_\_\_ the exams.  
a. failed      b. lost      c. passed      d. paid
- She is polite so she \_\_\_\_\_ well at school.  
a. shouts      b. behaves      c. lies      d. fights
- A \_\_\_\_\_ lives in a big palace.  
a. beggar      b. farmer      c. poor man      d. princess
- My friend Tarek is the \_\_\_\_\_ of this house.  
a. owner      b. teacher      c. driver      d. farmer
- He took his watch \_\_\_\_\_ and put it on the table.  
a. of      b. on      c. off      d. at
- A group of tourists \_\_\_\_\_ lost in the desert.  
a. got      b. made      c. took      d. sent
- I'd like \_\_\_\_\_ a piece of cake, please.  
a. have      b. having      c. to have      d. to having

## Language

## Relative clauses / pronouns

عبارات / ضمائر الوصل

تستخدم (عبارات / ضمائر الوصل) للربط بين الجملتين عن الاسم الذي نتكلم عنه، وقد يكون هذا الاسم (شخص / حيوان / مكان / زمان).

## 1 who (that)

for people

نحل محل اسم عاقل بمعنى الذي / التي / الذين / اللاتي

Miss Amdal is a teacher.

She teaches us English.

Miss Amdal is the teacher who / that teaches us English.

## 2 which (that)

for things / animals

نحل محل اسم غير عاقل (شئ - حيوان) بمعنى الذي / التي / الذين / اللاتي

That's a horse.

It won the race.

That's the horse which / that won the race.

## 3 where

for places

تستخدم للإشارة إلى المكان بمعنى (هنا)

This is a house.

My grandfather lived there.

This is the house where my grandfather lived.

## 4 when

for time

تستخدم للإشارة إلى الزمان بمعنى (عندما)

This month is October.

I was born in October.

October is the month when I was born.

## Notes

١- عند استخدام ضمير الوصل لربط جملتين نحدد مكاناً للاسم الذي

يحل عليه ضمير الوصل:

Ex. This is the table which I bought.

Ex. That is my school where I learn there.

٢- لاحظ استخدام : where مكان which مكن :  
Ex. This is the house which my father bought.استخدمنا : which لانما تعلق الذي التي تستخدم للإشارة إلى الأشياء وهذا يتكلم عن (house) كشيء وليس مكان وذلك لمستخدم (where).  
لاحظ أنه إذا جاء حرف جر مثل in مع المكان نستخدم (which) وليس (where).Where = حرف جر + which  
Where = which .... + حرف جر

Ex. Tonto is the city in which I was born.

Ex. Tonto is the city which I was born in.

٣- لاحظ استخدام : which مكان (when) :  
Ex. Friday is the day which I like.استخدمنا : which لانما تعلق الذي وتشير إلى الأشياء وهذا يتكلم عن (Friday) ليس كوقت ولكن كشيء وذلك لمستخدم (when).  
لاحظ أنه إذا جاء حرف جر مثل in مع الزمان نستخدم (when) وليس (which).When = حرف جر + which  
When = which .... + حرف جر

Ex. June is the month in which I was born.

Ex. June is the month which I was born in.

## Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB &amp; Exams

1. My aunt Dalia is a person ..... is always very kind to me.

a. who b. which c. when d. where

2. She bought me the trainers ..... I wore when I played in the school volleyball team.

a. who b. where c. that d. when

3. I gave the shoes ..... are too small for me to my cousin.

a. who b. when c. where d. which

4. Ahmed is the boy ..... I met in primary school.  
a. which      b. who      c. where      d. when
5. That is the house ..... my grandmother was born.  
a. which      b. when      c. where      d. who
6. The boy ..... was my best friend at school moved to a different city.  
a. when      b. who      c. which      d. where
7. Let's go back to the beach ..... we went swimming last week.  
a. when      b. that      c. who      d. where
8. Tennis is a sport ..... my sister plays every week.  
a. where      b. when      c. which      d. who
9. It was the watch ..... my father gave me for my birthday.  
a. that      b. when      c. who      d. where
10. This is the book ..... I bought last week.  
a. who      b. which      c. where      d. when
11. What is the name of the person ..... is sitting next to you?  
a. who      b. where      c. which      d. what
12. I see my friends in the park ..... we often play football.  
a. which      b. that      c. when      d. where
13. This is the man ..... won the prize.  
a. which      b. when      c. who      d. where
14. Thank you very much for you email ..... was very good.  
a. which      b. who      c. when      d. where
15. The people ..... live next door are friendly.  
a. why      b. who      c. where      d. which
16. October is the month ..... I was born.  
a. who      b. where      c. which      d. when
17. What is the title of the book ..... you are reading?  
a. when      b. who      c. which      d. where
18. A volunteer is a person ..... does a job without being paid for it.  
a. which      b. that      c. when      d. where
19. I saw Ahmed in the market ..... we often buy our food.  
a. who      b. that      c. where      d. when

Bit by Bit Exercises

20. Mr Hassan is the man ..... lives next door.  
a. that      b. where      c. which      d. when
  21. Ten o'clock is the time ..... I go to bed every day.  
a. when      b. where      c. which      d. who
2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
1. The market is a place ..... (when) I often get lost!
  2. The tourists ..... (what) visit Egypt always love the ancient temples.
  3. That's the teacher ..... (which) teaches us maths.
  4. A good friend is someone ..... (which) helps others.
  5. This is the house ..... (who) I live in.
  6. That's the bird ..... (where) sings in the morning.
  7. Aswan is the city ..... (when) there is the High Dam.
  8. That's the man ..... (which) bought our old car.
  9. This is the village ..... (when) my grandma was born.
  10. The man ..... (where) wears a brown jacket is my uncle.

Bit by Bit Exercises

Speaking

Talking about charities

سأل وكتب عن الجمعيات الخيرية كالتالي:

Question

Answer

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| - What charities do you know?            | - I know a charity which helps.....                |
| - How do people help in them?            | - They donate money to them.                       |
| - Why should charities get money?        | - Charities give this money to people who need it. |
| - What are other ways to help charities? | - We can volunteer for them.                       |

# General Exercises

## 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hind and Mariam are talking about charities.

Hind : What do you think of charity work?

Mariam :

Hind : Do you help in a charity.

Mariam :

Hind :

Mariam : It's called the Red Crescent.

Hind :

Mariam : Yes, you can join it.

Hind : When can I start?

Mariam :

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Vocabulary

1. He is ..... He cannot use his leg in the way we can.  
a. healthy b. well c. disabled d. cruel
2. My grandparents used to have a/an ..... who helped them with the housework.  
a. actor b. servant c. doctor d. engineer
3. A ..... is the daughter of a king or queen.  
a. princess b. servant c. beggar d. baker
4. To ..... means to give food to a person, group or an animal.  
a. feed b. food c. feel d. read
5. A ..... is someone who works for no money to help people.  
a. nurse b. volunteer c. teacher d. police officer
6. Nowadays there are many ..... in most streets who ask people for money.  
a. beggars b. servants c. actors d. sellers

7. He is very ..... He treats the cat badly.  
a. kind b. nice c. good d. cruel

8. I ..... money and clothes to a charity that helps poor people.  
a. travel b. buy c. donate d. wore

### Language

9. This is the club ..... I play football.  
a. which b. who c. where d. when

10. The books ..... he used to help me were his old schoolbooks.  
a. which b. when c. where d. who
11. Mr Osman has a son ..... is a teacher.  
a. where b. when c. which d. who
12. Mrs Sabri's the teacher ..... taught my sister.  
a. which b. who c. where d. when
13. This is the hospital ..... is near to my house.  
a. where b. who c. which d. when
14. This is Mr Ali ..... teaches us social studies.  
a. who b. when c. where d. which
15. The beach ..... the boys saw turtles was full of rubbish.  
a. which b. when c. who d. where

## 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. This is the old man ..... (which) I helped yesterday.
2. This is the museum ..... (when) we saw amazing statues.

3. The new car ..... (who) I bought is so expensive.
4. This is the boy ..... (which) took my pen yesterday.
5. The market is the place ..... (whose) I often get lost.

## 4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"A story about a girl helping the poor"

يمكنك كتابة أي شيء تريد

يمكنك من خلال الكتابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة القصيرة:

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- What is the story about?
- What did the girl use to do?
- Why did the girl like to help the poor?
- What will happen if we help poor people?
- I read a story ..... who lived in a .....
- She used to ..... near her house.
- She sometimes ..... them some food and medicine.

استمع إلى المفردات



## Key Vocabulary

donation

تبرع

share (d)  
help (ed)

يفتسم / يشارك  
يساعد

blog

مدونة على الانترنت

## Vocabulary

canteen	مقهف (كثيرة) المدرسة	the widest	الأعرض
street corner	ركن / نصبة الشارع	geography	مادة الجغرافيا
businesswomen	سيدة أعمال	neatly	تنظيماً
passport	جواز سفر	laboratory	معمل
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	pleased	مسور
helpful	مفيد / نافع / متعاون	sunny	شمس
The Rod al-Farag Axis Bridge	كوبرى محور روض الفرج	snow (ed)	نمطر ثلج

## Expressions & Prepositions

as possible	قدر المستطاع	try to	يحاول أن
give me a smile	عطيني ابتسامة	work for	يعمل لصالح
make suggestions	يقدم اقتراحات	In my opinion	في رأيي
make a decision	يخذ قرار	on social media	على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
make someone happy	يجعل شخص سعيد	go back to	يعود إلى
put ... in order	يرتب ...	on the way home	في الطريق للمنزل
give away	يملع / يهب	at first	في البداية
put a smile on someone's face	يرسم بسمة على وجه شخص ما	help with	يساعد في

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
let	let	let
swim	swam	swum

## Word

usual	معاداة	common	unusual	غير معاداة
possible	ممكناً	likely	impossible	مستحيل
pleased	مسور	happy	unhappy / sad	حزين

## Language Notes

### 1) Large numbers

- hundred	مائة	thousand	الف	million	مليون
- 1,500	= one thousand, five hundred				
- 10,300	= ten thousand, three hundred				
- 100,000	= one hundred thousand				
- 1,000,000	= one million				
- 1,600,000	= one million, six hundred thousand				

### 2) decide

• decide to + inf.	يقدر أن ...	• decide + that + verb	يقدر أن ...
Ex. I decided to travel to London next week.		Ex. I decided that I should study hard.	

### 3) in the end - at the end of

• in the end = finally	في النهاية	• at the end of ...	في نهاية ...
Ex. I worked hard, and in the end, I succeeded.		Ex. The library is at the end of the corridor.	
Ex. We decided to travel to London in the end.			

### 4) sequencers

كلمات التسلسل

first	أولاً	secondly	ثانياً	next	التالي
after that	بعد ذلك	then	ثم / بعد ذلك	finally	أخيراً

هي كلمات تستخدمها لترتيب حدثنا وهي كالآتي:

المفتاح

noun **trainers** for the trip.  
 v-ing **staying** at home this night.  
 noun **reference** we go on a boat trip.

جملة  
Sentence we go on a boat trip.  
مصدر الفاعل + inf + فعل (that)  
that you come with us.

وَرَبَّتِ الْحَمَلَةَ الثَّلَاثَةَ فِي الْإِسْرَاءِ

I suggest that she ..... to the beach.

D. goes

b. has gone

c. is going

ଦ. ଗୁଠ

**Answer** d. go

## Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Rammy ..... buy a new car next year.  
 a. decided to      b. decided      c. decided that      d. decision
2. The thieves were able to escape. .... the end, they were arrested.  
 a. At      b. On      c. In      d. Of
3. Moglid suggested ..... on a boat trip.  
 a. to go      b. going      c. to going      d. go

# Reading

**SB Page (51)**

## Large charity donation<sup>11</sup>

Foreeda Rashwan, age 32, has donated two million pounds to charities in the city. The **businesswoman**<sup>(2)</sup> says that she wants the charities to use the money to help people who need it. The charities can decide to **share**<sup>(3)</sup> the money between them or give all the money to one charity. The **important**<sup>(4)</sup> thing is to help as many people **as possible**<sup>(5)</sup>.



استمع إلى النصوص



### ۱- تبصره

٢- سيرة اعمال

1-10

## 0-0 قدر المستطاع

## HASSAN'S BLOG

*Random Acts of Kindness Project*

Our class decided to try to do one act of kindness every day for three days. This is what I did.

First, on Monday, I bought my grandmother some of her favourite cakes at the baker's on the way home from school. She was *surprised*<sup>(1)</sup>, but very happy! After that, on Tuesday, I let some younger students go into the *canteen*<sup>(2)</sup> in front of me. Finally, on Wednesday, I took a sandwich and a cold drink to the old man who often sits on our street *corner*<sup>(3)</sup>. He gave me a big smile. *In my opinion*<sup>(4)</sup>, doing random acts of kindness is fantastic. I don't want to stop!



**10-11**

٢- مقصف (كانتين)

٣- ركن / زاوية

3- في رأيي

SB Page (53)

I share a bedroom with my sister and we are sometimes quite messy, so we usually tidy up every evening before we go to bed. We put away all our clothes and books. Twice a week, my brother and I take out the rubbish. We do it together because the bins are quite heavy. My parents donate money to a charity which helps a local school for disabled people. We think it is important to help people in the community.

SB Page (53)

**Nasser** : Do you have to study this evening, Omar?

**Omar** : Yes, I do. I have a geography test tomorrow.

**Nasser** : What about your brother? Does he have to study, too?

**Omar** : No, he doesn't, but he has to tidy up his bedroom: it's really messy!

**Nasser** : It's nearly the end of break. Where do we have to go for the next lesson?

**Omar : The laboratory! We've got science.**

# Audio script SB Page (51)

**Amal** : I think that the charities should share the money between them and help lots of different people.

**Leila** : I'm not sure, Amal .... I think it *would be better*<sup>(1)</sup> if one charity gets all the money and can do something big and important.

**Amal** : OK, but which charity then?

**Leila** : *What about*<sup>(2)</sup> a charity that helps children... or old people?

**Amal** : I agree that it's very important to help children, but I also think it's important to look after old people. That's why I suggest that they share the money.

**Leila** : I see what you mean<sup>(3)</sup>. OK, they should share the money between two or three important charities.

من المال  
لا أعرف  
-ف ما أفكر

أفكر  
أفكر  
-ف ما أفكر

WB Page (106)

**Malak** : I feel that famous people should work for a charity *at the weekend*<sup>(1)</sup>.

**Rawia** : I'm not sure. Some of them work very hard. I think it would be better if they gave some money to a charity. They don't need to work for a charity.

**Malak** : I agree that it's important for them to donate money, but I also think it's important to work for the charity, too.

**Rawia** : OK, but when? They don't have much time. Some of them work every day.

**Malak** : I see what you mean. *Perhaps*<sup>(2)</sup> they can help her for a day or two in their holidays.

**Rawia** : Good idea.

WB Page (107)

## My helpful day

On Saturday, I decided that I wanted to help everyone in my family.

*First*<sup>(1)</sup>, I made my mother breakfast. She was surprised because she usually makes it! *Secondly*<sup>(2)</sup>, I helped my sister with her homework. She always does it after breakfast!

*After that*<sup>(3)</sup>, I took my grandfather a cup of tea in bed. He likes to get up late on a Saturday.

*Then*<sup>(4)</sup> I played football in the park with my little brother. He loves football. *Finally*<sup>(5)</sup>, I helped my dad with the jobs that he likes to do in the house. I feel that I made all my family happy!



أولاً  
ثانياً  
ثالثاً  
رابعاً  
خامساً

## Video script SB Page (51)

There are many charities in Egypt that can help people.

The Alhassan *Foundation*<sup>(1)</sup> helps disabled people. They give wheelchairs to people who cannot walk. The charity helps disabled people to find jobs. It also teaches people about how disabled people have to live.

Another charity is the *Egyptian Food Bank*<sup>(2)</sup> which gives food to poor people and to people who have lost their jobs.

Every year, people donate more than 100 million Egyptian pounds to this charity. They don't have to do this, but they do it because they want to help.

People can also donate food, such as pasta, rice, meat and fruit, or they can take boxes of food to people in their community.

*The Red Crescent*<sup>(3)</sup> is one of the most important charities in the world.

A lot of doctors and nurses *volunteer*<sup>(4)</sup> for this charity. They treat<sup>(5)</sup> ill and *injured*<sup>(6)</sup> people when there is a *natural disaster*<sup>(7)</sup>.

The Red Crescent also helps when the weather is very bad. In 2020, there was a lot of rain in some parts of the country. Too much water caused a lot of *damage*<sup>(8)</sup> and many people needed help.

The Red Crescent took medicine and food to these people.

Everybody should donate to a charity if they can. Or perhaps you could volunteer to help?

الأساسية  
-ف بنك الطعام  
المصري  
-ف بنك الطعام  
-ف بنك الطعام  
-ف بنك الطعام  
-ف بنك الطعام  
-ف بنك الطعام

## Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB &amp; Exams

WB

bridge in the world.

1. The Rod al-Farag Axis Bridge is the ..... bridge in the world.  
a. tallest b. fattest c. widest d. youngest2. I see Ahmed's father ..... my way to school every day.  
a. for b. at c. in d. on3. I always help my dad ..... the jobs that he likes to do in the house.  
a. with b. at c. to d. for

2022 / 1443 هـ

## Bit by Bit Exercises

4. Farid is kind, he sometimes ..... his sandwiches with his friends.  
a. loses b. sells c. shares d. decides5. I tried many times and ..... I solved the maths problem.  
a. loudly b. silly c. sadly d. finally6. The rich man decided to give ..... some money to a charity.  
a. up b. way c. off d. away7. The rich man gave the charity a large ..... to build a hospital.  
a. donation b. conversation c. notion d. station8. Solly always shows interesting things on her .....  
a. canteen b. laboratory c. passport d. blog9. I like the T-shirt, but I can't ..... a decision about the colour.  
a. put b. make c. do d. play10. First, I did my homework, then I watched TV, ..... that I went to bed.  
a. After b. Next c. And d. Step11. Our school ..... has a lot of tasty food.  
a. corner b. market c. canteen d. subject12. I think that famous people should work ..... a charity.  
a. as b. for c. by d. back13. To make a cup of tea, ..... boil some water.  
a. finally b. first c. last d. after that14. I'm happy to ..... a smile on my brother's face.  
a. take b. make c. put d. buy15. Inab suggests that they ..... fishing tomorrow.  
a. go b. goes c. to go d. going

## 1) Making suggestions

## Suggestion

- I think that ..... should

Ex. I think that the money should go to charities.

## Response

- I think it would be better if .....

Ex. I think it would be better if you give the money to charities.

## Speaking

عمل اقتراحات  
- لعمل اقتراحات يمكن أن نقول:

## 2) Giving opinion

## Opinion

- In my opinion, .....

- I see what you mean. ....

- I agree that it's very important to ..  
أفقد له مهم جداً .....

## Response

- I'm not sure .....

- but I also think it's important to ....

لكن اعتقد له من المهم أيضاً ..  
فكرة رائعة.

أبداء الرأي

-لبدء الرأي سنستخدم العبارات الآتية:

## General Exercises

on Lessons 5 &amp; 6

## 1) Complete the following dialogue:

Sandy and Reham are giving opinions about charities.

Sandy : Hi! Reham. What do you think of charity work?

Reham : 1 .....

Sandy : Do you think rich people should help charities?

Reham : 2 .....

Sandy : 3 .....

Reham : Yes, I think it would be better if everyone helps.

Sandy : 4 .....

Reham : Some people can give money; others can volunteer to work there.

Sandy : Do you think we can do that?

Reham : 5 .....

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Vocabulary

1. I write my diary online on my .....  
a. lamp      b. log      c. choir      d. blog
2. I buy chips from the ..... at my school every day.  
a. canteen      b. kitchen      c. market      d. bank
3. My friend forgot his book so I ..... my book with him.  
a. lost      b. sold      c. shared      d. decided
4. .... my opinion, English is the most important language.  
a. On      b. In      c. For      d. By
5. .... the way home, I saw a terrible accident.  
a. At      b. For      c. On      d. In
6. The teacher asked me to do my homework as quickly ..... possible.  
a. so      b. as      c. such      d. that
7. The opposite of "usual" is .....  
a. usually      b. common      c. usable      d. unusual
8. The manager of the company decided ..... us presents.  
a. giving      b. give      c. to give      d. to giving
9. They got married ..... the end of the film.  
a. at      b. on      c. in      d. of
10. I usually communicate with my friends ..... social media.  
a. over      b. on      c. in      d. at

## Review

## Vocabulary

random	عشوائي (غير مقصود)	blog	مدونة على الانترنت	smile (n)	ابتسامة
stranger	شخص غريب	cruel	قاسي	feed (fed) (v)	يُطعم
fantastic	رائع	servant	خادم	behave (d)	يتصرف
kindness	طيبة/عطف	princess	أميرة	share (d)	يتقاسم/يشارك
bin	سلة مهملات	beggar	مسنول	donate (d)	يتبرع
lift	مصعد (استشير)	volunteer	منطوعة	pick up (ed)	يلتقط
messy	فوضوي (غير منظم)	owner	المالك	help (ed)	يساعد
donation	تبرع	community	مجتمع محلي (عبري)		
disabled	مقاع	boarding school	مدرسة داخلية		
the disabled	محبذو الإعاقة				

## Jobs in the house

cooking	لطهي	tidying up	الترتيب
looking after	الرعاية	washing up	غسل الأطباق
putting away the clothes	وضع الملابس في مكانها المعتاد	taking out the rubbish	إخراج القمامة

## Language

## 1 have to / don't have to, has to / doesn't have to

• للتعبير عن الإلزام/الضرورة أو في القواعد معينة من الضروري أن تفعلها ولا خيار أمامنا نستخدم:

I / We / You / They / اسم جمعي + **have to**

يجب أن... مصدر الفعل + **inf.**

He / She / It / اسم مفرد + **has to**

Ex. I **have to** be quiet at the library.

• للتعبير عن (عدم الإلزام) في المضارع الشيء ليس من الضروري أن تفعلها نستخدم:

I / We / You / They / اسم جمعي + **don't have to**

ليس من الضروري أن... مصدر الفعل + **inf.**

He / She / It / اسم مفرد + **doesn't have to**

Ex. Tamer **doesn't have to** walk to school. He has got a bike.

## 2) should / shouldn't

للصحيحة بفعل شيء سنستخدم (should)

Ex. We should always do acts of kindness.  
للصحيحة بعدم فعل شيء سنستخدم (should not / shouldn't)

Ex. We shouldn't watch TV all day.

## 3) Relative clauses / pronouns

سنستخدم (عبارات / ضمائر الوصل) لتفخيرا عن الاسم الذي نتكلم عنه، وقد يكون هذا الاسم اشخص / شيء / حيوان / مكان / زمان.

who (that) → for people

Ex. Omar is an architect. He designs buildings.  
= Omar is the architect who / that designs buildings.

which (that) → for things / animals

Ex. That's a schoolbag. It has many books.  
= That's the schoolbag which / that has many books.

where → for places

Ex. This is a cinema. I always see movies there.  
= This is the cinema where I always see movie.

when → for time

Ex. This month is July. I was born in July.  
= July is the month when I was born.

## Speaking

## 1) A discussion about jobs in the house

مناقشة عن القيام بمهام في المنزل

سأل ونجيب عن القيام بمهام في المنزل كالآتي:

## Question

- Do you help in your house?
- What sort of jobs do you have to do at home?

## Answer

- Yes, I do.
- No, I don't
- I have to tidy up my room, wash up... etc.

## 2) Discussing random acts of kindness

مناقشة أعمال الخير غير المخطط لها

## Question

- Do you think people should always do random acts of kindness? Why?

## Answer

- Yes, I think so because people should always help each other.

## 3) Talking about charities

التحدث عن الجمعيات الخيرية

## Question

- What charities do you know?
- How do people help in them?

## Answer

- I know a charity which helps....
- They donate money to them.

## 4) Making suggestions

عمل اقتراحات

## Suggestion

- I think that .... should

## Response

- I think it would be better if .....

## 5) Giving opinion

إبداء الرأي

## Opinion

- In my opinion, .....
- I see what you mean.
- I agree that it's very important to ..

## Response

- I'm not sure.....
- but I also think it's important to ....
- Good idea.

## General Exercises on Unit 5

## 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Amal and Malak are talking about what they have to do at home.

Amal : Hi Malak. What housework do you do at home?

Malak : .....

Amal : Do you help your mother with the washing up?

Malak : .....

Amal : My sister helps to clean the table after meals.

Malak : .....

Amal : I also help my mother clean the kitchen.

Malak : I think you are very helpful.

Amal : .....

Malak : .....

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Vocabulary

1. Hala has to put ..... her toys

a. up b. out c. away d. on

2. Samir helps to clean beaches and ..... rubbish.

a. tidies up b. picks up c. washes up d. buys

3. Nader and his brother have to ..... ready for school.

a. make b. get c. let d. eat

4. What ..... acts of kindness should you do next week?

a. cruel b. ugly c. bad d. random

5. Those children are .....; they always hurt their pets.

a. cruel b. pretty c. disabled d. delicious

6. Soha joined a ..... school. She comes home every weekend.

a. spending b. boarding c. standing d. building

7. People donate money to the charity and they help to ..... the animals.

a. eat b. kill c. feed d. hit

8. You should ..... your bag ready for school at night.

a. add b. make c. bring d. get

9. That's the horse ..... won the race.

a. which b. who c. where d. when

## Language

10. The person ..... I love most is my mother.

a. which b. when c. who d. where

11. The café ..... I meet my friends sells delicious ice cream.

a. when b. where c. which d. who

12. These are the photos ..... I took at the zoo last week.

a. when b. who c. which d. where

13. You left the bag ..... you bought at the weekend at my house!

a. where b. which c. who d. when

14. All workers ..... wear uniforms inside the factory.

a. has to b. hasn't c. have to d. doesn't have to

15. Children ..... eat a lot of sweets.

a. shouldn't b. have to c. should d. has to

16. Students shouldn't ..... (forget) how it feels when they start school.

a. You ..... (shouldn't) study hard to pass the exam.

17. We bought a flat ..... (who) is near our school.

18. That's the restaurant ..... (when) we had lunch yesterday.

19. Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Random acts of kindness"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Paragraphs & Emails

## 1- School rules

(Lessons 1 & 2)

**To** : george(ino)55@yaho.com  
**From** : fadi(a)666@gmail.com  
**Subject** : My school rules

Dear George(ino),

How are you? There are some school rules that I have to follow. At school, I have to arrive on time. I have to listen to my teacher. I don't have to answer all the questions. I have to wear the school uniform. I don't have to play at break. I have to behave well. In the library, I have to keep quiet. I have to give the books back on time. I have to put away the books after I read them. I mustn't eat at the library.

Yours,

Fadi(a)

## 2- A short story about a girl helping the poor (Lessons 3 & 4)

I read a story about a girl. She lived in a small village. She used to help some old people. She sometimes bought them food, medicine and clothes. Although the girl wasn't rich, she thought of other people. Helping poor people can make the community more useful. So, if we all think like that girl, we will have a happy life.

## 3- Random acts of kindness (General Exercises)

I decided to do one act of kindness every day. I bought my mother flowers. I gave my seat to an old man on the bus. I donated money and clothes to a charity. My friend Hossam did some acts of kindness, too. He gave money to a beggar. He gave directions to a stranger. He helped an old woman cross a street.

## 4- Jobs in the house (Al Azhar)

I help my mother with the kitchen work. Sometimes, I put away things. I often help my dad with the garden plants. I help my brother with his maths homework. I usually help my sister with her science lessons.

## 5- How I can help people in my community (Test)

I can do many acts of kindness in my community. I can work as a volunteer in a charity. I can pick up rubbish. I can help my neighbours do the shopping. I can donate things and money to a charity. I can help my old neighbours. I can keep the street clean. This helps the street cleaners so much. I can help beggars who are hungry. I have to be helpful in my community.

## Al Azhar Test



### A Listening

#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The speaker works for a .....  
 a. school                      b. factory                      c. charity                      d. hospital
- This work makes the speaker .....  
 a. tired                      b. sad                      c. angry                      d. happy

### B Language Functions

#### 2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

- Amina** : I think we should do acts of kindness.  
**Nagwa** : .....
- Ammar** : .....  
**Maher** : Yes, I tidy up my bedroom.

### D Usage

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:  
 1. Old's mother was angry when she found her room .....  
 a. messy                      b. tidy                      c. clean                      d. good
- You ..... listen to what your parents say.  
 a. don't have to                      b. have to                      c. has to                      d. doesn't have to
- We all should help .....  
 a. disabled                      b. the disabled                      c. unable                      d. able
- Naguib Mahfouz was the writer ..... won the Noble Prize.  
 a. who                      b. when                      c. which                      d. whose
- All charities depend on ..... of money.  
 a. opinions                      b. donations                      c. decorations                      d. decisions
- A** : ..... I learn English to get a job. **B** : Yes, you should.  
 a. Have                      b. Am                      c. Should                      d. Does

Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Charity is one of the best things that a person can do in their life. For some people, the true meaning of life is the joy of giving. They enjoy doing charity work. They love to help the poor. Today, the world is in greater need of charity than ever. People should help everyone in their area, such as people with illnesses, or who don't work. If all rich people give donation of money, food and clothes to help the poor, then the world will be better.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is charity?
2. What do some people love to do?
3. What can rich people donate to charities?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "They" refers to .....  
a. charities      b. people      c. the rich      d. the poor
5. If all rich people donate to charities, the world will become .....  
a. better      b. fatter      c. faster      d. bigger

Writing

5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Jobs in the house"

أجاب عنه قبل الحزن

يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة المقبرة الوصفية:

- Are you helpful in the house?
- How do you help in your house?
- What jobs can you do in your house?
- In my house, I help my mother ..... - I put away .....
- I help my dad with ..... - I help my brother/ sister with .....

TEST



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. One day, Eman had some .....  
a. money      b. pens      c. books      d. rulers
2. She went to the baker's to buy some .....  
a. buns      b. cakes      c. bread      d. fruit
3. When Eman came out, she saw a .....  
a. doctor      b. farmer      c. vet      d. beggar
4. She gave the person ..... of her cakes.  
a. many      b. few      c. most      d. little

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed is asking Ashraf about the school project.

- Ahmad : What is this week's school project about?  
Ashraf : 1 .....
- Ahmad : How can we encourage our friends to clean the school?  
Ashraf : 2 .....
- Ahmad : 3 .....
- Ashraf : We can start a competition for the cleanest class.  
Ahmad : 4 .....
- Ashraf : The headteacher and some other teachers will help us.  
Ahmad : It's a great project. I hope to do it well.  
Ashraf : 5 .....

## Reading Comprehension

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The air around the earth contains different gases. One of these is carbon dioxide. Although it is a natural gas, it can also be caused by pollution. Pollution from cars and factories produces carbon dioxide. This is a problem. If there is too much carbon dioxide in the air, the temperature on the earth will increase. If the earth gets hotter, the ice in the Arctic and Antarctica will melt quickly. The sea will get higher and this will cause floods.

## A. Answer the following questions:

1. What does the air around the earth contain?
2. What is carbon dioxide?
3. What does the underlined word "it" refer to?

## B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. If the earth gets hotter, the ice in the Arctic will .....  
a. freeze      b. melt      c. cool      d. rain
5. If the seas get higher, they may cause .....  
a. droughts      b. earthquakes      c. volcanoes      d. floods
6. .... can be caused by pollution.  
a. Oxygen      b. Carbon dioxide      c. Nitrogen      d. Hydrogen

## D Vocabulary and Structure

## 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My family has moved to a new house and luckily our new ..... are nice.  
a. neighbours      b. relatives      c. friends      d. teachers
2. There is an important test tomorrow, so you ..... play video games. **SB**  
a. should      b. have to      c. has to      d. shouldn't
3. Boots are fun but they can be dangerous, so you ..... do what your teachers tell you. **WB**  
a. don't have to      b. have to      c. shouldn't      d. can't
4. A ..... is the daughter of a king or queen. **WB**  
a. prince      b. beggar      c. princess      d. farmer
5. The place ..... I lost my watch was the garden. **SB**  
a. when      b. who      c. that      d. where

6. Sorry the place is so ..... I haven't had time to tidy it up.  
a. clean      b. tidy      c. messy      d. nice
7. Don't be ..... to animals.  
a. careful      b. cruel      c. red      d. messy
8. What is the name of a charity which you would like to ..... money to? **WB**  
a. donate      b. steal      c. burn      d. sell
9. A ..... takes you to the top of a building without using the stairs. **WB**  
a. lift      b. lift      c. gift      d. ladder
10. This kind woman always has a ..... on her face.  
a. file      b. mile      c. smile      d. tail

## 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I love the trainers ..... (who) are blue and red. **WB**
2. She ..... (should) carry heavy things. She is tired.
3. This is the company ..... (when) I worked for last year.
4. You ..... (should) run if your legs hurt. **WB**

## E Writing

## 6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"How you can help people in your community"

(محتاج عنده فني الاحداث)

يحتاج من خلال الادوية عن الاسئلة التالية ككتابة الفقرة:

- What can you do to people in your community?
- How can you help for a charity?
- What can you do to help your community?
- I can work as a volunteer in .....
- I can help the neighbours .....
- I can donate things .....

يمكن استخدام العبارات التالية:

# 6

UNIT

## Different environments

### Objectives

#### Reading:

A presentation about climate change graphs; city profiles; a newspaper report

#### Writing:

A profile about where you live; a paragraph on how to use less water; a short report for a school newspaper; a presentation about the climate

#### Listening:

Radio news reports; a podcast about tourism

#### Speaking:

Solving environmental problems; Suggesting solutions to a problem

#### Language:

(not) as + adjective + as; Present simple passive

#### Life Skills:

Negotiating; Problem-solving

#### Values:

Coexistence values

#### Issues:

Environmental and developmental issues

### Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 54-57 WB pages 109-110

### Key Vocabulary

air pollution	تلوث الهواء	x-axis	محور السينات
water pollution	تلوث المياه	y-axis	محور الصادات
drought	جفاف	comfortable	مريح
flood	فيضان	green	صديق البيئة
rubbish	قمامة	environment	البيئة
polluted	فلوث	climate change	تغير المناخ
line graph	رسم بياني خطي	melt (ed)	يدوب - يذوب - يصفهر
bar chart	رسم بياني بالعمدة		

### Vocabulary

fires	حرائق	planet	كوكب
electric train / bus	قطار / أوبس كهربائي	temperature	درجة الحرارة
presentation	عرض تقديمي	serious	خطير / جد
user	مستخدم	recycling	إعادة التدوير
recently	حديثاً / مؤخرًا	cause (n) (d)	سبب / يسبب
relaxing	مريح للاعصاب	continue (d)	يواصل / يستمر
fuel	وقود	warm (ed)	يحدّر
volunteer	مطوّع		

### Continents, Countries, Cities & Mountains

Australia	أستراليا	Saudi Arabia	المملكة العربية السعودية
Europe	أوروبا	Mount Kenya	جبل كينيا
Africa	أفريقيا	Jabal Mousa	جبل موسى
Iraq	دولة العراق	Mount Kilimanjaro	جبل كلمنجارو
Jordan	دولة الأردن	Mount Catherine	جبل سانت كاترين

## Expressions & Prepositions

write in English	يكتب باللغة الإنجليزية	get smaller	يصغر
as much as	كثير مثل	report for	يكتب تقرير لـ
changing world	العالم المتغير	careful about	يكون حريص بشأن
green forms of transport	وسائل المواصلات صديقة للبيئة	know about	يخبر عن

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs	Past simple	Past Participle
show	showed	shown
become	became	become
speck	spoke	spoken

Word	Meaning	Opposite
usual	معتاد	unusual
dry	جاف	wet
cheap	رخيص	expensive
clean	نظيف	dirty
		غير معتاد مطر / مبتل غالي الثمن مستنقع

## Definitions

air pollution	تلوث الهواء	dirt and dangerous chemicals <sup>(1)</sup> in the air, often from traffic <sup>(2)</sup>
axis (x and y)	محور (السينات والصادات)	the lines <sup>(3)</sup> that have numbers / information <sup>(4)</sup> on it on a graph (x at the bottom and y at the side)
bar chart	رسم بياني بالعمدة	a diagram <sup>(5)</sup> or picture that uses bars (rectangles) of different colours and sizes to show different amounts
climate change	تغير المناخ	changes in the Earth's weather caused by things that humans <sup>(6)</sup> are doing
drought	جفاف	when there is no rain for a long time and everything is very dry
flood	فيضان	a large amount of water that covers an area that was dry before

- ١- مواد كيميائية
- ٢- حركة المرور
- ٣- خطوط
- ٤- معلومات
- ٥- رسم بياني
- ٦- البشر

green	صديق للبيئة	good for the environment
line graph	رسم بياني خطي	a diagram or picture that uses lines to show how different pieces of information are related to <sup>(1)</sup> each other
melt	ذوب / يذوب / ينصهر	change from ice to water
polluted	تلوث	made dirty <sup>(2)</sup> or dangerous by chemicals or other dirty things
serious	خطير	bad or dangerous enough to make you worried

## Language Notes

### 1) electricity - electric - electronic

- **electricity** كهرباء
- Ex. My car doesn't use fuel. It runs on **electricity**.
- **electronic** إلكتروني
- Ex. Most kids love electronic games.
- **electric** (يعمل بالكهرباء) كهربى
- Ex. We will drive **electric** cars in the future..

### 2) climate - weather

- **climate** المناخ (حالة الجو الدائمة في مكان ما)
- Ex. Most tourists like to visit Egypt where the **climate** is warm.
- **weather** الطقس (حالة الجو المؤقتة في مكان ما)
- Ex. What is the **weather** like today in Egypt?  
- It's cold and rainy.

### Check on Language Notes ✓

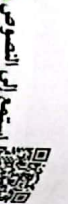
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- ..... cars are good for the environment.
  - Electricity
  - Electric
  - Electronic
  - Electrician
- Our city has a warm.....
  - drought
  - flood
  - graph
  - climate



## Audioscript

SB Page (55)



استمع إلى الصوت

**Girl** : Hello, this is Jomana reporting for *Student Radio* in *Cairo*. Recently, volunteers who were working to clean the River Nile say they are finding more a canal rubbish in the water. They say the canal is dirtier and more polluted than ever before. They are warning people who live in the city to be more careful about where they put their rubbish to try to help the canal become cleaner.

**Boy** : This is Karim reporting from Alexandria for *Student FM*. Today, our city started using new electric buses. The buses will help Alexandria be cleaner and greener. The buses will mean there is less air pollution in the city, so they are greener and they are also cheaper to run. I spoke to some bus users who said the new buses were quieter than the old buses and also the seats were more comfortable.



- 1- يقدم تقرير  
2- مؤخرًا  
3- آخر تسبب  
4- آخر تلوث  
5- يحدد  
6- آخر نظافة  
7- أخيراً  
8- تلوث الهواء  
9- صديق للبيئة  
10- ملائم

## Reading

SB Page (56)

### A changing world

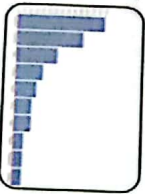
• Today's presentation is about climate change. This means our planet is changing. Here are two places that are different now.

#### Australia

In this line graph, the x-axis shows the year and the y-axis shows the change in temperature. You can see that the climate in Australia is becoming hotter and drier. More droughts mean worse fires than ever before. Climate change means Australia is a more dangerous place to live.

#### Mount Kilimanjaro

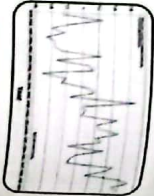
This bar chart shows that warmer and drier weather is melting the ice on top of Africa's highest mountain, Mount Kilimanjaro. You can see that the area of ice is much smaller than 140 years ago. The good news is that the ice is not melting as fast as before. However, the ice is continuing to get smaller.



Say it correctly

\* drought

لا تنطق الحروف (gh) في هذه الكلمة



- 1- كوكب  
2- رسم بياني خطي  
3- محور السينات  
4- محور الصادات  
5- درجة الحرارة  
6- جفاف  
7- حرائق  
8- تآكل الصلابة  
9- رسم بياني بالعمدة  
10- يذوب  
11- يواصل/يستمر

## Exercises on Vocabulary

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ayman is asking Mr Hossam about climate change.

- Ayman** : Excuse me, Mr Hossam. Can I ask you some questions?  
**Mr Hossam** : 1 .....  
**Ayman** : 2 .....?  
**Mr Hossam** : Oh, good! First of all we shouldn't throw rubbish everywhere.  
**Ayman** : 3 ..... Is that right?  
**Mr Hossam** : Yes. Rubbish may make the rivers and canals polluted, too.  
**Ayman** : 4 .....?  
**Mr Hossam** : We can use green forms of transport to stop pollution.  
**Ayman** : Thank you very much.  
**Mr Hossam** : 5 .....

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

#### SB, WB & Exams

1. Please take your ..... home; do not leave it in the park. **WB**  
a. fuel b. drought c. rubbish d. flood  
2. Not many fish live in the river because it is very ..... **WB**  
a. tasty b. disabled c. fantastic d. polluted  
3. Bikes are a ..... form of transport because they use no fuel. **WB**  
a. white b. green c. blue d. red  
4. There was no rain for four months this winter, so now there is d/cn .....  
a. flood b. volcano c. earthquake d. drought  
5. Ali is a ..... in a hospital. He works for no money to help people.  
a. volunteer b. patient c. coach d. pilot

لترتيب الصفات حسب القوة

many	كثير (اسم/عد)	more than	→	the most
few	قليل (اسم/عد)	fewer than	→	the fewest
much	كثير (اسم/عد)	more than	→	the most
little	قليل (اسم/عد)	less than	→	the least
good	جيد	better than	→	the best
bad	سيء	worse than	→	the worst
far	بعيد	farther / further than	→	the farthest / furthest

Ex. Ahmed has books as many as Osman has.

Ex. Mona makes money as much as Amd does.

Ex. The weather today is worse than it was yesterday.

• للتعبير عن تساوي شخصين / شئين في نفس الصفة نستخدم:

اسم + as + صفة + as + اسم

Ex. Droughts are as serious as floods.

• للتعبير عن عدم تساوي شخصين / شئين في نفس الصفة نستخدم:

اسم + be + not as + صفة + as + اسم

Ex. Australia is not as hot as Africa.

• عند التعبير عن (عدم) التساوي بين فعلين نستخدم:

فعل + فعل + as + (not) as + فعل

Ex. Ahmed plays the piano as beautifully as he plays the flute.

Ex. She doesn't speak English as carefully as she writes it.

لتكوين المقارنة / التفضيل

large → larger close → closer

• يضاف (r) فقط لصفات الصفة الصغيرة المسماة e تحول إلى aضيف أو est :

noisy → noisier than → the noisiest / busy → busier than → the busiest

• إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن تحول إلى aضيف أو est :

big → bigger than → the biggest / thin → thinner than → the thinnest



Ex. Mona is clever but Hobba is **cleverer** (than her).

## Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

- I think that air pollution is as serious ..... water pollution. **SB**  
a. just b. as c. too d. also
- Bikes are ..... than cars. **SB**  
a. green b. greenest c. greener d. more green
- The volunteers want to make the canal ..... **SB**  
a. cleaner b. more clean c. cleanest d. most clean
- Mount Kenya is not ..... as Mount Kilimanjaro. **SB**  
a. higher b. highest c. more high d. as high
- The electric buses in Alexandria cause ..... air pollution. **SB**  
a. less b. tallest c. least d. many
- Recycling is ..... as using less electricity for the environment. **SB**  
a. more important b. less important c. not important d. as important
- Europe is not as ..... as Australia. **SB**  
a. dry b. drier c. driest d. less dry
- The pollution in the countryside is not as ..... as the pollution in cities. **SB**  
a. worse b. bad c. worst d. most bad
- Seats on the new buses are more comfortable ..... the old buses. **SB**  
a. then b. that c. there d. than
- A train is not as fast ..... a plane. **WB**  
a. so b. too c. as d. just

11. Saudi Arabia is not ..... as Jordan.

- a. wetter b. as wet c. wettest d. more wet

12. Nessmo writes in English as ..... as she speaks it.

- a. carefully b. more careful c. most careful d. careful

13. The drought this year is not as ..... as it was last year.

- a. more dangerous b. less dangerous c. dangerous d. dangerously

14. This book is bad, but the other book is .....

- a. worse b. more worse c. badly d. worst

15. France is not as ..... as South Africa.

- a. hotter b. hottest c. the hottest d. hot

Bit by Bit Exercises

16. The box is not as ..... as the chair.

- a. heavy b. heavier c. heaviest d. more heavy

17. The canal is ..... polluted than it was before.

- a. most b. more c. little d. few

18. There weren't people as ..... as I expected.

- a. much b. fewest c. many d. little

19. Our team didn't play as ..... as they usually did.

- a. good b. better c. best d. well

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

SB, WB & Exams

1. Mount Catherine is a ..... (high) mountain than Jabal Mousa.

2. Tamer likes reading as ..... (many) as he likes playing computer games.

3. The football players are not playing as ..... (good) as they did last week.

4. I think that the river is more polluted ..... (then) it was last year.

5. Which is ..... (more far) to walk to, the park or the museum?

6. Trains are ..... (comfortable) than cars.

7. Australia is not ..... (not as) Africa.

8. Zeinab is ..... (good) than Sandy at maths.

9. The city isn't ..... (quiet) as the countryside.

10. The exam was ..... (easy) than I expected.

11. Planes are ..... (fast) than trains.

12. This car is ..... (attractive) than that car.

13. Heba is ..... (short) than Sama.

14. The place which I live in is very ..... (quietly).

15. English is ..... (most) interesting than math.

16. Alexandria is ..... (big) than Helwan.

General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2

1. Complete the following dialogue:

Mustafa is talking to Mona about the city and the countryside.

Mustafa : Do you like the city or the countryside?

Mona : 1 .....

Mustafa : 2 .....

Mona : Because the countryside is quieter than the city.

Mustafa : 3 .....

Mona : Yes, the city is more interesting than the countryside.

Mustafa : What can you do in the countryside?

Mona : 4 .....

Mustafa : Which is more attractive: the countryside or the city?

Mona : 5 .....

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. He worked as a/an ..... for a charity that helps disabled people.

- a. farmer b. actor c. volunteer d. tourist

2. Climate ..... means it's getting warmer around the world.  
a. change b. charge c. challenge d. stage

3. You should not throw ..... in the street.  
a. flood b. rubbish c. drought d. earthquake

4. The smoke from factories and cars cause air .....  
a. lungs b. balloon c. population d. pollution

5. Many rivers and lakes are seriously .....  
a. called b. donated c. polluted d. visited

6. The electric bus is ..... as it doesn't cause pollution.  
a. green b. blue c. black d. pink

7. .... can happen during heavy rain.  
a. Floods b. Droughts c. Fires d. Volcanoes

Language

8. She walks as ..... as she rides the bike.  
a. slow b. slower c. slowest d. slowly

9. Sara isn't as ..... as Hoda.  
a. most beautiful b. more beautiful c. beautiful d. the most beautiful

10. Coronavirus is ..... dangerous than the flu.  
a. most b. more c. best d. better

11. This car is faster ..... the other cars in the market.  
a. than b. then c. the d. that

12. Hazem is ..... as Moher.  
a. old b. older c. oldest d. as old

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Is your cousin ..... (more old) than your brother?

2. This train goes ..... (fast) than the last one.

3. This new phone is ..... (more bad) than my old one!

4. Which are ..... (good) rivers or canals.

5. Osman talks as ..... (quiet) as he sings.

6. Mazen is ..... (fit) than before.

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 58-60 WB pages 111-112

Key Vocabulary

canal	قناة مائية	tourism	السياحة
cotton	القطن	pet	حيوان منزل
mosque	مسجد	(be) located	يقع (موجود) في مكان
ship	سفينة	locate (d)	يحدد موقع / يقع في
sweets	حلوى	damage (d)	يُلحق / يدمر
wildlife	الحياة البرية		

Vocabulary

north-east	شمال شرق	metal can	علبة معدن
wheat	قمح	particular	خاص / معين
black honey	عسل اسود	monuments	آثار
turtle	سلحفاة بحرية	green energy	طاقة خضراء / بيئية
coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية	exactly	بالضبط
the Ministry of Tourism	وزارة السياحة	position	وضع / مكانة
nature reserves	محميات طبيعية	presenter	مقدم برامج
environment matters	امور / قضايا بيئية	produce (d)	ينتج
podcast	نشرة صوتية	recycle (d)	يعيد تدوير
travel companies	شركات السفر	introduce (d)	يقدم
recycling bins	سلات إعادة التدوير	respect (ed)	يحترم
diver	غطاس		

Cities

Places

Port Said	مدينة بورسعيد	the Suez Canal	قناة السويس
Suez	مدينة السويس	The Nile	نهر النيل
Minia	مدينة المنيا	Al-Ahmadi Mosque	المسجد الاحمدي
Tanta	مدينة طنطا	the Red Sea Coast	ساحل البحر الاحمر

## Expressions & Prepositions

Expressions	Prepositions
my home city	مساكني
green hotels	فنادق صديقة للبيئة
green tourism	سياحة صديقة للبيئة
go on a boat trip	يذهب في رحلة بالقارب
go scuba diving	يغطس باستخدام جهاز تنفس
as usual	كالمعتاد
as a result	كنتيجة
do water sports	يمارس الرياضات المائية
	famous for
	مشهور بـ
	known for
	معروف بـ
	(be) closed to
	مغلق على
	connected to
	مرتبط بـ
	spotlight on
	تسلط الضوء على
	on farms
	في مزارع
	along the river
	بعناية للنهر
	from around the world
	من جميع أنحاء العالم
	make .. greener
	يجعلها أكثر ملائمة للبيئة

Configuration of		Irregular Verbs	
Present	Past simple	Past Participle	
grow	grew	grown	
catch	caught	caught	
know	knew	known	
	عرف		

Word	Meaning	Opposite
known	معروف	غير معروف
connect	يربط / يتصل	يفصل / يقطع الاتصال
	famous	unknown
	link	disconnect

### Definitions

canal	قناة مائية	a long area of water made for ships and boats
cotton	قطن	a plant used for making clothes
mosque	مسجد / جامع	a building where you can pray <sup>(2)</sup>
locate	يحدد موقع	find or discover the exact <sup>(3)</sup> position of something
wildlife	الحياة البرية	animals and plants that live in natural conditions <sup>(4)</sup>
tourism	السياحة	the business of providing places to stay and things to do for people who are on holiday

## Language Notes

### 1) coast - beach

• coast ساحل

(المناطق التي يتقابل بها البحر مع اليابسة على الخريطة)

Ex: He drove along the Red Sea Coast.

• beach شاطئ

(المناطق التي بها رمال أو حصي على البحر)

Ex: The kids went to the beach and built sandcastles.

### 2) As a result = so

نتيجة لذلك

Ex: I studied hard. As a result / so, I succeeded

### Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Look at this map. This is the Red Sea.
  - beach
  - river
  - ocean
  - coast
- Mustafa trained well. ...., he won the match.
  - Because
  - As
  - As a result
  - But

## Reading

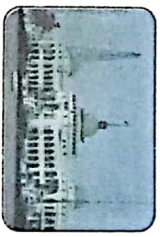
SB Page (68)

### Spotlight<sup>(1)</sup> on ... Port Said

- Port Said is located in<sup>(2)</sup> the north-east<sup>(3)</sup> of Egypt.
- The city is known for its ships, which come and go from around the world.
- Port Said is connected to<sup>(4)</sup> Suez by the Suez Canal.
- Many fish are caught in the sea near Port Said.

### Spotlight on ... Tanta

- Tanta is located in the north of Egypt.
- Lots of cotton<sup>(5)</sup> is grown in the area.
- The city is known for its delicious sweets<sup>(6)</sup>.
- Tanta's beautiful Al-Ahmadi mosque<sup>(7)</sup> is visited by thousands of people every year.



استمع إلى النصوص



- تسلط الضوء
- يقع في
- شمال شرق
- متصلة بـ
- القطن
- حلوى لذيذة
- مسجد المصطفى

My home city is Minya. It is located near the Nile. Lots of food is grown in the local area, like potatoes, wheat<sup>(1)</sup> and sugar. The city<sup>(2)</sup> is known for its delicious "black honey"<sup>(3)</sup>. The honey is made from sugar. Many ancient monuments<sup>(4)</sup> and buildings are found in the city. My city is very beautiful and interesting!



١- قصب  
٢- مدينة  
٣- عسل أسود  
٤- آثار قديمة

### The North Hotel

The North Hotel is located on a lovely beach and every year, the hotel is visited by more and more tourists. However, the hotel owner<sup>(1)</sup> said that last year, there were not as many turtles on the beach as usual. As a result, the hotel is helping the turtles. Parts of the beach are closed to tourists so that turtles are safe. And at night, when the turtles leave their eggs in the sand<sup>(2)</sup>, the hotel workers stop any tourists from visiting the beach.



١- مالك  
٢- زمايل  
٣- رحلات بالقوارب  
٤- طائفة محففة  
٥- ليلة  
٦- رباح

### The South Hotel

The South Hotel is near the coast, and every year, it takes tourists scuba diving. However, workers on the boats believe that coral reefs are often damaged by scuba divers. The hotel is now working with a charity that helps the coral reefs. Now some of the money that tourists pay for the boat trips<sup>(3)</sup> is used to help protect the coral reefs.

### The East Hotel

The East Hotel is very new. Only green energy<sup>(4)</sup> from the sun and wind<sup>(5)</sup> is used at the hotel. The hotel also produces very little rubbish. Most of it is recycled. All the fruit and vegetables at the hotel restaurant are grown on local farms, and the people working at the hotel are all from the local villages.

## AudioScript

Podcast Presenter:

SB Page (60)

Today on Environment Matters<sup>(1)</sup> we're looking at tourism on the Red Sea Coast<sup>(2)</sup>. Salma Fowzy from the Ministry of Tourism<sup>(3)</sup> is here to talk about how we can have tourism in Egypt that doesn't damage<sup>(4)</sup> the environment.

١- لقطي  
٢- ساحل البحر الأحمر  
٣- وزارة السياحة  
٤- يُلحق



**Podcast Presenter:** Hello, Salma. You're interested in helping both tourism<sup>(1)</sup> and the environment, is that right?

**Salma**

**:** Exactly<sup>(2)</sup>. Tourism is very important to Egypt. Our beautiful coasts visited by people from around the world - which is great! But the coast also has coral reefs<sup>(3)</sup> and lots of important wildlife<sup>(4)</sup>. The coral reefs are important for our sharks<sup>(5)</sup>, dolphins and turtles<sup>(6)</sup>.



**Podcast Presenter:** So, what are you doing to protect the environment?

**Salma**

**:** Well, the islands<sup>(7)</sup> on the Red Sea Coast are all nature reserves<sup>(8)</sup>. We are also working with hotels and travel companies<sup>(9)</sup>. We have rules for new buildings to make them greener. We also give prizes to companies that are the best at looking after the environment.

١- السياحة  
٢- بالبحر  
٣- شعب مرجانية  
٤- حياة برية  
٥- أسماك القرش  
٦- سلحفاة  
٧- جزل  
٨- محميات طبيعية  
٩- شركات السفر  
١٠- سلحفاة  
١١- خاص  
١٢- العطش بالسياحة  
١٣- جمال للناس

**Podcast Presenter:** Good idea!

**Salma**

**:** We also think that it's important to teach tourists<sup>(10)</sup> about how to look after our special<sup>(11)</sup> environment when they are on the beaches or doing water sports like scuba diving<sup>(12)</sup>.

# Videascript

SB Page (59)

Egypt has a dry climate<sup>1</sup>. This means there isn't much rain. Every year, about 17 centimetres of rain falls in the north of the country.

It is drier in the south and in the deserts. There is only about 0.25 centimetres of rain in Aswan every year.

Egypt is also hot. It's sometimes 40 centigrade<sup>2</sup> or hotter in Cairo. In other places, the temperature is higher than that. In Luxor it can be 44 centigrade... and the desert is even hotter.

The people and animals that live in the desert need to protect themselves from the sun.

This man is wearing a jellabiya<sup>3</sup>. He is kept cool during the day by his traditional item of clothing.

And this is a fennec fox<sup>4</sup>. Its large ears help to keep it cool. It can be colder in the desert when the sun starts to go down. That's why you only see some animals, like this caracal<sup>5</sup>, in the evening when it isn't as hot as in the afternoon.

But, like in many other countries around the world, Egypt's climate is changing. It's hotter today than it was sixty years ago. And the rain is heavier than it used to be. Houses and buildings are damaged by these heavy rains.

We need to work together to protect the environment, our climate and our world.

١- مناخ جاف  
٢- درجة مئوية  
٣- جلبابي  
٤- فنيكس  
٥- قطة الكاركال

## Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB &amp; Exams

1. Tourists visit the Red Sea from around the .....  
a. world      b. cloud      c. sky      d. mountain
2. The hotel is now working with a charity that helps the coral .....  
a. roofs      b. beef      c. leaf      d. reefs
3. The East Hotel is very new. Only ..... energy is used at the hotel.  
a. black      b. green      c. blue      d. yellow

SB

WB

WB

4. We always pray at a .....

a. clinic

b. workshop

c. mosque

d. hospital

5. Alexandria is .....

a. located

b. in the north of Egypt.

c. dusted

d. stayed

6. The ..... sailed down the Nile River to Aswan.

a. plane

b. bike

c. ship

d. bus

7. We should wear clothes that are made of ..... in summer.

a. cotton

b. wood

c. plastic

d. wool

8. Some factories pollute the water of the Suez .....

a. Stream

b. Canal

c. River

d. Ocean

9. You shouldn't eat many ..... They aren't healthy.

a. fruit

b. vegetables

c. fish

d. sweets

10. .... rubbish is important for the environment.

a. Cycling

b. Burning

c. Recycling

d. Growing

11. Many people have dogs in their houses as .....

a. kids

b. servants

c. pets

d. nurses

12. Earthquakes can ..... many buildings in minutes.

a. damage

b. locate

c. manage

d. recycle

13. I like to study animals and everything related to .....

a. classroom

b. bedroom

c. school

d. wildlife

14. Tourists go scuba ..... in Hurghada and Sharm el-Sheikh.

a. diving

b. driving

c. riding

d. hiding

15. Egypt has a lot of ancient monuments so ..... is important for us.

a. technology

b. tourism

c. computers

d. science

16. I visited Aswan with my family and saw a lot of ancient ..... there.

a. monuments

b. computers

c. planes

d. tablets

17. Paris is famous ..... the Eiffel Tower.

a. from

b. for

c. by

d. in

18. We took a boat on a trip ..... the river.

a. along

b. long

c. a long

d. longer

19. I rode donkeys many times ..... my uncle's farm.

a. at

b. with

c. on

d. about

# Language

## Present simple passive

المبنى للمجهول في زمن المضارع البسيط

تكون الجملة الحبرية في اللغة الإنجليزية كما يلي:

مفعول → فعل → فاعل

ويسمى التركيب السابق مبنى للمجهول (active) حيث أن المفعول هو الفاعل.

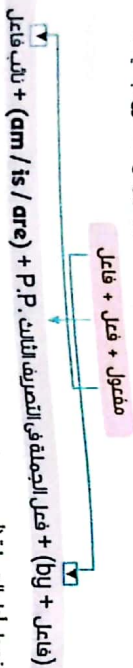
Ex. People grow lots of cotton in the area.

هناك صيغة أخرى للجملة تسمى مبنى للمجهول (passive) وتستخدم هكذا:

1- لا يكون الفاعل مهم ويكون الفعل أهم.

2- لا يكون الفاعل معلوم ويكون المفعول هو الأهم.

وفيما يلي طريقة تحويل الجملة من المبنى للمجهول إلى المبنى للمجهول في زمن المضارع البسيط:



1- يأتي المفعول أول الجملة (أي يصبح نائب فاعل للجملة)

2- نضع (am / is / are) قبل فعل الجملة الأساسي

3- يحول فعل الجملة الأساسي إلى التصريف الثالث

4- يمكن وضع الفاعل آخر الجملة مكان مفعول مسبق بكلمة (by) ويمكن عدم ذكرها

(active)

Farmers grow rice.

فاعل + فعل + مفعول

Rice is grown by farmers.

(passive)

الخط صيغة الاستفهام [هل]:

Ex. Is this house painted by your father?

الخط صيغة الاستفهام بكلمة استفهام:

• لاحظ صيغة الاستفهام بكلمة استفهام: Is this house painted by your father?

Ex. Where is Egypt located on the map?

Ex. The pyramids are visited by many tourists.

2- لاحظ أن كلمة (fish) إذا كان المقصود بها السمك فتعامل معاملة المفعول - أما إذا كان المقصود بها السمك فتعامل معاملة الفاعل وخاصة إذا سبقها كلمة (money)

## Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. Port Said is ..... to Suez by the Suez Canal. **SB**  
a. connect b. connecting c. connects d. connected

2. Taha ..... for his funny stories. **WB**  
a. are known b. knows c. is known d. knew

3. Tourists ..... hundreds of photos of the Pyramids every day. **WB**  
a. is taken b. take c. taken d. are taken

4. The city ..... for its ships, which come and go from around the world. **SB**  
a. is knowing b. is known c. known d. knows

5. Many ancient monuments and buildings are ..... in the city. **SB**  
a. found b. find c. finding d. finds

6. Al-Ahmadi mosque is visited ..... thousands of people every year. **SB**  
a. to b. for c. by d. with

7. The city ..... known for its delicious 'black honey'. **SB**  
a. am b. are c. were d. is

8. Lots of food is ..... in the local area, like potatoes, wheat and sugar. **SB**  
a. grow b. grew c. grows d. grown

9. The North Hotel is ..... on a lovely beach. **WB**  
a. locate b. located c. locates d. locating

10. Coral reefs are often ..... by scuba divers. **WB**  
a. damaging b. damages c. damaged d. damage

11. Honey is ..... from sugar. **WB**  
a. made b. make c. makes d. making

12. Lots of cotton ..... in the area. **SB**  
a. are grown b. is grown c. grows d. is grow

13. Many fish are ..... in the sea near Port Said. **SB**  
a. caught b. catching c. catches d. catch

14. Parts of the beach are ..... to tourists so that turtles are safe. **WB**  
a. to closing b. closing c. closes d. closed

15. The book ..... by Hany. **WB**  
a. is reading b. is read c. reads d. has read

16. .... this book written by Noguib Mahfouz? **WB**  
a. Is b. Are c. Can d. Has

Bit by Bit Exercises

17. Football is ..... all around the world.
  - a. playing
  - b. play
  - c. played
  - d. plays
18. A lot of vegetables ..... in Egypt.
  - a. grown
  - b. are grown
  - c. is grown
  - d. to growing
19. This student ..... every day at school.
  - a. is punished
  - b. are punished
  - c. punish
  - d. punishing

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB, WB & Exams

1. Port Said is ..... (locate) in the north-east of Egypt. SB
2. Giza is ..... (knowing) for its ancient pyramids. WB
3. A lot of oranges ..... (is) grown along the river. 2023 ج. ١٤٤٥ / ١٤٤٦ هـ
4. The museum ..... (visit) by lots of people every year. 2022 ج. ١٤٤٣ / ١٤٤٤ هـ
5. Cheese ..... (mode) from milk. 2023 ج. ١٤٤٤ / ١٤٤٥ هـ
6. Hundreds of photos of the Pyramids ..... (take) every day.
7. In summer, more ice-cream ..... (eat) than in winter.
8. Many sweets are ..... (feeding) every day.
9. Tourists ..... (is visited) the Red Sea from around the world.
10. Many trees ..... (cut) to build new cities.
11. English ..... (speck) all over the world.

Bit by Bit Exercises

General Exercises

on Lessons 3 & 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. Pollution can ..... the environment.
  - a. locate
  - b. damage
  - c. recycle
  - d. respect
2. I want to go to the desert to see the animals and their .....
  - a. bedroom
  - b. garage
  - c. school
  - d. wildlife
3. There's a ..... near my house. I always go to pray in it.
  - a. mosque
  - b. club
  - c. library
  - d. cinema
4. We went to Alexandria last summer ..... usual.
  - a. than
  - b. as
  - c. for
  - d. so

Language

Lessons 3 & 4

5. Where ..... ?
  - a. is your car parked
  - b. your car is parked
  - c. is parked your car
  - d. your car parked
6. The environment is ..... by many scientists.
  - a. studies
  - b. studied
  - c. study
  - d. studying
7. Glass is ..... from sand.
  - a. make
  - b. makes
  - c. making
  - d. made
8. .... coffee served here?
  - a. Are
  - b. Do
  - c. Is
  - d. Have

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The city is ..... (know) by tourists for its beautiful buildings. 2023 ج. ١٤٤٤ / ١٤٤٥ هـ
2. Rice ..... (grow) in Egypt by the farmers. 2022 ج. ١٤٤٣ / ١٤٤٤ هـ
3. Cotton ..... (plant) in Egypt.
4. Football matches ..... (watch) all over the world. 2022 ج. ١٤٤٣ / ١٤٤٤ هـ
5. When ..... (lunch is eaten) in your house?

3 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

to your cousin Sherif(a) telling him / her about the place where you live.  
 - Your name is Nadi(a) and your email address is nadi(a)33@yahoo.com.  
 - Your cousin's email address is sherif(a)77@gmail.com

(يمكنك كتابة ما لا يزيد عن ٩٠ كلمة)

يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني:

- Where do you live? - Where is your village / city located?
- What is grown or made there?
- What is visited by tourists in your village / city?
- What is the place also known for?
- I live in .....
- It's located in .....
- The farmers around here grow .....
- The village / city is known for .....

يمكن استخدام الجملات الآتية:

## Key Vocabulary

recycling	إعادة التدوير	recycle (d)	يعيد تدوير
billion (1000 million)	مليار / مليار	remind (ed)	يذكر
souvenir	هدية تذكارية	dism (ed) to	يهدف إلى
riverbank	ضفة النهر	water (ed)	يروي بالماء

استمع إلى المفردات



## Vocabulary

Global Recycling Day	يوم إعادة التدوير العالمي	gas	غاز
city centre	وسط المدينة	tonne	طن (1000 كيلو جرام)
plastic bags	حقائب بلاستيك	solution	حل
plastic pollution	لوث البلاستيك	location	موقع
smoke	دخان	sailing	الإبحار
importance	أهمية	improve (d)	يحسّن
figs	تين	hope (d)	أمل / يطمح
washing	غسيل	clean (ed) up	ينظف
water bottles	زجاجات مياه	collect (ed)	يجمع
event	حدث (عام)	swap (ped)	يبادل شيئاً بشيء
including	مشمولاً على		

## Countries

Tunisia	دولة تونس	Sidi Bou Said	مدينة سيدي بوسعيد في تونس
Germany	دولة ألمانيا	Mersa Alam	مدينة مرسى علم في مصر
South Korea	دولة كوريا الجنوبية	Sidi Barrani	مدينة سيدي براني في مصر
Netherlands	دولة هولندا	Amsterdam	مدينة أمستردام في هولندا

## Cities

## Expressions & Prepositions

lie on the beach	يستلقي على الشاطئ	talk about	يتحدث عن
solve a problem	يحل مشكلة	part of	جزء من
that's an interesting idea	إنه فكرة مثيرة	remind... of	يذكر... بـ
possible solutions	حلول ممكنة	lead to	يؤدي إلى
Well done!	أحسن!	get warmer	يصبح أكثر دفئاً

## Conjugation of

Present	Irregular Verbs	Past simple	Past Participle
sell	بيع	sold	sold
burn	يحرق / يحرق	burnt / burned	burnt / burned
lead	يؤدي	led	led
lie	يرقد / يستلقي	lay	lain

## Word

Meaning	Opposite
the least	the most
real	unreal
حقيقي	غير حقيقي

## Language Notes

### 1) remember - remind

- **remember** يتذكر (من تلقاء نفسه)
- **remind** يذكر (شخص بشيء)
- Ex. I couldn't remember where I lost my keys.
- Ex. Remind me to buy some eggs tonight.
- Ex. This report reminds us of the importance of recycling things.

### 2) souvenir - present

- **souvenir** هدية تذكارية
- **present** هدية
- Ex. Tourists bought souvenirs to remember their visit to Aswon.
- Ex. I got many presents on my birthday.

3 (re-)

use → reuse = use again.  
write → rewrite = write again.

استخدموا لبدء الفعل (re-) Prefix لبدء الفعل (again) لا تأخذوا

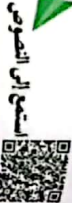
recycle = to cycle again.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: me, please?

1. I can't remember your name. Could you .....  
a. remember b. recall c. review d. remind
2. The ..... I bought from Khon El-Khaili were fantastic.  
a. souvenirs b. prizes c. presents d. presidents
3. Don't throw this box in the bin. You can ..... it.  
a. using b. used c. useable d. reuse

AudioScript SB Page (61)



Aya : The problem is that we all use too much water.

Reem : That's true. So, how can we use less water?

Aya : Well, why don't we try recycling water?

Reem : How could we do that?

Aya : For example, we could use the water from washing to water the plants.

Reem : That's an interesting idea! The plants would like that!



- 1- إعادة تدوير المياه
- 2- ري
- 3- فكرة ذكية

WB Page (113)

Girl : Our school project this week is to think about rubbish at school. In our school, we have a rubbish bin in every room. The students are very good and they always put their rubbish in the bins. At the moment, the rubbish is collected every week and goes to a special place in the city. But when we look inside the bins, we can see that most of the rubbish is made of paper or plastic. We can recycle a lot of this rubbish. So now, before students put things in the rubbish bin, we ask them to think: Can I recycle that? If the answer is yes, they can now put it in a special bin so it can be used again.



- 1- مشروع مدرسي
- 2- سلة فضلة
- 3- مكان خاص
- 4- إعادة تدوير

WB Page (113)

Dina : Look at all the plastic water bottles in the rubbish bin. The problem is that we use too many of them.

Lella : How can we stop people using them?

Dina : Why don't we ask people to use them again?

Lella : How could we do that?

Dina : People could take the bottles home, wash them, and bring them to school the next day.

Lella : That's an interesting idea. We can see what the teacher thinks.



- 1- زجاجات مياه بلاستيكية

Reading SB Page (62)

Students help to clean river

By Khadeeja El-Maghrabi

Last weekend, ten students from Class 7 helped clean up the part of the riverbank near the city centre. The students collected 15 bags of rubbish. Their teacher, Mr Hassan, said the students were sad to find so much rubbish.

"There were lots of plastic bags and bottles," he said. "We even found an old shoe!"

One of the students said, "It was great to clean the riverbank, but we need to teach people to be more careful with their rubbish. Rubbish in the river damages the wildlife."

Well done to the volunteers!



- 1- ضفة النهر
- 2- جمعوا
- 3- طريقة خاطئة
- 4- يلف / يجمع
- 5- الحياة البرية
- 6- استمتعوا

WB Page (114)

- What is Global Recycling Day?

Global Recycling Day is an event in March. It aims to remind people of the importance of recycling things including paper, plastic, metal, water and even gas and oil. It was started in 2018 and there are now recycling events in many different countries.



- 1- يوم إعادة التدوير العالمي
- 2- حدث
- 3- يهدف إلى
- 4- أهمية
- 5- إعادة تدوير
- 6- تشمل على
- 7- مدن
- 8- دول

- So why is recycling so important?

In 2018, people produced<sup>(1)</sup> about 11 billion tonnes<sup>(2)</sup> of rubbish around the world. At the moment, a lot of our rubbish is burned<sup>(3)</sup> and this can lead to climate change<sup>(4)</sup>.

- What are countries doing about the problem?

No country recycles as much rubbish as Germany: it recycles more than 53% than 56% of it. In 1991, it recycled just 3%. South Korea<sup>(5)</sup> recycles more than 53% of its rubbish. Coloured plastic bottles and some plastic cups are not used any more, because you cannot recycle them. Most countries hope to recycle more in the future.

باللغة  
الإنجليزية  
الفرنسية  
الألمانية  
الروسية  
الصينية  
اليابانية  
الهندية  
البرازيلية  
الباكستانية  
البنغالية  
النيوزيلندية  
التركية  
البرتغالية  
الاسبانية  
الitaly  
الغربية  
الشرقية  
الشمالية  
الجنوبية

## Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

- We could use the water from washing to ..... plants.  
a. water b. cut c. drink d. end
- ..... on a beach is more relaxing than working in the city.  
a. Burning b. Damaging c. Lying d. Aiming
- A lot of our rubbish is ..... and this can lead to climate change.  
a. reminded b. burned c. recycled d. reused
- Global Recycling Day is an important ..... in March.  
a. event b. match c. movie d. song
- No country ..... rubbish as much as Germany.  
a. cycles b. rearranges c. rewrites d. recycles
- Tourists bought small statues of the pyramid as .....  
a. meals b. sports c. souvenirs d. time
- The number of people living on Earth is about 8 ..... people.  
a. hundred b. thousand c. million d. billion
- Write down a few notes to ..... yourself of what you want to say.  
a. remind b. remember c. forget d. miss
- The river is polluted because people throw rubbish near the .....  
a. pool b. riverbank c. beach d. sink
- Plastic bags can be recycled or .....  
a. reread b. deleted c. hurt d. reused

Bit by Bit Exercises

2023 الحمار

11. The course ..... to teach children how to speak English well.  
a. cycles b. cleans c. aims d. earns

12. The government is trying to ..... the problem of water pollution.  
a. damage b. solve c. remind d. reuse

13. The truck is very big. It weighs 4 .....  
a. grams b. kilograms c. tonnes d. years

14. He has many hobbies ..... reading, swimming and playing chess.  
a. including b. consisting c. reminding d. containing

15. There was a fire in our house and I couldn't breathe because of the .....  
a. water b. plant c. wood d. smoke

16. This homework is full of mistakes. You should ..... it.  
a. do b. redo c. to do d. undo

## Speaking

### 1) Suggesting solutions to a problem

الاقتراف حلول لمشكلة

لقد اقم اقتراح بحلول لمشكلة نقول:

- Why don't we .....?
- How can/could we .....?
- People could ....

### 2) Discussing how to use less water

مناقشة كيفية استخدام الماء بشكل أقل

Question: How can we use less water?

Answer:

- We should use the water from washing to water the plants.
- We should take showers, not baths.
- We should turn off taps carefully.
- We should water plants in the morning or late at night.
- We should recycle water if it is not very dirty.



## General Exercises

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Aya and Reem are talking about recycling water.

Aya : I'm very sad.

Reem : 1

Aya : The problem is that we all use much water.

Reem : 2

Aya : Well, why don't we try recycling water?

Reem : 3

Aya : We could use the water from washing to water the plants.

Reem : 4

Aya : We can also take short showers.

Reem : 5

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tourists like to buy wonderful ..... from that market.

a. souvenirs      b. cousins      c. clouds      d. mountains

2. We can ..... paper bags to use them again.

a. forget      b. cycle      c. burn      d. recycle

3. A : I solved the problem easily.

B : ..... done!

a. Good      b. Well      c. Great      d. Will

4. Could you ..... me to set the alarm clock?

a. remind      b. recycle      c. remember      d. water

5. Mustafa studies hard and ..... to be an engineer.

a. collects      b. recycles      c. aims      d. solves

6. The cat is ..... lazily on the comfortable chair.

a. leading      b. cycling      c. flying      d. lying

### 3 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"How you can recycle rubbish at school"

اكتب على في آخر الصفحة

Review

WB

يمكنك من خلال الرجاء عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة المقرة الرئيسية:

- Where do you usually put rubbish at school?

- Can rubbish be recycled? How?      - What can't be recycled or reused?

يمكن استخدام العبارة الآتية:

- We put rubbish in ..... at school.

- We can recycle ..... can be used again.

## Review

## Vocabulary

air pollution	تلوث الهواء	climate change	تغير المناخ	billion	مليار / بليون
water pollution	تلوث المياه	comfortable	مريح	souvenirs	هدايا تذكارية
polluted	فوت	canal	قناة مائية	riverbank	حافة النهر
drought	جفاف	cotton	القطن	locade (d)	يحدد موقفة
flood	فيضانات	mosque	مسجد	damage (d)	يتلف / يدمر
rubbish	قمامة	ship	سفينة	recycle (d)	يعيد تدوير
line graph	رسم بياني خطي	sweets	حلوى	melt (ed)	يذوب / يذوب / يذهر
bar chart	رسم بياني بالعمدة	(be) located	واقعة في مكان ما	remind (ed)	يذكر
x-axis	محور السينات	tourism	السياحة	water (ed)	بروي بالماء
y-axis	محور الصادات	pet	حيوان مدل	dim (ed) to	يهدف إلى
green	صديق البيئة	wildlife	الحياة البرية		
environment	البيئة	recycling	إعادة التدوير		

## Language

## 1) Comparative and Superlative Adjectives

تختلف صيغة المقارنة والتفضيل حسب الصفة فإذا كانت قصيرة أو طويلة كما يلي:

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
short adjective "high"	صفة + er + than Ex. Mount Kilimanjaro is higher than that mountain.	the + صفة + est Ex. Mount Everest is the highest mountain.
long adjective "modern"	أكثر / أقل more / less + صفة + than Ex. London is more modern than Cairo.	الأكثر / الأقل the most / the least + صفة Ex. New York is the most modern city.

• على نساوي / عدم نساوي الصفة تستخدم:

نساوي + be (not) + as + صفة + as + نساوي

Ex. Hana is as clever as Fatima.

Ex. Tarek is not as tall as his brother.

## 2) Present simple passive

Review

يكون المبني للمجهول في المضارع البسيط كالآتي:

فاعل + فعل + مفعول

(فاعل + by) + فعل الجملة في المضارع البسيط (active)

Students do experiments. (active)

فاعل + فعل + مفعول

Experiments are done by students. (passive)

• نفس الجملة في المبني للمجهول في المضارع البسيط:

تصريف ثالث + am - is - are + not + تصريف ثالث

Ex. Experiments aren't done by farmers.

Am - Is - Are + تصريف ثالث + تصريف ثالث

Ex. Is Aswan visited by tourists?

- Yes, it is. / - No, it isn't.

للسؤال بكلمة استفهام:

Ex. How is water polluted?

للسؤال بكلمة استفهام:

## Speaking

## 1) Suggesting solutions to a problem

اقتراع حلول لمشكلة

نقديم اقتراح بحلول لمشكلة نقول:

Why don't we.....?

How can/could we.....?

People could.....

## 2) Discussing how to use less water

مناقشة كيفية استخدام الماء بشكل أقل

Question: How can we use less water?

We should use the water from washing to water the plants.

We should take showers, not baths.

We should turn off taps carefully.

# General Exercises on Unit 6

## 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Dina and Leila are talking about recycling.

Dina : Look at all the plastic water bottles in the rubbish bin.

Leila : 1 .....

Dina : The problem is that we use too many of them.

Leila : 2 .....

Dina : Why don't we use them again?

Leila : 3 .....

Dina : We can take them home, wash them, and bring them to school the next day.

Leila : 4 ..... We can see what the teacher thinks.

Dina : He will tell us some ideas to reuse them.

Leila : 5 .....

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Vocabulary

1. .... is very important to Egypt. **SB**

- a. Tourist      b. Tourism      c. Tour      d. Pollution

2. .... reefs are sometimes damaged by boats. **SB**

- a. Car      b. Orcl      c. Coral      d. Plural

3. We need more rain or there might be a ..... **SB**

- a. drought      b. storm      c. flood      d. climate change

4. The Egyptians opened the Suez ..... in 1869. **SB**

- a. River      b. Canal      c. Lake      d. Sea

5. We should clean the river because it is very ..... **SB**

- a. pollution      b. pure      c. polluted      d. fresh

6. Which of these towns is ..... on the north-west coast of Egypt? **SB**

- a. located      b. donated      c. hated      d. closed

7. Tourists bought wonderful ..... from the market. **SB**

- a. planes      b. ships      c. souvenirs      d. buses

### Language

8. Recycling is not as important ..... using less water. **SB**

- a. also      b. too      c. so      d. as

9. A bike is not as ..... as a plane.

- a. fast      b. fastest

10. Cairo is ..... than Tanta.

- a. noisy      b. noisier

11. Alexandria is not as ..... as Giza.

- a. biggest      b. bigger

12. Fish is caught ..... fishermen.

- a. to      b. of

13. Chairs and tables are ..... by carpenters.

- a. made      b. making

14. Ali says that football is not ..... as handball.

- a. more difficult      b. as difficult

15. Our teacher speaks English as ..... as he speaks Arabic.

- a. better      b. best      c. good      d. well

## 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Who is as ..... (taller) as you in the class? **WB**

2. Plastic pollution is ..... (worst) now than it was before. **SB**

3. The fish that we eat are ..... (catch) in boats most mornings. **WB**

4. The Pyramids ..... (is) visited by thousands of people every day. **WB**

5. Which school subject do you find as interesting ..... (so) English? **WB**

## 4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"How to use less water"

(يمكنك كتابة ما لا يقل عن 90 كلمة)

يمكنك من خلال العناية على البيئة كتابة المقطع الرئيسي:

- What do you use water for every day?

- How can we use less water?

- Why is it important to use less water?

يمكن استخدام الجملات التالية:

- Water is very important.....

- We can't live without water.

- We mustn't throw .....

# Paragraphs & Emails

## 1- The place where I live

(Lessons 3 & 4)

To : sherif(a)77@gmail.com  
From : nadi(a)33@yahoo.com  
Subject : The place where I live

Dear Sherif(a),

I live in Aswan. It is located in the south of Egypt. Its weather is warm all year round. It is known for its ancient monuments. Tourists come from all over the world to visit it. Many crops are grown in Aswan. In Aswan you can eat many kinds of fish. People in Aswan are very friendly. You can go there from Cairo by train or by plane. When you go by train, you can see beautiful views.

Yours,

Nadi(a)

## 2- How we can recycle rubbish at school

(Lessons 5 & 6)

In our school, we have a rubbish bins everywhere. The students always put their rubbish in the bins. The rubbish is sent to a special factory in the city. They recycle paper and plastic there. Recycling helps the environment. It makes our environment clean. It also brings a lot of money to countries.

## 3- How to use less water

(General Exercises)

Water is very important. We cannot live without it. Water is necessary for drinking, bathing, cooking, cleaning, washing and so on. We must save and recycle it. People shouldn't waste water. Some people waste a lot of water washing their cars. We should take short showers to save water. We should keep the rivers clean. People mustn't throw rubbish in rivers. They should help clean them all the time.

## 4- Air pollution

(Al Azhar)

Factories and cars cause air pollution. Air in many cities is polluted by traffic and factory wastes. So, we must plant lots of trees in all our cities. This will help clean the air around us. We should use green means of transport such as bikes.

## 5- Helping the environment

(Test)

Environment is the place where we live. It's very important to look after it. There are many ways to do that. We can plant trees. We can recycle rubbish. We mustn't throw waste in rivers. We should use green means of transport. We shouldn't throw plastic bottles or rubbish in rivers. We should use electric cars. We should keep the environment clean to live a happy life.

## Unit 6

## Al Azhar Test



### A Listening

#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

- Port Said is connected to ..... by the Suez Canal.  
a. Sohag b. Minia c. Suez d. Tanta
- Many fish are caught in the sea ..... Port Said.  
a. near b. next to c. above d. on

### B Language Functions

#### 2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:

- Marwa : Why don't we try to save water?

Sara :

- Asmaa : .....

Yasmin : Port Said is located in the north-east of Egypt.

### C Usage

#### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- "....." means change from ice to water.  
a. Freeze b. Boil c. Melt d. Rain
- Eiffel Tower is ..... than Cairo Tower.  
a. taller b. tall c. as tall d. tallest
- You can see different ..... in the zoo.  
a. reefs b. wildlife c. monuments d. podcasts
- Do you know how is coffee ..... ?  
a. made b. making c. to make d. make
- These photos ..... me of the nice days I spent in Luxor.  
a. remember b. reply c. remind d. mind
- The government try to find possible ..... to the pollution problem.  
a. souvenirs b. centres c. locations d. solutions

## D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Global warming is the increase in temperature of the earth because of some harmful chemicals. We all know that humans take in oxygen and give out carbon dioxide. Similarly, plants take in carbon dioxide and give out oxygen. Cutting down a lot of trees reduces the trees and plants in the environment. So, there are very few plants to take in the carbon dioxide in the air. Carbon dioxide is released into the air through factories, too. This carbon dioxide stays in the air if it is not taken in by the trees. This causes air pollution. Carbon dioxide can lead to breathing problems and other medical problems in the future.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. How can factories cause air pollution?
2. What is global warming?
3. What happens if we cut down trees?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. .... take in carbon dioxide and give out oxygen.  
a. Humans      b. Problems      c. Factories      d. Plants
5. .... causes air pollution.  
a. Oxygen      b. Carbon dioxide      c. Temperature      d. Environment

## E Writing

5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Air pollution"

(مجال عن تلوث الهواء)

يمكنك من خلال العناية عن البيئة الزينة كفاءة الطاقة المنزلية.

- Why is air pollution serious?      - How is air in cities polluted?

- How can we keep our planet clean?

يمكن استخدام النباتات الزينة.

- Factories and cars cause .....      - We must plant lots of....

- We should use green means of transport.

# TEST



## A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

لص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Tanta is located in the ..... of Egypt.  
a. north      b. south      c. east      d. west
2. Lots of ..... is grown in the area.  
a. fruit      b. vegetables      c. cotton      d. trees
3. Tanta is known for its delicious.....  
a. cakes      b. buns      c. bread      d. sweets
4. Tanta's beautiful Al-Ahmad ..... is visited by thousands of people every year.  
a. Mosque      b. University      c. School      d. Park

## B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Nader is asking Soad about her favourite city.

Nader : Which city do you like?

Soad : 1 .....

Nader : 2 .....

Soad : Port Said is in the north-east of Egypt.

Nader : 3 .....

Soad : It is known for its ships, which come and go from around the world.

Nader : What about visiting it one day?

Soad : 4 .....

Nader : Thank you.

Soad : 5 .....

Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Dirty water is dangerous to drink. It causes diseases and makes people ill. It can damage the environment, animals and fish. People often throw rubbish into rivers. This makes the rivers look horrible and affects the lives of birds and fish. We must keep the water in our rivers, canals and lakes clean. Smoke and gases from factories and cars mix with water vapour in the air and cause pollution. When the water vapour falls to the ground as rain, the chemicals in the smoke and fumes mix with the rain. This can kill trees, plants, fish and animals.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
2. In your opinion, how can we solve the problem of pollution?
3. What happens when the water vapour falls to the ground as rain?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. \_\_\_\_\_ cause pollution.  
a. Water and juice      b. Metal and wood  
c. Smoke and gases      d. Flowers and trees
5. The underlined word "horrible" means "very \_\_\_\_".  
a. good      b. friendly      c. pleasant      d. bad
6. The underlined word "It" refers to \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. rubbish      b. dirty water      c. environment      d. water vapour

Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. \_\_\_\_\_ clothes are good to wear in summer.  
a. Cotton      b. Plastic      c. Wool      d. Leather
2. When there is not enough rain, there is often a/dn \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. flood      b. storm      c. drought      d. earthquake
3. This month was \_\_\_\_\_ than last month because we had some big storms. **SB**  
a. wettest      b. wetter      c. wet      d. as wet
4. When the planet gets warmer, it is called \_\_\_\_\_ change. **SB**  
a. climate      b. pilot      c. plate      d. date

5. When ice is heated, it \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. freezes      b. cools      c. melts      d. burns
6. Egypt is \_\_\_\_\_ than Jordan.  
a. big      b. biggest      c. bigger      d. as big

7. When there is too much rain, there is often a \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. war      b. flood      c. drought      d. match

8. The museum is \_\_\_\_\_ by lots of tourists every day.  
a. visiting      b. visit      c. visited      d. visits

9. When there is too much smoke from factories, it causes air \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. pollution      b. solution      c. holiday      d. conclusion

10. I bought a model Eiffel Tower as a \_\_\_\_\_ when I visited Paris.  
a. Prize      b. souvenir      c. present      d. tool

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Mohammed Salah \_\_\_\_\_ (known) by people everywhere. **WB**
2. Who in your family is not as \_\_\_\_\_ (better) at English as you? **WB**
3. Sport is \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) by people around the world. **WB**
4. Is the weather this week as \_\_\_\_\_ (hottest) as it was last week? **WB**

Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Helping the environment"

مساعدته البيئة

- يمكنك من خلال الجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقره الإرشادية:
- What is the environment?      - How can electric cars be helpful?
  - How can we look after our environment?      - يمكن استخدام السيارات الكهربائية.
  - The environment is .....      - We can plant....
  - We mustn't throw .....      - Electric cars are useful.

# Review B

SB pages 64-65 WB pages 116-117

## Key Vocabulary

opening times	ساعات العمل	sunny day	يوم مشمس
Corniche El Nil	كورنيش النيل	suddenly	بمفاجأة
further from	أبعد من	excitely	بالتحميم
the fourteenth century	القرن الرابع عشر	pink	وردي / زهري
take the sand off	يزيل الرمل	redise (d)	يزرك

استمع إلى المفردات



## Audio script

SB Page (64)

استمع إلى النص



**Mrs Saki** : Good afternoon, Luxor Museum, how can I help you?

**Mr El-Baz** : Hello, I'm a teacher and I want to bring<sup>1</sup> my class to visit the museum next week. Can you tell me what time you are open, please?

**Mrs Saki** : Of course. We are open every day from 9 a.m. to 2 p.m. and then 5 p.m. to 9 p.m.

**Mr El-Baz** : Can I buy tickets at the museum?

**Mrs Saki** : Yes, certainly<sup>2</sup>. Or you can buy them online<sup>3</sup> before your visit.

**Mr El-Baz** : How much are the tickets?

**Mrs Saki** : They're 120 pounds for adults<sup>4</sup> and 60 pounds for children and students.

**Mr El-Baz** : OK, thank you. Can you tell me where the museum is exactly<sup>5</sup>?

**Mrs Saki** : It's located in the north of Luxor on Corniche Al Nil<sup>6</sup>.

**Mr El-Baz** : Thank you so much for your help!

**Mrs Saki** : You're welcome. Bye!

أفكر  
أ- بالمتاحف  
ب- على شبكة الإنترنت  
ج- بالمتاحف  
د- بالمتاحف  
هـ- كورنيش النيل  
و- كورنيش النيل

WB Page (116)

**Woman**

**Man**

**Woman**

**Woman** : Good morning, how can I help you?  
**Man** : Hello, I'd like to know some of the things I can see and do if I visit today.

**Woman** : Yes, you can usually see lots of wildlife, or you could go scuba diving.

-1-

**Man 1** : Hello, how can I help you today?

**Man 2** : Good morning. Can you tell me how much a ticket costs?

**Man 1** : Of course. Adults are 160 pounds and children are 80 pounds.

**Man 2** : Can I buy the tickets online?

**Man 1** : Yes, and the tickets are cheaper on the museum website, too.

-2-

**Woman 1** : Good afternoon, how can I help?

**Woman 2** : I'd like to know what time you close today.

**Woman 1** : Certainly. We close at 3 pm, so if you want to visit the castle today, you'll have to get here soon.

**Woman 2** : Thank you for your help.

## Reading

SB Page (64)

### A trip to Luxor Museum By Hamid

Last week, I went to Luxor Museum with my class. The museum is further from<sup>1</sup> my home than our school. We were travelling a long time! We arrived at 10.30 am. As we were walking into the museum, we saw some big statues. My favourite was the statue of Ramses II. There were also rings and necklaces that once belonged to<sup>2</sup> rich Egyptian families. There were a lot of small coins from the same time, too.

The museum has some very old objects. My favourite objects were the metal bowls from the fourteenth century<sup>3</sup>. The oldest objects in the museum were the tools. Some were made of metal and some were made of stone.

While I was reading the information, my friend found a tool that was 10,000 years old.



أ- أجد من  
ب- يلقى  
ج- الفين الرابع عشر  
د- الفين الرابع عشر

## Beach rules

- Don't swim when the weather is bad.
- Swim near the beach, where we can see you.
- Wear a hat between 11 am and 3 pm.
- No loud music!
- Put your rubbish in the bins.
- Only play ball games in the park area.

WB Page (116)

The city of Edfu, which is located to the west of the River Nile, is known for the famous Temple of Horus. For hundreds of years, people forgot about the temple until 1860, when a French man, Auguste Mariette, found part of an arch in the sand. He realised that there were 12 metres of sand on top of the ancient building. People carefully took the sand off the temple, and today it is one of the biggest temples in Egypt. Tourists have to buy a ticket to look around the temple, which is more than 2,000 years old. Tourists who go to the temple always remember this awesome building.



١- نقش  
٢- لدرت  
٣- زانو الرمل

# Test on Units 4, 5 & 6

## A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بعدد السؤال في آخر الكتاب

- The speaker went to Luxor Museum with his / her .....  
a. family      b. class      c. cousins      d. friends
- They arrived at the museum at ..... a.m.  
a. 10.30      b. 9.30      c. 7.30      d. 8.30
- They saw some big .....  
a. tourists      b. animals      c. objects      d. statues
- The oldest objects in the museum were the .....  
a. statues      b. walls      c. tools      d. objects

## B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mrs Wafaa is calling the Egyptian Museum.

Woman : Good morning, how can I help you?

Mrs Wafaa : Hello! 1 .....

Woman : Sure. We open at 9:00 am and close at 5:00 pm every day.

Mrs Wafaa : 2 .....

Woman : 30 pounds.

Mrs Wafaa : 3 .....

Woman : Yes, tickets are cheaper on the museum website.

Mrs Wafaa : Can I use my camera?

Woman : 4 ..... But you have to buy a ticket of 50 pounds for that.

Mrs Wafaa : 5 .....

## C Reading Comprehension

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

On Saturday, Judy will be 13 years old. Her parents are very happy and they are going to have a birthday party. The party is going to begin at noon on Saturday. They invited their friends, neighbours and all their family members, so many people will be at the party. Judy will have so much fun!

Judy's dad is going to buy balloons. Judy's grandmother is going to bring ice-cream. Her aunt is going to bake a chocolate cake. Judy will love her cake! Her sister Salwa will take photos with her mobile at the party.

Judy's friends, cousins and neighbours will bring presents. She is going to open her presents after lunch. Then, everyone will eat cake and ice-cream. Judy is going to have a good birthday!

## A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
2. What is Judy's dad going to buy?
3. When is Judy going to open the presents?

## B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "Her" refers to .....  
a. Judy      b. the aunt      c. the mother      d. Salwa
5. The underlined word "parents" means .....  
a. friends      b. cousins      c. neighbours      d. father and mother
6. Judy's aunt is going to .....  
a. buy balloons      b. have fun      c. play a game      d. bake a cake

## D Vocabulary and Structure

## 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/an ..... school is a place where students live as well as study. **WB**  
a. interesting      b. boarding      c. boring      d. losing
2. He put the cards in a ..... order and asked me to reorder them.  
a. random      b. dangerous      c. disabled      d. tidy

3. A/an ..... is something which you use to buy things with. **Test**  
a. object      b. arch      c. museum      d. coin

4. .... means to change from ice to water. **WB**  
a. Melt      b. Freeze      c. museum      d. coin

5. A ..... person is someone who cannot learn easily. **WB**  
a. clever      b. intelligent      c. Polite      d. Warm

6. A ..... is a long area of water made for ships and boats. **WB**  
a. pool      b. basin      c. canal      d. drop

7. I ..... my phone while I was texting my friend. **WB**  
a. found      b. won      c. canal      d. drop

8. The train leaves at 9 tomorrow, so you ..... be late. **WB**  
a. have to      b. mustn't      c. washed      d. dropped

9. The bowls in the museum were ..... than the tools. **SB**  
a. the new      b. newest      c. newer      d. more new

10. While Mona was watching television, she ..... an idea. **WB**  
a. had      b. has      c. was having      d. to have

## 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The turtle ..... (who) the boys helped walked to the sea. **SB**
2. Playing sport is ..... (good) for you than playing computer games. **WB**
3. You ..... (should) eat too many sweets. They are bad for you. **WB**
4. Hudd's grandparents arrived while she ..... (put) her clothes away. **WB**

## E Writing

## 6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"How a school helps the community"

# General Exercises

## from Student's Book & Workbook

Complete the following dialogue:

1. Dalida's mother is ill and she didn't go to work.

**Dalida** : My mother didn't go to work today because she is ill.

**Heba** : 1 .....

**Dalida** : She had an interview at the bank for a new job. 2 .....

**Heba** : 3 .....

**Dalida** : She did the interview online from her bed!

**Heba** : 4 .....

**Dalida** : Yes, but she got the job!

**Heba** : 5 ..... ! I'm so happy for her.

**Dalida** : She is still not feeling very well.

**Heba** : Don't worry, I'm sure she'll be better soon.

2. Esraa and Amal are talking about ancient Egyptian doctors.

**Esraa** : Did you read about ancient Egyptian doctors?

**Amal** : 1 .....

**Esraa** : Do you think that they helped their patients?

**Amal** : 2 .....

**Esraa** : 3 .....

**Amal** : They used plants to help people with burns and to stop infections.

**Esraa** : Did they know anything about the heart?

**Amal** : 4 .....

**Esraa** : 5 .....

**Amal** : You can visit museums and temples to know more about them.

3. Ayman is doing a school project.

**Samy** : What are you doing?

**Ayman** : 1 .....

**Samy** : Do you mean a project about your family history?

**Ayman** : 2 .....

**Samy** : 3 .....

**Ayman** : My great grandfather lived in the countryside.

**Samy** : 4 .....

**Ayman** : He was a doctor at the Red Crescent.

**Samy** : I think he was a helpful man.

**Ayman** : 5 .....

4. Amira and Hana are talking about tourism.

**Amira** : I think tourism is good for our country.

**Hana** : 1 .....

**Amira** : 2 ..... Tourists bring money to us.

**Hana** : Yes, it's good for local people.

**Amira** : 3 .....

**Hana** : I think it's sometimes bad for the environment?

**Amira** : How does this happen?

**Hana** : 4 .....

**Amira** : 5 ..... Most tourists behave well.

**Hana** : You are right.

5. Amal and Malak are talking about what they have to do at home.

**Amal** : Hi! Malak. What homework do you do at home?

**Malak** : 1 .....

**Amal** : Do you help your mother with the washing up?

**Malak** : 2 .....

**Amal** : 3 .....

**Malak** : My sister helps to clean the table after meals.

**Amal** : 4 .....

**Malak** : I also help my mother clean the kitchen.

**Amal** : I think you are very helpful.

**Malak** : 5 .....

6. Aya and Reem are talking about recycling water.

Aya : I'm very sad.

Reem : 1. ....

Aya : The problem is that we all use much water. So, how can we use less water?

Reem : 2. ....

Aya : Well, why don't we try recycling water?

Reem : 3. ....

Aya : We could use the water from washing to water the plants.

Reem : 4. ....

Aya : We can also take short showers.

Reem : 5. ....

## SB & WB Exercises Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Unit 1

1. I go to the baker's with my mother ..... to buy bread in the morning.

a. daily b. dearly c. dairly d. deeply

2. I saw Ahmed's father on his ..... to work this morning.

a. stay b. weight c. holiday d. way

3. Come and sit on this ..... four people can sit on it.

a. routine b. sofa c. chair d. seat

4. My uncle uses a ..... in his garden to water his plants.

a. cop b. map c. tape d. tap

5. Robert's family home has a ..... garden.

a. careful b. helpful c. large d. cheap

6. The opposite of "attractive" is .....

a. small b. ugly c. beautiful d. good

7. On a ..... day, Reem gets up, goes to school and then helps her mother in her shop.

a. typical b. famous c. helpful d. careful

8. I live in a city, but my grandparents live in a ..... among fields.

a. town b. capital c. village d. country

9. A ..... is a place where people go when they do something wrong.

a. hospital b. prison c. theatre d. beach

10. People without enough money are .....

a. poor b. healthy c. strong d. careless

11. A ..... gives you light.

a. leaf b. lamb c. lake d. lamp

12. A ..... is a big cupboard where you can put your clothes.

a. wardrobe b. chair c. blackboard d. sofa

13. You can see yourself in a/an .....

a. armchair b. wardrobe c. mirror d. basin

14. My bed is under the window. There are a lot of ..... on it!

a. information b. cushions c. news d. tables

15. The opposite of "terrible" is .....

a. good b. far c. small d. ugly

16. .... time does Donic's school finish?

a. When b. How c. Where d. What

17. Robert's new house is in the country near a railway .....

a. club b. line c. tree d. classroom

18. Hassan forgot to bring any food for the picnic, but we can ..... our food.

a. check b. damage c. share d. change

19. Robert's family home in the city is big and ..... I like going there.

a. little b. ugly c. terrible d. attractive

20. This family do not have much money and now they are .....

a. happy b. poor c. rich d. excited

### Unit 2

21. You call a ..... if there is a problem with your computer system.

a. police officer b. shop worker c. nurse d. computer engineer

22. I'm ..... my food stall here because it is the best place in the city.

a. flying b. parking c. barking d. doing

23. A ..... helps to keep people safe in the streets.

a. street-food seller b. nurse c. police officer d. computer engineer

24. A/An ..... speaks to people on the phone. He/She helps them with their problems.

a. doctor b. call-centre worker c. nurse d. police officer

25. I'm feeling cold and I'm looking ..... drinking some hot coffee.

a. forward to b. after c. up d. for

26. A ..... helps in a place which sells things.

a. teacher b. farmer c. shop worker d. police officer

27. A/An ..... prepares food for people to eat in the streets.

a. street-food seller b. shop worker c. doctor d. engineer

28. How often do you ..... dinner?

a. do b. make c. harm d. repair

29. Shady is deaf, but he understands us because we use ..... language.

a. sight b. signal c. seen d. sign

30. We need a computer engineer to ..... our computer because it doesn't work.  
a. damage b. hurt c. repair d. break
31. When you invite a person to your house, he/she is your .....  
a. guess b. guest c. customer d. partner
32. When you go on holiday, you can put your clothes in a .....  
a. suit b. pan c. pencil case d. suitcase
33. The skin of a zebra is .....  
a. striped b. lines c. silver d. golden
34. When two people get married, they have a .....  
a. wedding b. prize c. medal d. wedding
35. A ..... is a boy or girl aged 13-19.  
a. teenager b. child c. baby d. manager
36. You can catch a plane from an .....  
a. port b. station c. airport d. stop
37. If you are tired, why don't you ..... a rest?  
a. have b. be c. make d. do
38. I'm sorry to hear that. I hope he ..... better soon.  
a. gets b. gives c. takes d. makes
39. We are ..... to a new house.  
a. sharing b. moving c. passing d. missing
40. Congratulations ..... passing your maths test.  
a. at b. in c. up d. on
41. .... done, Yasser! That's great news!  
a. Well b. Wall c. Wheel d. Will
42. That must be difficult. But don't ..... I'm sure things will get better.  
a. hurry b. marry c. worry d. carry
43. Congratulations! I'm so ..... for you.  
a. unhappy b. happy c. sorry d. sad
44. My sister speaks very .....  
a. beautiful b. careful c. quiet d. quietly
45. This is a photo of my parents' .....  
a. married b. marry c. wedding d. wedding
46. The nurse works on the ..... for children.  
a. stadium b. ward c. word d. playground
47. Please ..... sure that you write your emails carefully.  
a. build b. take c. do d. make
48. It is usually easy to ..... with people in other countries if you speak English.  
a. communicate b. listen c. shout d. cry

## Unit 3

49. Players score by throwing the ball into a goal in .....  
a. handball b. chess c. swimming d. karate
50. The ..... Egyptian handball team did not win the final in 2018.  
a. ancient b. find c. nuclear d. senior
51. Teams from Africa never won the handball World Cup .....  
a. Ball b. Total c. Final d. Goal
52. To ..... means to be the first in a game or competition.  
a. miss b. win c. lose d. earn
53. A ..... is an event when people try to get a prize by being the best at something.  
a. charity b. coach c. competition d. team
54. A/An ..... does experiments to study and find out about how things work.  
a. event b. hero c. worker d. scientist
55. A ..... knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill.  
a. scientist b. nurse c. surgeon d. chemist
56. The ..... Egyptian handball team won the under-19 World Cup Final in 2019.  
a. junior b. poor c. general d. moral
57. A ..... gives money to people or place.  
a. scientist b. patron c. surgeon d. coach
58. A ..... is a girl or woman.  
a. man b. female c. male d. child
59. .... is a sport with seven players in a team.  
a. Tennis b. Boxing c. Handball d. Snorkelling
60. The Egyptian handball team won an important ..... in 2020.  
a. competition b. station c. experiment d. expression
61. A natural ..... is a terrible event, such as an earthquake.  
a. water b. science c. gas d. disaster
62. A ..... helps people who are poor, sick or don't have a home.  
a. school b. charity c. museum d. thief
63. .... the meat into small pieces before you cook it.  
a. Boil b. Mend c. Pump d. Cut
64. The ..... is the area outside a city, where there are farms and lots of nature.  
a. countryside b. earthquake c. mountain d. crescent
65. My grandmother was born in 1955 and my ..... grandmother was born in 1930!  
a. big b. senior c. high d. great
66. If you are ..... of someone, you feel pleased with them.  
a. interested b. bored c. proud d. keen
67. Dirty water from a river can ..... you if you drink it.  
a. infect b. enjoy c. clean d. mend
68. The ..... tells the parts of our body what to do.  
a. heart b. brain c. eye d. stomach

69. You can only open this door in a/an ..... such as a fire. **d. organisation**  
 a. emergency b. charity c. pleasure
70. The ..... pumps blood around the body. **d. lung**  
 a. stomach b. brain c. heart
71. Street ..... help to keep our cities clean. **d. cleaners**  
 a. builders b. makers c. walkers
72. I think rubbish ..... can be heroes. **d. bakers**  
 a. reviewers b. managers c. collectors
73. We went to my cousin's house this morning, but nobody was ..... **d. they're**  
 a. there b. their c. they are
74. I don't think I ..... the answer to this question. **d. show**  
 a. go b. know c. no
75. Warda is good at maths, and she's good at English, ..... **d. twice**  
 a. too b. two c. to
76. Athens is a great city and the Parthenon is ..... most famous building. **d. its**  
 a. it is b. it's c. its'
77. Are you taller ..... your brother? **d. then**  
 a. that b. than c. this
78. I bought ..... books yesterday. **d. toe**  
 a. two b. to c. too
79. You can give money to a ..... to help poor people. **d. cinema**  
 a. charity b. farm c. beach
80. Adam fell off his bike and had a big ..... on his arm. **d. cut**  
 a. pump b. way c. infection
81. A ..... teaches people how to play or improve a sport. **d. professor**  
 a. sports coach b. scientist c. teacher
82. A/an ..... is something serious or dangerous that you need to do something about. **d. organisation**  
 a. charity b. emergency c. nature
83. I always ..... money to a charity that helps poor children. **d. give**  
 a. win b. make c. do
84. When you are older, do you want to live in the city or the .....? **d. continent**  
 a. side b. earth c. countryside
85. A ..... worker helps people or animals that need help. **d. fruit**  
 a. charity b. sports c. nuclear
86. She helped to look ..... poor children in Egypt from 1920 to 1969. **d. from**  
 a. for b. in c. after

## Unit 4

87. Last year, I visited Karnak with my family. We saw the ..... temples.  
 a. ancient b. new c. difficult d. careless
88. A/an ..... is an entrance to another place. **d. stone**  
 a. pyramid b. arch c. view

89. You can watch a sports match at a/an ..... **d. stadium**  
 a. entrance b. statue c. museum
90. We pray at a/an ..... **d. arch**  
 a. mosque b. theatre c. pyramid
91. A/an ..... has very strong walls. **d. ticket**  
 a. object b. desert c. castle
92. A ..... is not a complete building. **d. hill**  
 a. stone b. ruin c. house
93. You might see a ..... in a museum. **d. statue**  
 a. castle b. race c. temple
94. Ancient Egyptians made ..... with clay from the Nile River. **d. magazines**  
 a. pots b. insects c. papyrus
95. Can you tell me the ..... of the ticket, please? **d. object**  
 a. prize b. coin c. price
96. Ancient Egyptians used ..... to help them point around their eyes. **d. floors**  
 a. chairs b. mirrors c. wood
97. A ..... has four corners. **d. tool**  
 a. square b. bowl c. circle
98. There are more than 2,000 ..... in the museum. **d. phones**  
 a. prices b. subjects c. objects
99. The black and white ..... around this window are beautiful. **d. designs**  
 a. pages b. webs c. prices
100. .... are pieces of money made of metal. **d. Figures**  
 a. Bows b. Pots c. Coins
101. This chemical helps to keep ..... mosquitoes. **d. over**  
 a. in b. away c. about
102. A ..... is a model of a person, an animal or a sculpture. **d. vase**  
 a. figure b. design c. bowl
103. Tourists often travel by car. This makes more ..... **d. history**  
 a. pollution b. tourism c. holiday
104. It is important to protect all parts of the ..... **d. pollution**  
 a. guide b. environment c. century
105. .... it will rain tomorrow, but I'm not sure. **d. Might be**  
 a. May be b. May c. Might
106. Don't play football here or you might ..... that car. **d. repair**  
 a. hurt b. injure c. damage
107. I love going to ..... places such as museums and ancient ruins. **d. historian**  
 a. historic b. scary c. cultured
108. Ali's uncle works for a big oil ..... in the United Arab Emirates. **d. company**  
 a. work b. environment c. job
109. .... is very important for Egypt. **d. Flood**  
 a. Pollution b. Tourism c. Holiday

110. We have a ..... in the bathroom.      c. temple      d. mirror  
 a. bed      b. ruin
111. A ..... is a pot used for holding flowers.      d. figure  
 a. mask      b. vase      c. necklace
112. .... means very old.      d. Ancient  
 a. Modern      b. Awesome      c. Public
113. A ..... is what you can see from the top of something.      d. ruler  
 a. pyramid      b. view      c. review
114. A ..... is a person who can show you round a place.      d. guide  
 a. tourist      b. professor      c. manager
115. These bowls are made of .....      d. oil  
 a. clay      b. flour      c. air
116. Bees and ants are important .....      d. guides  
 a. birds      b. planes      c. insects
117. A ..... is something people wear to cover or protect their face.      d. sock  
 a. glove      b. mask      c. helmet

## Unit 5

118. The bin is full. Please can you take ..... the rubbish?      d. off  
 a. up      b. down      c. out
119. Karim is a happy person and always has a ..... on his face.      d. tablet  
 a. smile      b. pencil case      c. knife
120. I help to look ..... my little sister when my parents are busy.      d. to  
 a. up      b. after      c. for
121. Adam was surprised when a ..... walked into his shop.      d. stranger  
 a. relative      b. friend      c. teacher
122. Amal finds it very easy to ..... friends because she is so friendly.      d. hate  
 a. do      b. give      c. make
123. We all remember my grandfather's .....: he always helped us when we were children.      d. sadness  
 a. kindness      b. weakness      c. carelessness
124. This book is ..... You should read it!      d. bad  
 a. boring      b. useless      c. fantastic
125. Hala is a ..... person and there are often things on her bed.      d. messy  
 a. tidy      b. friendly      c. kind
126. My clothes were clean and dry, so I put them all .....      d. in  
 a. away      b. up      c. off
127. Hala is very ..... and leaves her toys all over the floor.      d. messy  
 a. tidy      b. dirty      c. missed
128. They gave the footballer a ..... test to check his health.      d. far  
 a. delicious      b. random      c. useless

129. If someone is ..... to you, they are terrible to you.      d. cruel  
 a. kind      b. nice      c. good
130. To ..... is to give something useful to a person or charity.      d. call  
 a. spend      b. donate      c. pick up
131. A ..... is a small area and the people who live in it.      d. communication  
 a. community      b. country      c. team
132. The Rod al-Farag Axis Bridge is the ..... bridge in the world.      d. youngest  
 a. tallest      b. fastest      c. widest
133. Hala has to put ..... her toys.      d. on  
 a. up      b. out      c. away
134. Samir helps to clean beaches and ..... rubbish.      d. bugs  
 a. tidies up      b. picks up      c. washes up
135. Nader and his brother have to ..... ready for school.      d. hit  
 a. make      b. get      c. let
136. What ..... acts of kindness should you do next week?      d. random  
 a. cruel      b. ugly      c. bad
137. People donate money to the charity and they help to ..... the animals.      d. ladder  
 a. eat      b. kill      c. feed
138. A ..... is the daughter of a king or queen.      d. sell  
 a. prince      b. beggar      c. princess
139. What is the name of a charity which you would like to ..... money to?      d. flood  
 a. donate      b. steal      c. burn
140. A ..... takes you to the top of a building without using the stairs.      d. ladder  
 a. left      b. lift      c. gift

## Unit 6

141. Please take your ..... home; do not leave it in the park.      d. polluted  
 a. fuel      b. drought      c. rubbish
142. Not many fish live in the river because it is very .....      d. drought  
 a. tasty      b. disabled      c. fantastic
143. Bikes are a ..... form of transport because they use no fuel.      d. reefs  
 a. white      b. green      c. blue
144. There was no rain for four months this winter, so now there is a/an .....      d. drought  
 a. flood      b. volcano      c. earthquake
145. Tourists visit the Red Sea from around the .....      d. maintain  
 a. world      b. cloud      c. sky
146. The hotel is now working with a charity that helps the coral .....      d. yellow  
 a. roofs      b. beef      c. leaf
147. The East Hotel is very new. Only ..... energy is used at the hotel.      d. end  
 a. black      b. green      c. blue
148. We could use the water from washing to ..... plants.      d. end  
 a. water      b. cut      c. drink

## General Exercises

149. .... on a beach is more relaxing than working in the city.  
a. Burning b. Damaging c. Lying d. Aiming
150. A lot of our rubbish is ..... and this can lead to climate change.  
a. reminded b. burned c. recycled d. reused
151. Global Recycling Day is an important ..... in March.  
a. event b. match c. movie d. song
152. .... is very important to Egypt.  
a. Tourist b. Tourism c. Tour d. Pollution
153. .... reefs are sometimes damaged by boats.  
a. Car b. Orcl c. Corl d. Plural
154. We need more rain or there might be a .....  
a. drought b. storm c. flood d. climate change
155. The Egyptians opened the Suez ..... in 1869.  
a. River b. Canal c. Lake d. Sea
156. We should clean the river because it is very .....  
a. pollution b. pure c. polluted d. fresh
157. Which of these towns is ..... on the north-west coast of Egypt?  
a. located b. donated c. hated d. closed
158. Tourists bought wonderful ..... from the market.  
a. planes b. ships c. souvenirs d. buses
159. When there is not enough rain, there is often a/an .....  
a. flood b. storm c. drought d. earthquake
160. This month was ..... than last month because we had some big storms.  
a. wettest b. wetter c. wet d. as wet
161. When the planet gets warmer, it is called ..... change.  
a. climate b. pilot c. plate d. date
162. When ice is heated, it .....  
a. freezes b. cools c. melts d. burns
163. When there is too much rain, there is often a .....  
a. war b. flood c. drought d. match
164. When there is too much smoke from factories, it causes air .....  
a. pollution b. solution c. holiday d. conclusion
165. A/An ..... school is a place where students live as well as study.  
a. interesting b. boarding c. boring d. losing
166. A/An ..... is something which you use to buy things with.  
a. object b. arch c. museum d. coin
167. A ..... person is someone who cannot learn easily.  
a. clever b. intelligent c. healthy d. disabled
168. I ..... my phone while I was texting my friend.  
a. found b. won c. washed d. dropped

322

## SB & WB

## Exercises Language

## General Exercises

- 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Unit 1

1. Hamdi doesn't ..... coffee for breakfast.  
a. drinking b. drink c. is drinking d. drinks
2. What time ..... your first lesson start?  
a. do b. doing c. does d. is
3. I ..... my homework before I have my dinner.  
a. usually do b. do usually c. does usually d. usually does
4. Grandma, ..... you got a watermelon?  
a. shall b. can c. has d. have
5. Hil ..... We play a game next weekend?  
a. Have b. Do c. Shall d. Has
6. .... your father got a computer?  
a. Has b. Shall c. Can d. Do
7. .... I help you carry your books?  
a. Am b. Does c. Shall d. Have
8. .... your father got a blue car?  
a. Have b. Has c. Can d. Shall
9. .... I open the door for you?  
a. Shall b. Have c. Am d. Was

### Unit 2

10. I usually ..... to school by bus, but today I am walking.  
a. go b. goes c. went d. going
11. Why is Amel ..... tired?  
a. feel b. feels c. felt d. feeling
12. Fady ..... a jacket today because it is very hot.  
a. is wearing b. isn't wearing c. wears d. wear
13. Basel usually repairs computers, but today he ..... his grandparents.  
a. visiting b. visits c. visit d. is visiting
14. Why ..... Hoda waving to those girls?  
a. am b. are c. is d. can
15. The police officer ..... to another officer. They move quickly to catch the thief.  
a. talks b. is talking c. are talking d. talk
16. The street-food seller usually makes fadfel, but he ..... cheese sandwiches this morning.  
a. is selling b. sells c. sell d. are selling

323

17. That's my sister. She is smiling ..... at the camera. **d. happily**  
 a. careless b. careful c. happy  
 18. It's at the end of the day and the guests are ..... leaving. **d. careful**  
 a. slow b. slowly c. happy  
 19. The teacher treats all her students ..... **d. good**  
 a. kind b. bad c. kindly  
 20. I'm waiting ..... to get on a plane for the first time. **d. hungrily**  
 a. excitedly b. excited c. careful  
 21. I'm sitting under a tree and ..... eating my lunch. **d. beautifully**  
 a. hungry b. beautiful c. hungrily  
 22. The children are singing ..... in the playground. **d. careful**  
 a. loudly b. loud c. happy  
 23. We're sitting ..... on the rocks because they are very sharp! **d. careful**  
 a. happy b. happily c. carefully  
 24. My cousins are not standing under the tree, they are ..... by the fountain. **d. sitting**  
 a. sit b. sits c. sat  
 25. I can't come to the park because I ..... the house today. **d. cleans**  
 a. clean b. cleaning c. am cleaning  
 26. Ola ..... sports today because she hurt her leg. **d. don't do**  
 a. are not doing b. is not doing c. doesn't do  
 27. On Saturday, I usually ..... time with my cousins. **d. am spending**  
 a. spend b. spends c. spending  
 28. Nabila feels ill, so she ..... in bed this morning. **d. is stayed**  
 a. staying b. is staying c. stay  
 29. Our football team will win because they are playing very ..... **d. bad**  
 a. good b. well c. badly  
**Unit 3**
30. My grandfather ..... work in 2015. **d. stopped**  
 a. stopping b. stop c. will stop  
 31. When Omar was 22, a shark attacked him and he ..... a leg. **d. to lose**  
 a. is lost b. lost c. loses  
 32. Magdy Yacoub ..... born in 1935. **d. has**  
 a. was b. is c. be  
 33. He started playing chess when he was very little and he ..... always very good at it. **d. was**  
 a. does b. were c. has  
 34. Egypt's football team ..... the Africa Cup of Nations in 2010. **d. winning**  
 a. win b. won c. to win  
 35. I used to ..... basketball, but I don't now. **d. plays**  
 a. played b. play c. playing

36. Before he got married, Yasser's dad ..... live in Cairo.  
 a. was using b. don't use to c. uses to  
 37. When you were ten, ..... you use to live in a different house?  
 a. do b. does c. did  
 38. Yasser's uncle ..... live in Tunisia.  
 a. used to b. used c. did  
 39. When she was a child, Yasser's Mum ..... play the piano every day.  
 a. was used to b. used to c. using  
 40. There ..... a hotel in our city ten years ago, but now there are three.  
 a. weren't b. didn't c. isn't  
 41. My grandfather ..... football when he was young, but he can't walk now.  
 a. play b. used to play c. use to play  
 42. Dina ..... give money to charity, but now she does.  
 a. used b. didn't use c. used to  
 43. Yasser's grandmother ..... work in a hospital.  
 a. used to b. is used c. uses to  
 44. Did Hosam Hassan ..... captain of the Egyptian Football Team?  
 a. uses to be b. was c. be  
 45. My uncle Rashid ..... born in 1961.  
 a. were b. was c. is  
 46. I started preparatory school a year .....  
 a. at b. for c. in  
 47. He ..... a junior chess competition when he was only 12.  
 a. won b. win c. wins  
 48. My uncle ..... a firefighter, but now he is a police officer.  
 a. used to be b. is c. uses to be  
 49. Where ..... live before you moved to Alexandria?  
 a. are you b. do you c. you used to  
 50. The girl ..... happily on the bed and talking on the phone.  
 a. has sat b. sit c. is sitting  
 51. This train is going ..... so that it does not arrive late.  
 a. hard b. fast c. slowly  
 52. .... did you live when you were a child?  
 a. What b. Where c. Why  
 53. You ..... put your rubbish in the bin.  
 a. must b. has c. mustn't  
 54. You ..... listen to the teacher.  
 a. can't b. must c. mustn't  
 55. You .....  
 a. doesn't

## Unit 4

53. You .....  
 a. must b. has c. mustn't  
 54. You ..... listen to the teacher.  
 a. can't b. must c. mustn't  
 55. You .....  
 a. doesn't

55. You ..... be quiet in the library.      a. am      b. don't      c. mustn't      d. must
56. In a museum, you ..... touch the objects.      a. must      b. can      c. mustn't      d. will
57. Cars ..... drive on this road so we can walk on it safely.      a. must      b. mustn't      c. doesn't      d. isn't
58. You ..... touch any of the building because it is very old.      a. must      b. can      c. haven't      d. mustn't
59. As Karim ..... photos of the animals, he lost his phone.      a. took      b. is taking      c. takes      d. was taking
60. As my parents ..... the tickets, we decided what we wanted to see first.      a. are buying      b. were buying      c. buy      d. bought
61. As we ..... home, Amir phoned me.      a. were travelling      b. travelled      c. travelling      d. are travelling
62. As the teacher was talking, I ..... a question.      a. ask      b. asked      c. am asking      d. were asking
63. We ..... on the train for hours before it finally arrived at the station.      a. are travelling      b. travelling      c. travel      d. were travelling
64. I ..... my bag on the floor while I was taking a photo.      a. was putting      b. will put      c. put      d. am putting
65. While we ..... around the museum, we found some amazing designs.      a. looking      b. are looking      c. will look      d. were looking
66. When we ..... down for a picnic, lots of runners were running through the park.      a. was sitting      b. sat      c. sit      d. to sit
67. While Mona was playing tennis, she ..... her arm.      a. is hurting      b. was hurting      c. hurts      d. hurt
68. While we ..... to go into the museum, I saw my friend Amir.      a. waited      b. are waiting      c. were waiting      d. wait
69. While I was reading my book, the phone .....      a. rang      b. is ringing      c. rings      d. will ring
70. I ..... my homework when my sister called me.      a. was doing      b. will do      c. did      d. am doing
71. You ..... leave large bags at the ticket office before you enter the castle.      a. are      b. must      c. have      d. shall
72. The people were running quickly from the park because it ..... to rain.      a. starts      b. is starting      c. start      d. started
73. You ..... eat inside the castle.      a. were      b. must      c. have      d. mustn't
74. Most of the people ..... when the earthquake started.      a. sleep      b. were sleeping      c. slept      d. will sleep

## Unit 5

75. I ..... walk to school. I take the bus.      a. have to      b. doesn't have to      c. has to      d. don't have to
76. You ..... drink lots of water after a run, but not before!      a. should      b. can't      c. doesn't have to      d. don't have to
77. It's a holiday today. We ..... to go to school.      a. have      b. has      c. don't have      d. shouldn't
78. You ..... tell your teacher if you don't understand the lesson.      a. can't      b. should      c. shouldn't      d. doesn't have
79. You ..... buy your friend a present on his/her birthday.      a. should      b. shouldn't      c. should to      d. has to
80. My father ..... get up at six o'clock every day to go to work.      a. have to      b. has to      c. don't have to      d. aren't
81. When you get on the bus, you ..... buy a ticket.      a. don't have to      b. has to      c. have to      d. doesn't have to
82. It's going to be hot, so you ..... wear sunglasses and a hat.      a. have to      b. don't have to      c. shouldn't      d. can't
83. At the weekends, I ..... get up early. I can stay in bed until 9 o'clock.      a. doesn't have to      b. has to      c. have to      d. don't have to
84. My aunt Dalia is a person ..... is always very kind to me.      a. who      b. which      c. when      d. where
85. She bought me the trainers ..... I wore when I played in the school volleyball team.      a. who      b. where      c. that      d. when
86. I gave the shoes ..... are too small for me to my cousin.      a. who      b. when      c. where      d. which
87. Ahmed is the boy ..... I met in primary school.      a. which      b. who      c. where      d. when
88. That is the house ..... my grandmother was born.      a. which      b. when      c. where      d. who
89. The boy ..... was my best friend at school moved to a different city.      a. when      b. who      c. which      d. where
90. Let's go back to the beach ..... we went swimming last week.      a. when      b. that      c. who      d. where
91. Tennis is a sport ..... my sister plays every week.      a. where      b. when      c. which      d. who
92. It was the watch ..... my father gave me for my birthday.      a. that      b. when      c. who      d. where
93. The books ..... he used to help me were his old schoolbooks.      a. which      b. when      c. where      d. who

94. Mrs Sabri's the teacher. .... taught my sister. **d. when**  
 a. which **b. who**  
 c. where **d. who**
95. The café ..... I meet my friends sells delicious ice cream.  
 a. when **b. where**  
 c. which **d. who**
96. You left the bag ..... you bought at the weekend at my house!  
 a. where **b. which**  
 c. who **d. when**
97. There is an important test tomorrow, so you ..... play video games.  
 a. should **b. have to**  
 c. has to **d. shouldn't**
98. Boats are fun but they can be dangerous, so you ..... do what your teachers tell you.  
 a. don't have to **b. have to**  
 c. shouldn't **d. can't**
99. The place ..... I lost my watch was the garden.  
 a. when **b. who**  
 c. that **d. where**

## Unit 6

100. I think that air pollution is as serious ..... water pollution.  
 a. just **b. as**  
 c. too **d. also**
101. Bikes are ..... than cars.  
 a. green **b. greenest**  
 c. greener **d. more green**
102. The volunteers want to make the canal .....  
 a. cleaner **b. more clean**  
 c. cleanest **d. most clean**
103. Mount Kenya is not ..... as Mount Kilimanjaro.  
 a. higher **b. highest**  
 c. more high **d. as high**
104. The electric buses in Alexandria cause ..... air pollution.  
 a. less **b. tallest**  
 c. least **d. many**
105. Recycling is ..... as using less electricity for the environment.  
 a. more important **b. less important**  
 c. not important **d. as important**
106. Europe is not as ..... as Australia.  
 a. dry **b. drier**  
 c. driest **d. less dry**
107. The pollution in the countryside is not as ..... as the pollution in cities.  
 a. worse **b. bad**  
 c. worst **d. most bad**
108. Seats on the new buses are more comfortable ..... the old buses.  
 a. then **b. that**  
 c. there **d. than**
109. A train is not as fast ..... a plane.  
 a. so **b. too**  
 c. as **d. just**
110. Saudi Arabia is not ..... as Jordan.  
 a. wetter **b. as wet**  
 c. wettest **d. more wet**
111. Nessma writes in English as ..... as she speaks it.  
 a. carefully **b. more careful**  
 c. most careful **d. careful**
112. The drought this year is not as ..... as it was last year.  
 a. more dangerous **b. less dangerous**  
 c. dangerous **d. dangerously**

113. Port Said is .....

to Suez by the Suez Canal.

General Exercises

113. Port Said is ..... to Suez by the Suez Canal.  
 a. connect **b. connecting**  
 c. connects **d. connected**
114. Taha ..... for his funny stories.  
 a. are known **b. knows**  
 c. is known **d. knew**
115. Tourists ..... hundreds of photos of the Pyramids every day.  
 a. is taken **b. take**  
 c. taken **d. are taken**
116. The city ..... for its ships, which come and go from around the world.  
 a. is knowing **b. is known**  
 c. known **d. knows**
117. Many ancient monuments and buildings are ..... in the city.  
 a. found **b. find**  
 c. finding **d. finds**
118. Al-Ahmadi mosque is visited ..... thousands of people every year.  
 a. to **b. for**  
 c. by **d. with**
119. The city ..... known for its delicious 'black honey'.  
 a. am **b. are**  
 c. were **d. is**
120. Lots of food is ..... in the local area, like potatoes, wheat and sugar.  
 a. grow **b. grew**  
 c. grows **d. grown**
121. The North Hotel is ..... on a lovely beach.  
 a. locate **b. located**  
 c. locates **d. locating**
122. Coral reefs are often ..... by scuba divers.  
 a. damaging **b. damages**  
 c. damaged **d. damage**
123. Honey is ..... from sugar.  
 a. made **b. make**  
 c. makes **d. making**
124. Lots of cotton ..... in the area.  
 a. are grown **b. is grown**  
 c. grows **d. is grow**
125. Many fish are ..... in the sea near Port Said.  
 a. caught **b. catching**  
 c. catches **d. catch**
126. Parts of the beach are ..... to tourists so that turtles are safe.  
 a. to closing **b. closing**  
 c. closes **d. closed**
127. Recycling is not as important ..... using less water.  
 a. also **b. too**  
 c. so **d. as**
128. A bike is not as ..... as a plane.  
 a. fast **b. fastest**  
 c. faster **d. faster than**
129. Alexandria is not as ..... as Giza.  
 a. biggest **b. bigger**  
 c. so bigger **d. big**
130. Ali says that football is not ..... as handball.  
 a. more difficult **b. as difficult**  
 c. difficult **d. difficult than**
131. The train leaves at 9 tomorrow, so you ..... be late.  
 a. have to **b. mustn't**  
 c. should **d. can**
132. The bowls in the museum were ..... than the tools.  
 a. the new **b. newest**  
 c. newer **d. more new**
133. While Mona was watching television, she ..... an idea.  
 a. had **b. has**  
 c. was having **d. to have**

## 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

### Unit 1

- B: Yes, she ..... (do).
- This is a nice restaurant. .... (Do) we eat here, Hassan?

### Unit 2

- Mam and Mona ..... (studies) calligraphy every day.
- How often do you ..... (made) dinner?
- What game is Osama ..... (play) on the computer?
- My friend sews ..... (bad).
- Mr Ahmed speaks English ..... (good).
- Mr Osman ..... (live) in a lovely flat.
- We ..... (learn) English now.
- Maja and Rami ..... (text) their cousins in Canada now.
- What time do you ..... (doing) your homework after school?
- It is important to drive ..... (careful) when it is raining.

### Unit 3

- Waleed ..... (be) a farmer for more than thirty years.
- Aunt Leila ..... (lives) in England from 1995 to 2010.
- Mogdy Yacoub stopped most of his work as a surgeon a long time ..... (age).
- Mogdy Yacoub ..... (was helped) people with heart problems for many years.
- Heba ..... (travel) to Canada a week ago.
- Yasser's grandfather ..... (doesn't) use to know how to drive a car.
- How did you ..... (used) to go to school?
- What games did you ..... (used) to play with your friends?
- When older parents died, they used to ..... (left) their houses to the sons.
- I ..... (go) to primary school for six years.
- In 1990, he ..... (becomes) the number one chess player in our city.
- ..... (When) time did you usually get up?
- Huda and Fareeda ..... (studies) hard because they have an English test next week.
- Nadila is talking ..... (quiet) to her friend because they are working in a library.

### Unit 4

- You ..... (must) run inside the building of the school.
- You ..... (mustn't) buy your ticket before you enter.
- You ..... (should) drink this water, it's dirty.
- As I was walking to school, it ..... (start) to rain.
- As Mr Bodr was walking to work, he ..... (was seeing) an old friend.

- While I was doing my homework, I ..... (drop) my pencil.
- You ..... (must) touch the stones of the Pyramids.
- While I ..... (am playing) on the computer, I found out an interesting fact.
- We were all laughing when he ..... (finishes) that funny story.

### Unit 5

- At school, I ..... (don't have) to arrive on time.
- The market is a place ..... (when) I often get lost!
- The tourists ..... (what) visit Egypt always love the ancient temples.
- That's the teacher ..... (which) teaches us maths.
- This is the museum ..... (when) we saw amazing statues.
- Students shouldn't ..... (forgot) how it feels when they start school.
- I love the trainers ..... (who) are blue and red.
- You ..... (should) run if your legs hurt.

### Unit 6

- Mount Catherine is a ..... (high) mountain than Jabal Mousa.
- Tamer likes reading as ..... (many) as he likes playing computer games.
- The football players are not playing as ..... (good) as they did last week.
- I think that the river is more polluted ..... (then) it was last year.
- Which is ..... (more far) to walk to, the park or the museum?
- Is your cousin ..... (more old) than your brother?
- Port Said is ..... (located) in the north-east of Egypt.
- Giza is ..... (knowing) for its ancient pyramids.
- A lot of oranges ..... (is) grown along the river.
- Who is as ..... (taller) as you in the class?
- Plastic pollution is ..... (worst) now than it was before.
- The fish that we eat are ..... (catch) in boats most mornings.
- The Pyramids ..... (is) visited by thousands of people every day.
- Which school subject do you find as interesting ..... (so) English?
- Mohammed Salah ..... (known) by people everywhere.
- Who in your family is not as ..... (better) at English as you?
- Sport is ..... (watch) by people around the world.
- Is the weather this week as ..... (hottest) as it was last week?
- The turtle ..... (who) the boys helped walked to the sea.
- Playing sport is ..... (good) for you than playing computer games.
- You ..... (should) eat too many sweets. They are bad for you.
- Huda's grandparents arrived while she ..... (put) her clothes away.

Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

1. "Your daily routine"
2. "What you and your family usually do in the holidays"
3. "A description of your bedroom"
4. "Different people in your family"
5. "A description of your friends' photo"
6. "What makes a hero"
7. "How your life used to be"
8. "How life used to be different in Ancient Egypt"
9. "Your city / village in the past and today"

10. "A description of a historic place you visited"
11. "What you think of tourism. Is it good or bad for historic places? Why?"
12. "The rules for a place you will visit"
13. "What do you think we can do to protect the environment"
14. "A story about a girl helping the poor"
15. "How you can recycle rubbish at school"
16. "How to use less water"
17. "Helping the environment"

Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

18. to your penfriend John about your new house.

- Your name is Omar and your email address is omar22@yahoo.com

- Your penfriend's email address is john55@gmail.com

19. to your new penfriend Jessica about yourself.

- Your name is Nourhan and your email address is nour85@yahoo.com.

- Your penfriend's email address is Jessica14@gmail.com

20. To your friend Sara telling her about a trip to Al Azhar Park.

- Your name is Salma and your email address is salmazaki@gmail.com

- Your friend's email address is sarahamdi@yahoo.com

21. to your friend Nadi(a) telling him/ her about a person you are proud of:

- Your name is Radd(a) and your email address is radd(a)ali@yahoo.com

- Your friend's email address is nadi(a)omar@gmail.com

22. to your friend Fawzi(a) describing an object in your home.

- Your name is Shadi(a) and your email address is shadi(a)post@gmail.com

- Your friend's email address is fawzi(a)mail@yahoo.com

23. to your penfriend telling him/ her about your school rules.

- Your name is Fadi(a) and your email address is fadi(a)666@gmail.com

- Your penfriend's name is George(ina) and his / her email address is george(ina)55@yahoo.com

# End of Term Practice

مخاطب عنه في آخر الخطاب

نص المسئلة الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الخطاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c and d:

1. What is Ayda's father's job?

a. a shop worker

c. a street-food seller

b. a teacher

d. it doesn't say

2. Why must Ayda stay at home every day?

a. to work

b. to study

c. to look after her brothers and sisters

d. to plant trees

3. Where does Ayda have to go in the evenings?

a. to school

b. to the shops

c. to a park

d. to her teacher's house

4. How does Ayda feel when she gets home?

a. tired but grateful

c. hungry

d. sad

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mamd : I can't come to your family party next weekend because my grandfather is in hospital.

Lella : 1 ..... to hear that, Mamd. I'll get something.

Mamd : 2 ..... Lella?

Lella : I mean I'll buy him something that you can take to the hospital.

Mamd : 3 ..... don't we buy him something together?

Lella : That's an interesting 4 ..... What can we get him?

Mamd : We 5 ..... buy him a magazine to read.

Lella : Good idea!

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions.

In 1925, a British adventurer called Leonard Woolley was exploring a palace in ancient Babylon (which is located in Iraq today), when he discovered a strange collection of objects. The objects all had labels on them and Woolley realised that this was probably the world's first ever museum! Woolley knew that rich people in the past used to collect special objects in their houses. In Babylon, the palace was the home of Princess Ennigaldi in the year 530 BCE. Some of the objects, however, were about 1,500 years older. Woolley did not know much about Princess Ennigaldi, but he learned that people were interested in history in the past as much as they are interested in it today. Isn't that fantastic?

#### A. Answer the following questions:

1. What was Leonard Woolley exploring in 1925?
2. Why did he think the objects were from a museum?
3. What does the underlined word "them" refer to?

#### B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Some of the objects in the museum were .....  
a. about 2,000 years old      b. the same age as the palace  
c. newer than the palace      d. a lot older than the palace
5. What do you think the word *collection* means?  
a. a palace      b. an innovation  
c. things without names      d. things you keep together
6. What did Leonard Woolley learn about people in the past?  
a. They all had museums      b. They were interested in history  
c. They were all very rich      d. They were all fantastic

#### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... work in the street. They sell food.  
a. Call-centre workers      b. Nurses  
c. Engineers      d. Street-food sellers
2. Many people in the city live in a ..... of flats.  
a. block      b. block      c. chest      d. house
3. The mountain was very high and we all felt ..... at the top because we thought we might fall!  
a. scary      b. scared      c. happy      d. tall

4. Kareem's cousin is ..... and never puts his books away.  
a. messy      b. cruel      c. serious      d. tidy
5. Egid works as a ..... for a charity that helps to clean the local beach.  
a. patient      b. figure      c. model      d. volunteer
6. Where did your grandparents .....?  
a. lived      b. used to live      c. use to live      d. living
7. The nurse is a ..... She saved a lot of people.  
a. hero      b. beggar      c. Manager      d. servant
8. While Hassan ..... to school, he saw a famous squash player.  
a. was walking      b. is walking      c. walked      d. walks
9. You must not ..... the objects in the museum.  
a. touch      b. belong to      c. relax      d. see
10. The new book ..... I bought is very interesting.  
a. who      b. where      c. which      d. when

#### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The Egyptian handball team ..... (win) the competition last year.
2. Karim ..... (take) a photo of the museum at the moment.
3. Cotton clothes ..... (sell) all over the world.
4. Mond ..... (have) to wear the uniform at school.

#### 6 Choose one of the following:

- Write an email of 85-95 words to a penfriend telling him or her about your daily routine.

- Write a blog of 85-95 words about a historic place you visited.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Final Exams

## Exam 1

Cairo - El Marg



### A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نصوت التسجيل الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

- What is Soh's job?  
a. Teacher      b. Nurse      c. Seller      d. Engineer
- Where does she work?  
a. Shop      b. School      c. Farm      d. Hospital
- How many children does she have?  
a. One      b. Two      c. Three      d. Four
- How does she feel after work?  
a. Tired      b. Sad      c. Happy      d. Unhappy

### B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Tamer is asking Ahmed about his father's job.

Tamer : Hi, Ahmed. What's your father's job?

Ahmed : 1 .....

Tamer : 2 .....

Ahmed : He works in Amr Ibn Al-Ass Prep School.

Tamer : 3 .....

Ahmed : He teaches English.

Tamer : Do his students like him?

Ahmed : 4 .....

Tamer : Did you want to be a teacher like him?

Ahmed : 5 .....

### C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Every morning, I wake up at 6 a.m. I brush my teeth. Then I go to the kitchen and make breakfast. I usually have eggs and some toast. At the weekend, I have cheese and milk. I usually read the news while having breakfast. After I finish breakfast, I wash the dishes. I leave the house at 7:30 am. I usually take the train to work. It takes about 40 minutes to reach. I arrive at work at around 8:00. I have lunch there. I usually finish work at 6:00 pm. I arrive home at about 7:00. I cook dinner. I usually listen to music while eating dinner. After dinner, I read for about an hour on the sofa. I watch TV before I go to bed at 10:00.

A. Answer the following questions:

- What is the best title for this text?
- How does the writer go to his work?
- How long does it take to arrive at his/her work?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "there" refers to .....  
a. work      b. home      c. train      d. nothing
- The writer reads on the ..... before watching TV.  
a. table      b. sofa      c. bed      d. armchair
- The underlined word "around" means .....  
a. by      b. exactly      c. about      d. near

### D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Don't pay ..... the ticket; it is for free.  
a. for      b. with      c. on      d. off
- Doctors and nurses are nowadays doing ..... work.  
a. stupid      b. heroic      c. simple      d. ugly
- The new book ..... I bought is very interesting.  
a. that      b. who      c. where      d. when
- I study ..... to make my handwriting better.  
a. geography      b. biography      c. maths      d. calligraphy
- A/An ..... is a boy or a girl aged 13-19.  
a. child      b. teenager      c. baby      d. old man

6. While Ahmed ..... to school, he met a famous actor.  
a. walks b. walking c. was walking d. walked there.
7. Some countries have no rain, so there is a .....  
a. flood b. drought c. pollution d. storm
8. When I open the ..... in my room, there is a lot of sunlight.  
a. carpet b. basin c. curtains d. bookshelf
9. The ..... tells the parts of our body what to do.  
a. leg b. heart c. lung d. brain
10. The book is ..... You should read it.  
a. fantastic b. bad c. ugly d. boring

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. Sara's dress is ..... (expensive) than Ahmed's suit. (lazy).
2. The cat is sitting under the tree ..... (do) his homework now.
3. My brother ..... (getting) up early for his school.
4. He always .....

**E Writing**

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:**

"What you usually do on holidays"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**Exam 2 Giza - Mansheyet Al Kanater**



**A Listening**

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Sameera Mousa was born in .....  
a. 1971 b. 1719 c. 1917 d. 1970
2. Where did she study? - At ..... University.  
a. Zagazig b. Cairo c. Mansoura d. Alexandria
3. She wanted to use her science in .....  
a. medicine b. engineering c. space d. mathematics
4. When did Sameera Mousa die? - In .....  
a. 1592 b. 1950 c. 1925 d. 1952

**B Language Functions**

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

Ali asks Maher about his daily routine.

Ali : Can I ask you some questions?

Maher : 1 .....

Ali : 2 .....

Maher : I get up at 6:30 am.

Ali : What do you usually do before going to school?

Maher : 3 .....

Ali : 4 .....

Maher : Yes, I sometimes listen to music on my way to school.

Ali : What activity do you do every week?

Maher : 5 .....

**C Reading Comprehension**

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

We should all be proud of Dr Magdy Yacoub. He was born in 1935 in Billbeis, but his family used to travel to many places because his father was an important doctor. Magdy also became a doctor. Before he stopped working in 2001, he worked in a special hospital in London. At this hospital, Magdy helped to give people new hearts for the first time. Before 1980s, people with heart problems often used to die. In 2009, Magdy Yacoub started a charity for ill children in Aswan. Very ill children didn't use to live long lives, but many ill children can now live healthy lives.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.
2. Why did Magdy Yacoub's family use to travel to many places?
3. Why do you think Magdy Yacoub started a charity for ill children?

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The birthplace of Dr Magdy Yacoub is .....  
a. Aswan b. Cairo c. London d. Billbeis
5. The underlined word "special" means .....  
a. usual b. very big c. not usual d. very old
6. Before 1980s, people with ..... problems used to die.  
a. heart b. liver c. lungs d. ears

## D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This ..... is comfortable three people can sit on it.  
a. chair      b. table      c. sofa      d. armchair
2. Kind people always ..... to charities to help the poor.  
a. feed      b. donate      c. hurt      d. forget
3. You ..... eat or drink in a museum.  
a. can      b. must      c. mustn't      d. should
4. .... are pieces of money made of metal.  
a. Coins      b. Figures      c. Cans      d. Masks
5. I ..... the football match at 6 o'clock yesterday.  
a. watch      b. watching      c. watched      d. was watching
6. .... is a great problem for the environment. We should solve it.  
a. Pollution      b. Cleaning      c. Rain      d. Tourism
7. Random means happening without a .....  
a. plane      b. plan      c. plant      d. panel
8. The scientist ..... discovered the femto second was Dr Zewail.  
a. which      b. where      c. who      d. when
9. This book is ..... You should read it.  
a. boring      b. terrible      c. bad      d. fantastic
10. Tamer ..... me to his parents during his birthday party.  
a. introduced      b. agreed      c. kept      d. managed

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Ahmed ..... (always is) helpful.
2. Waleed did very ..... (good) in his exams last week.
3. .... (Have) your father got a car?
4. Listen, the birds ..... (sing) in the trees.

## E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Working for a charity"

## Exam 3

Al Kalubia - Qaha

Final Exams

## A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Who is Magdy Yacoub?  
a. A teacher      b. A heart surgeon  
c. A computer engineer      d. A sports coach
2. Where was he born?  
a. in London      b. in France  
c. in Billbeis      d. in Alexandria
3. When was he born?  
a. in 1935      b. in 1930      c. in 1960      d. in 1635
4. Why should we be proud of Magdy Yacoub?  
a. Because he is an important heart surgeon.  
b. Because he helps people with heart problems.  
c. Because he started charities in 2009.  
d. All of these.

## B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Leila is talking to Manal about charities.

Leila : Where do you spend your weekend?

Manal : 1 .....

Leila : What do you do at that charity?

Manal : 2 .....

Leila : 3 .....

Manal : We give them money and things they need.

Leila : 4 .....

Manal : Yes, there are many disabled old people.

Leila : Can I join that charity?

Manal : 5 .....

## C Reading Comprehension

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The celebration of Earth Day began in the city of San Francisco on March 21<sup>st</sup> which was the first day of Spring. Earth Day is important because it reminds us to stop and look at the problems of our environment. This causes health problems to people. Each of us must do his part to recycle and reuse products instead of throwing them away. Earth Day is now celebrated each year on April 22<sup>nd</sup>. Schools around the world take part in making our world a cleaner place. Students volunteer to pick up rubbish at their schools, homes and streets to do their part in helping our environment.

#### A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Earth Day begin?
2. When is the Earth Day celebrated now?
3. What is the importance of Earth Day?

#### B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. What does the Earth Day help us to do?  
a. Pick up rubbish  
b. Clean up our water sources  
c. Think of ways to recycle materials  
d. All of them
5. The underlined word "their" refers to .....  
a. streets  
b. products  
c. environments  
d. students
6. What can students do to celebrate the Earth Day?  
a. Have a party for it  
b. Sing songs  
c. Pick up rubbish in their community  
d. None of them

## D Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I have an important ..... today. I hope to get the job.  
a. view  
b. group  
c. interview  
d. review
2. You should learn how to ..... your free time.  
a. do  
b. leave  
c. have  
d. spend

3. Can you tell me the ..... of the brain?  
a. homework  
b. function  
c. charity  
d. career
4. My mother likes to make her own clothes by herself. She likes .....  
a. sewing  
b. sowing  
c. swimming  
d. reading
5. My sister is a nurse. She helps her ..... to get better.  
a. diseases  
b. illnesses  
c. patients  
d. medicines
6. A ..... person is a person who can't hear.  
a. blind  
b. deaf  
c. weak  
d. strong
7. An earthquake is a natural ..... that causes a lot of terrible things.  
a. disaster  
b. event  
c. volunteer  
d. dream
8. She stopped ..... e-mails to me.  
a. send  
b. sends  
c. sent  
d. sending
9. You shouldn't drink polluted water to be safe from .....  
a. infection  
b. infect  
c. infects  
d. infected
10. The boys are waiting ..... for the football match to start.  
a. excite  
b. excited  
c. exciting  
d. excitedly

### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Mona ..... (learn) a new skill at the moment.
2. Tamer sometimes ..... (have) lunch at school.
3. My sister is smiling ..... (happy) at the camera.
4. Saudi Arabia is not as ..... (wet) Jordan.

## E Writing

### 6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"My daily routine"

## Exam 4

Al Sharkia - Diarb Negrn



## A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Who is your hero?  
a. Sameera Mousa  
b. Magdy Yacoub  
c. Omar Abdelkader  
d. Fatma Ismail
- When was he/she born?  
a. in 1994  
b. in 1949  
c. in 1940  
d. in 1900
- When he/she was 22 he lost a/an .....  
a. eye  
b. arm  
c. hand  
d. leg
- Now, he/she is an important .....  
a. doctor  
b. pilot  
c. sports coach  
d. engineer

## B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Noor is asking Hala about her mother's job.

- Noor : What is your mother's job?  
Hala : 1 .....  
Noor : 2 .....?  
Hala : She works at a clinic.  
Noor : 3 .....?  
Hala : She helps the doctors.  
Noor : How does she get to her work?  
Hala : 4 .....  
Noor : Would you like to be like her?  
Hala : 5 .....

## C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Reading is a very good habit. It gives us new ideas and improves our language. When you read, you need to be in a quiet place. It is better to wear your reading

glasses if it is necessary. You should read different topics and underline the important points with your pen to remember what you read. Try to discuss what you have read with your friends.  
People read for many and different goals. Some read for enjoyment; just to feel happy and spend a nice time. Others read for work. Students read for their study or research. All of us read the news and the weather report. We also read messages, emails and letters that we receive.

A. Answer the following questions:

- Give a suitable title for the passage.
- Why do you think reading is useful for a student?
- How can you remember what you read?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Reading isn't a ..... habit.  
a. good  
b. useful  
c. careful  
d. bad
- The underlined word "it" refers to .....  
a. gods  
b. people  
c. glasses  
d. reading
- The underlined word "enjoyment" in the passage means .....  
a. discussion  
b. sadness  
c. pleasure  
d. swimming

## D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- It is polite to say sorry when you ..... something wrong.  
a. play  
b. help  
c. make  
d. do
- Our phone is broken. Can you ..... it?  
a. make  
b. do  
c. mix  
d. repair
- The ..... Egyptian team won the under 19 World Cup Final in 2022.  
a. junior  
b. oldest  
c. children  
d. senior
- A lot of Muslims go to ..... to pray.  
a. churches  
b. castles  
c. mosques  
d. markets
- "I see what you mean" means I ..... you.  
a. believe  
b. book  
c. understand  
d. destroy
- A ..... is someone who works in someone's home.  
a. beggar  
b. servant  
c. volunteer  
d. prince

7. .... is the process of making air, water and soil dirty. d. Drought
- a. Earthquake b. Pollution c. Flood
8. The furniture ..... by Amira. d. are bought
- a. buy b. bought c. is bought
9. This is the flat ..... I bought. d. where
- a. who b. which c. when
10. While I ..... the match, I fell asleep. d. watch
- a. was watching b. were watching c. watching

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. Everyone in the picture ..... (be) happy.
2. I ..... (watch) the match at seven o'clock yesterday.
3. She ..... (use) to be active, but now she is.
4. She ..... (make) tea now.

**E Writing**

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:**

"Egypt"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**Exam 5**

Al Gharbia - Basiousn



**A Listening**

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Who is Amal looking after at a hospital?
- a. Children b. Visitors c. Nurses d. Doctors
2. Amal is a .....
- a. nurse b. doctor c. teacher d. patient
3. The hospital is very .....
- a. free b. busy c. empty d. small
4. Amal is looking forward to going home and have a .....
- a. meal b. cup c. shower d. rest

**B Language Functions**

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

- Hala and Nora are talking about holidays.
- Hala : Where did you go last holiday?
- Nora : **1** .....
- Hala : **2** .....
- Nora : I stayed in my uncle's flat.
- Hala : How did you travel to Alexandria?
- Nora : **3** .....
- Hala : **3** .....
- Nora : Yes, I swam in the sea. There were a lot of dolphins.
- Hala : What did you eat there?
- Nora : **5** .....

**C Reading Comprehension**

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

The person I admire is my grandfather. He was born in 1940. He worked as a doctor. He worked in a big hospital. All people there liked him because he was kind and helpful. I admire him because he did voluntary work and helped people for no money. I like him because he gave me many presents and helped me a lot. He used to help the poor and give them money. He always advised me to help people all the times. When he died last year, people were all sad. He left all his money for poor people and asked us to build a hospital for them.

**A Answer the following questions:**

1. What's the main idea of the passage?
- .....
2. What did your grandfather leave for the poor?
- .....
3. What does the underlined word "him" refer to?
- .....
- B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**
4. The word "admire" means .....
- a. dislike b. hate c. kill d. love
5. My grandfather advised me to .....
- a. be a doctor b. help people c. build a school d. be a volunteer
6. My grandfather asked us to build a ..... for poor people.
- a. hospital b. charity c. bank d. library

## D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We all ..... sad after she lost her son.  
a. knew      b. fed      c. brought      d. felt
2. They have a ..... of drawers for their clothes.  
a. block      b. chest      c. lamp      d. sofa
3. The team hopes to win the ..... to get the cup.  
a. junior      b. senior      c. final      d. sport
4. The students in our school ..... 15 bags of rubbish today.  
a. corrected      b. collected      c. infected      d. spent
5. Students ..... turns to answer the questions.  
a. plan      b. do      c. make      d. take
6. I see a ..... man who can't walk and uses a wheelchair.  
a. messy      b. generous      c. disabled      d. clever
7. If you go to a/an ..... school, you stay all day and all night there.  
a. boarding      b. primary      c. village      d. prep
8. A nurse ..... the little boy to bed and spoke to him softly.  
a. putting      b. puts      c. put      d. was put
9. I saw the school ..... has three floors.  
a. who      b. which      c. where      d. whose
10. A bike is not as fast ..... a car.  
a. so      b. than      c. that      d. as

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Eslam usually ..... (play) football on Friday.
2. Look! The boys ..... (come) home.
3. The girls are playing ..... (happy) in the street.
4. When it is a holiday, I ..... (not has) to get up early.

## E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"What you should do on holiday"

## Exam 6

Al Dakahila - Belkas

Find Exams

## A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ancient Egyptian ..... used to use plants to help people with burns.  
a. doctors      b. engineers      c. vets      d. actors
2. We still use these ..... today.  
a. medicine      b. drugs      c. plants      d. liquids
3. These plants help people with .....  
a. toothache      b. cough      c. headache      d. burns
4. The ancient Egyptian doctors were .....  
a. bad      b. clever      c. silly      d. sad

## B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Bill is doing a research about Giza Pyramids.

Messi : What are you doing?

Bill : 1 .....

Messi : Where are the Pyramids?

Bill : 2 .....

Messi : 3 .....

Bill : The Ancient Egyptians built them.

Messi : 4 .....

Bill : About 4000 years ago.

Messi : Can anyone visit them?

Bill : 5 .....

## C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Climate change has had effects on our planet. The rise of temperature can cause serious problems. Climate change in Australia, for example, makes the weather hotter and drier. More droughts mean worse fires than ever before. Also, climate change can affect ice on top of mountains badly. When much ice melts, it causes floods. We

should help the environment and stop this rise of temperature. Some places on Earth are in a great danger because of the climate change. We can help by controlling the amount of pollution. This pollution forms because of carbon dioxide which results from exhaust gases, burning straw and factory smoke. So we should work hard to keep our environment clean and try to avoid climate change.

#### A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
2. How can we protect our environment?
3. What do you think of pollution?

#### B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to .....  
a. climate change    b. ice    c. Australia    d. environment
5. Climate change in Australia makes the weather .....  
a. drier    b. hotter    c. better    d. drier and hotter
6. .... is a cause of climate change.  
a. Floods    b. Carbon dioxide    c. Ice    d. Droughts

### D Vocabulary and Structure

#### 4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Shams is good at maths and she is good at English.....  
a. too    b. also    c. so    d. either
2. While ..... to school, I fell down.  
a. ran    b. runs    c. was running    d. running
3. I go to school every day, every day is .....  
a. noun    b. adverb    c. verb    d. adjective
4. "Ancient" is to "modern" as "true" is to .....  
a. unknown    b. great    c. false    d. tiny
5. Skipping breakfast is a bad .....  
a. meal    b. custom    c. routine    d. usual
6. Ali forgot ..... the food for the picnic, he bought it yesterday.  
a. to bring    b. bought    c. bringing    d. brings
7. My six- .....-old cousin is here.  
a. weeks    b. year    c. years    d. days

8. Dan is my .....

We chat only online.

Final Exams

- a. friend    b. penfriend    c. keypad    d. brother
9. It was ..... on exciting party.  
a. such    b. so    c. as    d. very
10. The earthquake is a natural .....  
a. kindness    b. disorder    c. disaster    d. infection

#### 5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Ali was reading while Mum ..... (cook)
2. We bought a villa ..... (when) is near our school.
3. Giza ..... (know) for its ancient Pyramids.
4. He ..... (not has) to speak loudly.

### E Writing

#### 6. Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"How to keep your village or city clean"

## Exam 7

Al Behira - Kom Hamada

### A Listening

#### 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Ancient Egyptians used ..... for making food.  
a. plastic plates    b. bowls    c. pots    d. both a and b
2. Pots were made of .....  
a. mud    b. clay    c. wood    d. metal
3. Clay was taken from the .....  
a. Red Sea    b. beach    c. lake    d. River Nile
4. The Ancient Egyptians were very .....  
a. bad    b. evil    c. clever    d. stupid

## Exam 8

Al Menofia - Tala



## A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What did Huda give to the poor woman?
  - A sandwich and some money.
  - A cold drink
  - Some money and a cold drink
  - Some money
- When did Huda give these things to the woman?
  - Last Friday
  - Last Saturday
  - Last Tuesday
  - Last Thursday
- Where does Huda work?
  - In a hospital
  - In a bank
  - In a school
  - In a hotel
- What did the poor woman give Huda?
  - Some money
  - a cold drink
  - A big smile
  - A hot drink

## B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Nada is talking to Mariam about Mona.

Nada : Do you know that our friend Mona is in hospital?

Mariam : 1 .....

Nada : Because she had an accident.

Mariam : 2 .....

Nada : Yesterday.

Mariam : So. Should we visit her?

Nada : 3 .....

Mariam : 4 .....

Nada : Tomorrow is a good idea. What about buying her a present?

Mariam : 5 .....

## C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Does the sound of an insect in your room bother you? There are more than 900,000 kinds of insects, but scientists think that only about 80% percent of the world's species have been studied. In the future, we will probably find many more. So before you get rid of the annoying insects in your room, remember that they can play an important

part in our ecosystem. They help plants to grow, they remove natural rubbish and they are food for many birds and animals. Some scientists think that insects are healthy to eat. They think that more and more people will have started to eat insects by the time their grandchildren are adults. Some insects are annoying and some are dangerous, but other insects may be more useful than you realize!

A. Answer the following questions:

- What percent of insects haven't scientists studied?
- Find a word from the passage that has the same meaning as "annoy".
- In what ways can insects help the ecosystem?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What do many people do with insects that are annoying?
  - They get rid of them
  - They eat them
  - They give them to their grandchildren
  - They put them in a room
- When do some scientists think that more people will eat insects?
  - After the time their grandchildren are adults.
  - By the time their children are adults
  - By the time their grandchildren are adults.
  - After the time their children are adults.
- The main idea of this passage is that .....
  - insects can be useful
  - plants can be useful
  - animals can be useful
  - rubbish can be useful

## D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- He used to be fat, but now he .....
  - hasn't
  - doesn't
  - don't
  - isn't
- Can you ..... my mother for me? - My phone is not working.
  - taste
  - text
  - exit
  - test
- She feels ..... when some men take her father from their home.
  - interesting
  - pleased
  - glad
  - terrible
- The house ..... we bought last year was very expensive.
  - when
  - who
  - which
  - where
- The nurse works on the ..... for children.
  - wrap
  - award
  - ward
  - reward
- Doctors used to use plants to help people with burns and to stop .....
  - infections
  - facts
  - subjects
  - activities

7. .... aren't a complete building. d. Ruins
- a. Castles b. Statues c. Arches
8. This chemical helps to keep ..... mosquitoes. d. road
- a. way b. away c. a way
9. Don't play football here or you might ..... that car. d. repair
- a. hurt b. injure c. damage
10. Many fish ..... in the sea near Port Said. d. catch
- a. are caught b. is caught c. caught
- 5** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
1. He ..... (not wear) a jacket today because it is very hot.
2. My home city ..... (locate) near the Nile.
3. He likes reading as ..... (many) as he likes computer games.
4. When ice warms, it ..... (is melt).

## E Writing

- 6** Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"How can we recycle rubbish at school?"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## Exam 9

Bani Suif - Smeita



## A Listening

- 1** Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Cleopatra's Needle is in ..... now.
- a. London b. Cairo c. Paris d. Jordan
2. How high is Cleopatra's Needle? - It's more than ..... meters high.
- a. 10 b. 20 c. 30 d. 40
3. They took it there on a large .....
- a. metro b. bus c. ship d. train
4. The stone is very .....
- a. light b. heavy c. small d. tiny

## B Language Functions

- 2** Complete the following dialogue:

Omar is talking with Ramy at break.

Omar : Hello, Ramy. How are you?

Ramy : Hello, Omar ① .....

Omar : ② .....

Ramy : I get up early at 6:30 am.

Omar : What's your favourite sport?

Ramy : ③ .....

Omar : I also like football. ④ .....

Ramy : I play football three times a week.

Omar : Why don't we play football tomorrow?

Ramy : ⑤ .....

## C Reading Comprehension

- 3** Read the following, then answer the questions:

Egypt is one of the most fantastic countries in the Middle East. It is located in the north-east of Africa. Cairo is its capital. Egypt is famous for its very old monuments such as the temples, the Pyramids, and the Sphinx. Millions of tourists come to Egypt every year to enjoy seeing those wonders. Moreover, they like to visit the Egyptian Museum to see some objects from the past. These objects help them understand what life was like many years ago. They spend most of their time on the Red Sea Coast where there are a lot of fantastic islands. These islands are all nature reserves. They are very important as they have coral reefs and lots of wildlife. As a result, the Ministry of Tourism does its best to protect them.

- A. Answer the following questions:**

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.

2. What's Egypt famous for?

3. Do you think that tourists enjoy their visit to Egypt?

- B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The word "....." means animals and plants that live in natural conditions.

a. wildlife b. pyramids c. monuments d. temples

5. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to .....

a. Cairo b. Egypt c. Africa d. the Museum

6. .... of tourists visit Egypt every year.

a. Hundreds b. Thousands c. Millions d. Billions

## D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... from cars is bad for the environment. It damages it.  
a. Pollution      b. Milk      c. Juice      d. Water
2. Deaf people communicate with each other in ..... language.  
a. foreign      b. sign      c. music      d. English
3. A ..... does operations and helps people who are ill.  
a. teacher      b. farmer      c. surgeon      d. patron
4. I love ..... places like Karnak Temple in Luxor.  
a. modern      b. historic      c. new      d. history
5. My grandpa has a big house with a/an ..... garden. It's beautiful.  
a. attractive      b. bad      c. ugly      d. sad
6. My friends live in a block of .....  
a. doors      b. boats      c. flats      d. drawers
7. Nodia never ..... to music on her way to school.  
a. listen      b. listening      c. listened      d. listens
8. Lots of cotton is ..... in Minia.  
a. grown      b. grew      c. grows      d. growing
9. While he was ..... TV, the light went out.  
a. watch      b. watches      c. watching      d. watched
10. A person whose age is between 13 and 19 is called a/an .....  
a. baby      b. teenager      c. old      d. elderly

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The child is laughing ..... (happy).
2. I used to ..... (reading) books in the library.
3. You ..... (has to) wear a uniform.
4. Tennis is a sport ..... (who) we play every week.

## E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Your typical day"

## Exam 10

Al Menia - El Edwa

## A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Who is speaking?  
a. A teacher      b. A student      c. A worker      d. A nurse
2. How much money does he/ she get from his /her father every day?  
a. five pounds      b. six pounds      c. three pounds      d. one pound
3. What did he /she buy?  
a. A sandwich      b. A cake      c. A pizza      d. An ice cream
4. Who does he /she give the left two pounds?  
a. A poor man      b. His father      c. His mother      d. His brother

## B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

A tourist is asking Ahmed some questions.

Tourist : Excuse me, can I ask you some questions?

Ahmed : 1 .....

Tourist : 2 .....

Ahmed : Karnak Temple is in Luxor.

Tourist : How can I go there?

Ahmed : 3 .....

Tourist : Can I visit other places in Luxor?

Ahmed : 4 .....

Tourist : 5 .....

Ahmed : Yes, you will enjoy the weather there.

## C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My hero is not a famous footballer or a famous singer. My hero is my father. He is a simple farmer. He didn't have the chance to go to school when he was young, but he always encourages me to work hard at school as he thinks farming is a good job, but a hard one. He also keeps sheep and cows. He works hard for us. He gives me all the money I need. He is honest and kind. He can't read or write, but he is a wise man. Although my father is poor, I am proud of him.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. Do you think the father wants the boy to be a farmer? Why? Why not?
2. What do you think of the son?
3. Why can't the father read or write?

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The father is .....  
a. rich      b. lazy      c. wise      d. cowardly
5. "Poor" is the opposite of .....  
a. careful      b. rich      c. clever      d. good
6. The underlined word "he" refers to .....  
a. the father      b. the son      c. the farm      d. the sheep

**D Vocabulary and Structure****4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I ..... the same room with my brother.  
a. share      b. shade      c. shave      d. check
2. My neighbour is a street food .....  
a. sailor      b. seller      c. teller      d. tailor
3. What did he use to ..... when he was young?  
a. does      b. did      c. doing      d. do
4. You should ..... politely with your friends.  
a. behave      b. behalf      c. behaviour      d. half
5. Roqia was a ..... for the Red Crescent.  
a. voluntary      b. tourist      c. volunteer      d. scientist
6. My father works ..... a teacher. It's the best job.  
a. so      b. as      c. us      d. at
7. Rubbish in the river ..... the wildlife.  
a. stores      b. damages      c. protects      d. produces
8. Teenagers need enough ..... to feel happy.  
a. stress      b. noise      c. worry      d. sleep
9. A man ..... doesn't work won't succeed.  
a. where      b. which      c. who      d. where
10. The dishes ..... every day.  
a. are washed      b. is washed      c. washed      d. washes

**Exam 11****Assiut - Manfalout****A Listening****1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. When did you visit the Citadel?  
a. Last Monday      b. Last year      c. Last week      d. Last month
2. How are its towers?  
a. short      b. tall      c. fat      d. slim
3. Who built it?  
a. Salah al-Din      b. The king      c. The queen      d. The teacher
4. How long did it take to complete?  
a. three years      b. eight years      c. nine years      d. ten years

**B Language Functions****2 Complete the following dialogue:**

Heba is telling Rahma about her last weekend.

Heba : Where did you go last Friday?

Rahma : 1 .....

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:  
1. My house is ..... (as small) Ali's.  
2. Radwa sings ..... (good).  
3. While ..... (read), I heard a bang.  
4. Does Ali ..... (walks) to school?

**E Writing****6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:**

"A visit to the Museum"



- Heba : 2 ..... ?  
 Rahma : I went to my uncle's farm by car.  
 Heba : 3 ..... ?  
 Rahma : I helped my uncle with his work.  
 Heba : How long did you stay there?  
 Rahma : 4 .....  
 Heba : Did you enjoy there?  
 Rahma : 5 .....

### C Reading Comprehension

#### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mrs. Saleh had two children. Samy was seven years old, and his sister Nora was four. Samy went to school, but Nora did not. When Samy was at home, he often played with Nora while their mother was cooking or washing or cleaning. Their mother was usually free to do her work quietly because Samy was very nice to his small sister. One Friday morning, the two children were playing in the garden while their mother was cooking lunch. They were quite happy until Nora suddenly began to cry loudly because Samy broke her toy when Nora hit him on the head with it.

#### A. Answer the following questions:

1. How old was Samy's sister?
2. Give a suitable title for the passage.
3. Why do you think Samy broke the toy?

#### B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "loudly" means .....  
 a. calmly      b. noisily      c. kindly      d. quietly
5. When Nora cried, her mother was in the .....  
 a. garden      b. bedroom      c. school      d. kitchen
6. Samy ..... the toy.  
 a. repaired      b. cleaned      c. broke      d. bought

### D Vocabulary and Structure

#### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My ..... routine is the same every day.  
 a. daily      b. doing      c. sadly      d. diary
2. I put my books on the .....  
 a. bookshop      b. bookstore      c. bookshelf      d. pocket
3. We ..... go to school on Fridays.  
 a. never      b. always      c. usually      d. sometimes
4. Swimming and ..... are water sports.  
 a. handball      b. football      c. sailing      d. basketball
5. What ..... doing at the moment?  
 a. they are      b. are they      c. they were      d. were they
6. Mr. Ahmed speaks English .....  
 a. bad      b. good      c. will      d. well
7. A/an ..... is a doctor who does operations.  
 a. surgeon      b. oculist      c. farmer      d. engineer
8. .... is a type of paper that was used in ancient Egypt.  
 a. Papyrus      b. Wooden      c. Ink      d. Oil
9. The Red ..... is one of the most important chorities in the world.  
 a. Team      b. Crescent      c. Village      d. Coach
10. When there is no rain for a long time. This is a .....  
 a. flood      b. rain      c. volcano      d. drought

#### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. No one in class is ..... (tallest) than Walid.
2. A good friend is someone ..... (which) helps others.
3. While Mona ..... (play) tennis, she hurt her arm.
4. What ..... (do) you visit last week?

### E Writing

#### 6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Your hero"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## Exam 12

Qena - Dishna



## A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Last ..... , Samy travelled to England.  
a. winter      b. summer      c. spring      d. autumn
2. Samy wanted to learn .....  
a. maths      b. science      c. English      d. Arabic
3. Samy went to a language ..... in London.  
a. center      b. class      c. university      d. school
4. Samy had a ..... time in England.  
a. wonderful      b. long      c. sad      d. bad

## B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Hend is asking Mandi about her daily routine.

Hend : Can I ask you about your daily routine, Mandi?

Mandi : 1 .....

Hend : 2 .....

Mandi : I get up at 6:30 in the morning.

Hend : Do you make your breakfast?

Mandi : 3 .....

Hend : 4 .....

Mandi : My mum always makes it for me.

Hend : How do you go to school every day?

Mandi : 5 .....

## C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Dr Magdy Yacoub is one of the world's most famous heart surgeons. He was born in 1935 in Belbeis, Sharqia. His family used to travel to many places because his father was an important doctor. At the age of 15, Magdy Yacoub joined Cairo University. He studied medicine there. Then he moved to London and achieved a great success as a heart surgeon. He loves his country very much. He came back to Egypt to help

Egyptian children with heart problems. In 2009, he started a charity, called "Aswan Heart Center" for ill children in Aswan. This charity helps thousands of ill children and makes them live healthy lives. For this reason, we should all be proud of him.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.
2. Why do you think Magdy Yacoub came back to Egypt?
3. What did Magdy Yacoub do in 2009?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Magdy Yacoub was born in .....  
a. London      b. Cairo      c. Sharqia      d. Aswan
5. The underlined word "ill" in the passage means .....  
a. sick      b. rich      c. clever      d. strong
6. The underlined word "there" refers to .....  
a. Aswan      b. Cairo University      c. Belbeis      d. Luxor

## D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... are boys or girls from thirteen to nineteen.  
a. Babies      b. Teenagers      c. Volunteers      d. Adults
2. The ..... take in air and help us to breathe.  
a. brains      b. hearts      c. lungs      d. legs
3. You shouldn't ..... up late. It's bad for you.  
a. stayed      b. stay      c. staying      d. stays
4. This is the bag ..... I bought last week.  
a. when      b. where      c. who      d. which
5. The building is very tall, but we can go in the .....  
a. lift      b. left      c. stairs      d. attic
6. Adel is ..... and never puts his books away.  
a. messy      b. cruel      c. serious      d. tidy
7. My parents ..... money to charity which helps disabled people.  
a. win      b. buy      c. finish      d. donate

8. Karim is ..... , but he can understand people using sign language.  
 a. blind                      b. brave                      c. deaf                      d. healthy
9. A ..... is the person who asks people for money as he/ she is poor.  
 a. volunteer                      b. sports couch                      c. beggar                      d. farmer
10. Where did your parents ..... ?  
 a. lived                      b. used to live                      c. use to live                      d. living
5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
1. It is important to drive ..... (careful) when it is raining.
  2. Cotton clothes ..... (sell) all over the world.
  3. She ..... (take) a photo at the moment.
  4. The Egyptian handball team ..... (win) the competition last year.

### E Writing

6. Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"A historic place you visited"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## Exam 13

Luxor - Luxor



### A Listening

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is Salwa's job?  
 a. An engineer                      b. A nurse                      c. A scientist                      d. A teacher
2. What kind of job is it?  
 a. Busy                      b. Easy                      c. Boring                      d. Ugly
3. What kind of work does she work in?  
 a. Children's ward                      b. Men's ward  
 c. Women's ward                      d. Girls' ward
4. Why is Salwa looking forward to going home?  
 a. To text friends                      b. To read                      c. To eat                      d. To have a rest

## B Language Functions

2. Complete the following dialogue:  
 Hanu and Mazin are talking about their past habits.

- Mazin : Hello, Hanu. How are you?  
 Hanu : 1 .....
- Mazin : 2 .....
- Hanu : I used to live in Giza.  
 Mazin : How did you use to go to school?  
 Hanu : 3 .....
- Mazin : I used to ride a bike, too.  
 Hanu : 4 .....
- Mazin : Yes, I used to go to the club. Did you use to play video games?  
 Hanu : 5 .....

### C Reading Comprehension

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last week, I went to Luxor Museum with my class. The museum is further from my home than our school. We travelled for a long time. We arrived at 10:30 am. As we were walking into the museum, we saw some big statues. My favourite was the statue of Ramses. There were also rings and necklaces that once belonged to rich Egyptian families. There were a lot of small coins from the same time, too. The museum had some very old objects. My favourite objects were the metal bowls from the fourteenth century. The oldest objects in the museum were the tools. Some were made of metal and some were made of stone. While I was reading the information, my friend found a tool that was 10,000 years old.

- A. Answer the following questions:

1. Which is further, the school or the museum?
2. How old was the tool that the friend found?
3. When was the trip to Luxor?

- B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. They saw rings and necklaces that belonged to ..... Egyptian families.  
 a. poor                      b. rich                      c. ugly                      d. messy
5. The writer's favourite objects were the metal bowls from the ..... century.  
 a. 11<sup>th</sup>                      b. 17<sup>th</sup>                      c. 12<sup>th</sup>                      d. 14<sup>th</sup>
6. Some were made of "metel". This means they were made of .....  
 a. wood                      b. stone                      c. iron                      d. ice

in 1957. His father died in 1958. In 1962, he moved to London and the USA to work there. Before he stopped working in 2001, at the age of 65, Mogdy used to help to give people new hearts for the first time. In 2009 Mogdy Yacoub started a charity, called Aswan Heart Centre, for ill children in Aswan. Very ill children didn't use to live long lives, but many ill children can now live healthy lives.

#### A. Answer the following questions:

1. What's this passage mainly about?
2. What does the underlined word "there" refer to?
3. What do you think of Sir Mogdy Yacoub?

#### B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Mogdy Yacoub started the Aswan Heart Center in .....  
a. 1995      b. 2001      c. 2009      d. 1962
5. He became a doctor at the age of .....  
a. 12      b. 20      c. 21      d. 22
6. Yacoub started a charity in Aswan to help ill .....  
a. youth      b. teenagers      c. woman      d. children

### D Vocabulary and Structure

#### 4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You must buy your ..... before you enter the theatre.  
a. scarf      b. mask      c. ticket      d. paper
2. Hala is very ..... and leaves her toys all over the floor.  
a. tidy      b. dirty      c. missed      d. messy
3. You can see yourself in a/an .....  
a. armchair      b. wardrobe      c. mirror      d. basin
4. These bowls are made of .....  
a. flour      b. air      c. clay      d. oil
5. Karim is a happy person and always has a ..... on his face.  
a. tablet      b. smile      c. knife      d. pencil case
6. Don't play football here or you might ..... that car.  
a. hurt      b. damage      c. tab      d. keep
7. My uncle has a ..... in his garden and he uses it to water his plants.  
a. cap      b. tap      c. tab      d. map

8. .... your father got a computer?  
a. Has      b. Shall      c. Do      d. Have
9. On Saturday, I usually ..... time with my cousins.  
a. spend      b. spends      c. spending      d. am spending
10. My grandfather ..... working in 2015.  
a. stopping      b. stop      c. stopped      d. stops

#### 5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. How did you ..... (using) to go to school?
2. As Mr Bodr ..... (walks) to work, he met an old friend.
3. Does Nader ..... (has) to get up early?
4. This is the museum ..... (who) the school visited last year.

### E Writing

#### 6. Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Climate change"

## Exam 15

### The Red Sea - Hurghada

#### A Listening

#### 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What does Mohamed do? - He is a/an .....  
a. doctor      b. teacher      c. engineer      d. farmer
2. He works in .....  
a. Egypt      b. Saudi Arabia      c. Japan      d. Morocco
3. He is taller than his .....  
a. wife      b. son      c. daughter      d. brother
4. He goes to work by .....  
a. car      b. bike      c. bus      d. train

## B Language Functions

### 2 Complete the following dialogue:

Jasmin and Mohamed are talking about historical places.

Jasmin : Do you like historical places?

Mohamed : 1 .....

Jasmin : 2 .....

Mohamed : My favourite places are the awesome Temples of Abydos. 3 .....

Jasmin : 4 .....

Mohamed : It is in Upper Egypt, Sohag.

Jasmin : How can I visit it?

Mohamed : 5 .....

Jasmin : Thanks.

Mohamed : 6 .....

## C Reading Comprehension

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Cities are very busy places. Many people live and work in them and there are always lots of traffic and noise, that's why the environment there is polluted. So some people feel worried and unhappy. It is a good idea to go outside the cities to experience natural places in many different ways. This makes them feel calm and relaxed. Some people like visiting nature reserves in Ras Mohamed or Sinai National Park. They practice many activities like; snorkeling, swimming and diving to see different things that live under the water, such as sea animals, fish and coral reefs.

#### A. Answer the following questions:

1 What is the main idea of the passage?

2 Why do people feel worried and unhappy?

3 How do people make themselves feel calm and relaxed?

### B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4 What do you think the word "reserves" means?

a. protected      b. relaxed      c. different      d. polluted

5 The underlined pronoun "them" refers to

a. people      b. cities      c. traffic      d. sea animals

6 Ras Mohamed is a

a. national park      b. sea animal      c. nature reserve      d. coral reef

## D Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We do the same things every day, that is our daily:

a. routine      b. exercise      c. curtain      d. wedding

2. Their families don't have enough money so they are

a. rich      b. strong      c. poor      d. messy

3. "....." means people who live in a certain area in a city or a town.

a. Village      b. Country      c. Community      d. Distance

4. This charity has got a lot of

a. pollution      b. development      c. donation      d. education

5. Bikes are a/an

a. fuel      b. oil      c. green      d. petrol

6. .... is a global problem that we should care about.

a. Climate change      b. Environment      c. Kindness      d. Charity

7. Many countries try

a. cycling      b. damaging      c. throwing      d. recycling

8. We

a. never      b. always      c. usually      d. sometimes

9. Our house is

a. more      b. most      c. much      d. little

10. The people

a. where      b. which      c. who      d. when

### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I

2. While Mona

3. Students must

4. My parents

## E Writing

### 6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"How to keep our environment clean"